University of Strathclyde
Department of Electronic and Electrical Engineering

# DC-DC Converter Designs for Medium and High Voltage Direct Current Systems

by

**Islam Azmy Gowaid**

A thesis presented in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

March 2017

This thesis is the result of the author's original research. It has been composed by the author and has not been previously submitted for examination which has led to the award of any degree.



Signed: I. A. Gowaid Date: 25.03.2017

# Acknowledgements

I would like to express my deep appreciation to my supervisors Prof. Barry Williams, Dr Derrick Holliday, and Dr Grain Adam for their support, guidance, and advice throughout this research.

I also would like to thank Dr Ahmed Massoud, Dr Shehab Ahmed, Dr Ayman Abdel-Khalik, and Dr Ahmed Elserougi for their valuable technical contributions, contribution to the funding of this research, and for their important role in my research career.

Thanks to colleagues and staff at PEDEC, I have had lots of unforgettable moments not only at the university but also around Scotland. On a personal level, Dr Grain Adam, Fred Page, Joe Burr, Yanni Zhong, Ahmed Darwish, Dimitrios Vozikis, Kamyab Givaki, Habib Rahman, Jin Sha, and Luiz Villa have all left a remarkable impact on me. I extend my thanks to them and the rest of the team for assistance, useful discussions, and the encouraging atmosphere.

Finally, a great deal of thanks goes to my family specifically my loving mother and my wonderful wife for their unlimited care, support, and encouragement.

# Acronyms

| | |
|---|---|
| AAC | Alternate Arm Converter |
| AC | Alternate Current |
| ATAC | Asymmetric Transition Arm Converter |
| AP-TAC | Asymmetric Parallel Transition Arm Converter |
| C2L | Cascaded Two-Level Converter |
| CS | Complementary Switching |
| DAB | Dual Active Bridge |
| DC | Direct Current |
| DCCB | Direct Current Circuit Breaker |
| FB | Full Bridge |
| GSC | Grid Side Converter |
| HB | Half Bridge |
| HVDC | High Voltage Direct Current |
| IGBT | Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor |
| IGCT | Integrated gate commutated thyristor |
| LCC | Line Commutated Converter |
| MMC | Modular Multilevel Converter |
| MTDC | Multi-terminal Direct Current |
| MTAC | Modular Transition Arm Converter |
| MP-TAC | Modular Parallel Transition Arm Converter |
| NCS | Non-Complementary Switching |
| NDC | Nested DC Converter |
| NLC | Nearest Level Control |
| NPC | Neutral Point Clamped |
| PCC | Point of Common Coupling |
| P-TAC | Parallel Transition Arm Converter |
| PV | Photovoltaic |
| PWM | Pulse Width Modulation |
| Q2LC | Quasi Two-Level Converter |
| SHE | Selective Harmonic Elimination |
| SP-TAC | Symmetric Modular Transition Arm Converter |
| SVM | Space Vector Modulation |
| THD | Total Harmonic Distortion |
| VSC | Voltage Source Converter |

# List of Symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| $A$ | AC transformer turns ratio |
| $C_{cell}$, $C_{\mathrm{sm}}$ | Cell (submodule) capacitance |
| $C_{dc}$ | DC-link capacitance |
| $C_{gp}$ | Cell subgroup capacitance of the primary side |
| $C_{gs}$ | Cell subgroup capacitance of the secondary side |
| $E_{\mathrm{MMC}}$ | MMC stored energy |
| $E_s$ | Specific MMC stored energy (kJ/MVA) |
| $E_{ac}$ | AAC arm energy exchange with the ac circuit |
| $E_{dc}$ | AAC arm energy exchange with the dc circuit |
| $F_d$ | d-axis feedforward term |
| $F_q$ | q-axis feedforward term |
| $\varphi$ | Phase shift angle or load angle |
| $i_{dc}$ | DC current |
| $i_{CM}$ | Common mode arm current |
| $i_d$ | d-axis current component |
| $I_q$ | q-axis current component |
| $I_H$ | The high voltage side dc current |
| $I_L$ | The low voltage side dc current |
| $k$ | Harmonic order |
| $L$ | Inductance |
| $L_s$ | Coupling transformer leakage inductance |
| $L_{tr}$ | GSC ac transformer leakage inductance |
| $m$ | Modulation index |
| $m_k$ | Modulation index of harmonic order $k$ |
| $N$ | Number of cells per arm |
| $N_s$ | Number of cell subgroups per arm |
| $n$ | Number of cells per cell subgroup |
| $p$ | The derivative operator |
| $P_{dc}$ | DC power flow |
| $P_g$ | Active power exchanged with the ac grid |
| $Q_g$ | Reactive power exchanged with the ac grid |
| $\rho$ | DC ratio (Ratio between the primary and secondary dc voltages both referred to one side) |
| $R$ | MMC arm Resistance |

| | |
|---|---|
| $R_{tr}$ | GSC ac transformer resistance |
| $S_{MMC}$ | MMC apparent power rating |
| $T_d$ | Dwell time |
| $T_{sc}$ | Total switching time of one cell |
| $T_t$ | Transition time between the two dominant voltages of the trapezoidal ac waveform |
| $v_d$ | d-axis voltage component |
| $v_q$ | q-axis voltage component |
| $V_{dcp}$ | Primary side dc voltage |
| $V_{dc}$ | DC voltage |
| $V_{dcs}$ | Secondary side dc voltage |
| $V_H$, $V_{dcH}$ | The high voltage side dc voltage |
| $V_L$, $V_{dcL}$ | The low voltage side dc voltage |
| $\omega_s$ | Switching angular frequency |
| $\omega_e$ | grid angular frequency |

## Subscripts

| | |
|---|---|
| $g$ | AC grid value |
| $g$ | AC grid value |
| $p$ | Primary side value |
| max | maximum value |
| min | minimum value |
| $s$ | Secondary side value |

# Abstract

DC fault protection is one challenge impeding the development of multi-terminal dc grids. The absence of manufacturing and operational standards has led to many point-to-point HVDC links built at different voltage levels, which creates another challenge. Therefore, the issues of voltage matching and dc fault isolation in high voltage dc systems are undergoing extensive research and are the focus of this thesis. The modular multilevel design of dual active bridge (DAB) converters is analysed in light of state-of-the-art research in the field. The multilevel DAB structure is meant to serve medium and high voltage applications. The modular design facilitates scalability in terms of manufacturing and installation, and permits the generation of an output voltage with controllable *dv/dt*. The modular design is realized by connecting an auxiliary soft voltage clamping circuit across each semiconductor switch (for instance insulated gate bipolar transistor – IGBT) of the series switch arrays in the conventional two-level DAB design. With auxiliary active circuits, series connected IGBTs effectively become series connection of half-bridge submodules (cells) in each arm, resembling the modular multilevel converter (MMC) structure. For each half-bridge cell, capacitance for quasi-square wave (quasi two-level) operation is significantly smaller than typical capacitance used in MMCs. Also, no bulky arm inductors are needed. Consequently, the footprint, volume, weight and cost of cells are lower. Four switching sequences are proposed and analysed in terms of switching losses and operation aspects. A design method to size converter components is proposed and validated. Soft-switching characteristics of the analysed DAB are found comparable to the case of a two-level DAB at the same ratings and conditions.

A family of designs derived from the proposed DAB design are studied in depth. Depending on the individual structure, they may offer further advantages in term of installed semiconductor power, energy storage, conduction losses, or footprint.

A non-isolated dc-dc converter topology which offers more compact and efficient station design with respect to isolated DAB – yet without galvanic isolation – is studied for quasi two-level (trapezoidal) operation and compared to the isolated versions.

In all the proposed isolated designs, active control of the dc-dc converter facilitates dc voltage regulation and near instant isolation of pole-to-pole and pole-to-ground dc faults within its protection zone. The same can be achieved for the considered non-isolated dc-dc converter topology with additional installed semiconductors.

Simulation and experimental results are presented to substantiate the proposed concepts.

# Contents

# Chapter 1

# Introduction

## 1.1 Background

The global concerns of escalating environmental problems and alarming climate change have put immense pressure on policy makers to enforce greenhouse gas emission capping targets on various economic sectors worldwide. In a bid to prevent dangerous anthropogenic interference with the climate system, the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) has been negotiated at the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro in 1992 [1]. The UNFCCC was extended in 1997 by the Kyoto Protocol which entered into force in 2005 with 192 parties involved [2]. In the 2015 United Nations Climate Change Conference, held in Paris, the 195 participating parties agreed by consensus to so called 'Paris Agreement'. Despite the absence of clear mechanisms or specific emission-reduction targets, the Paris Agreement binds member states to commit to keeping global warming well below 2º C once 55 states who produce combined at least 55% of global greenhouse gas have ratified the agreement. According to some scientists, a 1.5 °C goal for instance will require zero greenhouse gas emissions globally sometime between 2030 and 2050 [3].

These ambitious carbon reduction targets are a major driving force towards mixing up the global energy resource with a significant share of renewable and green energy sources. As of the end of 2015, a total of 1849 GW of renewable installed energy resources were integrated to electricity grids worldwide. Hydro power contributes the major section of the renewable mix by 1064 GW, followed by 433 GW of installed wind power, 227 GW global solar PV installations, 106 GW of biomass, and 13.2 GW of geothermal power generation [4].

The inherent stochasticity of many of the renewable energy supplies – primarily wind and solar power – brings about stability challenges to electricity grids. Phasing out significant portions of controlled conventional generation plants (e.g., coal-fired power plants or nuclear plants) may upset the intricate demand-supply balance mechanisms and lead to intolerable frequency swings. The steady spinning reserve traditionally provided by conventional plants to handle such power imbalances is harder to manage by stochastic renewable resources.

Despite these technical challenges, the political pressure mounting worldwide – as seen for instance in Germany – leaves less room in future energy scenarios for conventional generation in the energy supply mix for provision of base load and other ancillary services. In consequence, regional and international grid interconnections appear inevitable in such an energy supply scenario to retain system security by continuous power exchange between national grids. High capacity transmission lines are also needed to relieve congested power corridors in the current and future power trading scenarios with an ever-increasing power demand. In consequence, there is a pressing need for environmentally-friendly technology capable of transmitting bulk amounts of power over large distances with tolerable levels of losses and high degrees of security of supply.

For decades, high voltage dc (HVDC) grids have been viewed as a key element in building anticipated high capacity transmission systems. At high power and long distances, traditional ac transmission systems become more expensive than equivalent dc lines. With overhead transmission, bipolar HVDC lines require smaller towers and significantly less right-of-way than equivalent three phase double circuit ac lines. The cost break-even point is at about 600-800km distance (see Figure 1.1). For underground or subsea transmission, high ac cable charging currents render system design and efficiency infeasible such that dc is favoured beyond about 50 km [5], [6], [7], [8]. Nevertheless, realization of dc transmission systems at high voltage and high power has always been surrounded by challenges ranging from the need for suitable business models to major technical obstacles and, with certain technologies, lack of operational experience.

Despite the challenges highlighted above the concept continues to gain momentum across the industry. In particular two major projects are set to benefit from HVDC technology; namely the 'European Supergrid' [9] and 'Desertec' [10]. In its early phases, the European Supergrid aims at interconnecting at least the power grids of several European countries along with offshore wind farms dispersed around the North Sea and major hydropower plants (see Figure 1.2).

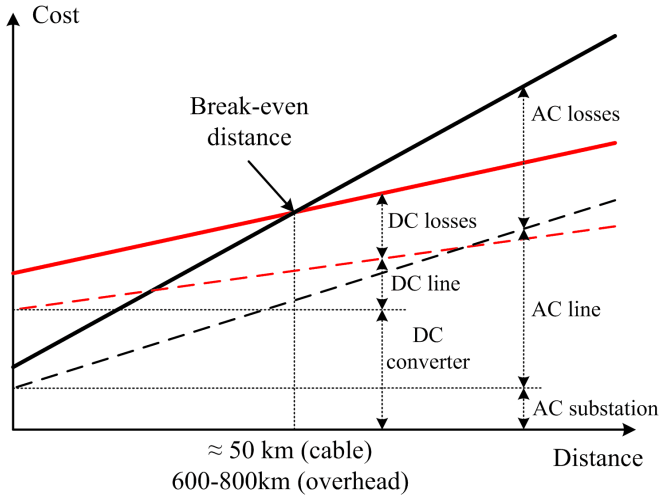



Figure 1.1 Cost comparison between ac and dc transmission lines with respect to line length.

Figure 1.2 The European Supergrid project to deliver the North Sea offshore wind energy to European onshore grids.

On the other hand, Desertec project is a global initiative to harness renewable energy from several regions in the world with current focus on Europe, the Middle East, and North Africa (see Figure 1.3). This stage is known for short as Desertec EU-MENA. The Middle East (ME) and North Africa (NA) are particularly characterized by an abundant solar energy resource. The ultimate goal is thus to build large scale solar and wind power stations in MENA region and develop a Euro-Mediterranean electricity network primarily made up of HVDC lines. The long term goals set by such large-scale projects contribute significantly to the drive for adequate generation and transmission technology, particularly HVDC technology.


Figure 1.3 The Desertec EU-MENA project to trade the North African and Middle Eastern renewable energy with Europe.

The world's first commercial HVDC line was the Gotland 1 project in Sweden which was commissioned in 1954 and employed mercury arc valves. The technology evolved quickly over the following two decades and as of the late 1970s, thyristor based line commutated converter (LCC) technology became the commercial standard for HVDC point-to-point projects. LCC technology – also known as HVDC Classic – is now a mature solution that has been predominantly used for transmitting power over long distances. Point-to-point transmission ratings of about 3 GW over long distances (>1000 km) with only one bipolar HVDC Classic dc line are state of the art. The technology has witnessed a further leap in voltage and power ratings with the world's first ±800 kV dc project built in China (Yunnan- Guangdong) having a

transmission rating of 5 GW [11]. As well, another ±800 kV LCC HVDC link in China (Xiangjiaba – Shanghai) has been commissioned in 2010 with 6.4 GW rating [12]. Additional Chinese projects of 6–8 GW or possibly higher are in the planning stages.

Despite the maturity and reliability of LCC technology, it has the following shortcomings [6], [13]:

- Power flow is reversed by changing dc voltage polarity.
- Requires strong ac connection with a stiff ac voltage for proper operation (to avoid commutation failure)
- Large ac filters are required to filter ac current and meet converter's reactive power demand
- No decoupled active and reactive power control

For the above reasons, LCC is a less attractive technology for multi-terminal dc (MTDC) connections where several point-to-point HVDC links are interconnected.

## 1.2 Multi-terminal dc networks

Voltage-source converter (VSC) technology, on the other hand, offers an essential feature; power reversal is realized without reversing the dc voltage polarity. Thus, bidirectional power flow is possible electronically at fast power reversal rates. Additionally, VSC stations can provide black start as well as decoupled active and reactive power control for operation at unity power factor (or within a small range of power factor values) in steady state where relatively smaller filters are required to remove high order harmonics from the ac current waveforms. Therefore, the VSC multi-terminal HVDC grid is the core of academia and industry interests when looking beyond point-to-point connections [6], [8].

A major push to the commercial utilization of the VSC concept in modern HVDC systems is the development of a fully modular VSC concept, known as the modular multilevel converter (MMC) [14]. With its modular design, the MMC concept simplifies manufacturing and installation processes and, most significantly, it conceptually permits the scalability of the VSC concept to ultra-high voltage levels.

Unlike ac systems, voltage collapse in dc lines is very quick under dc faults. With the current-source based LCC technology, controllers are able to handle the fault condition before the dc current rises to destructive levels to the thyristors. Moreover, thyristors are advantageously characterized by a high surge current capability. This high surge capability is not available to state of the art IGBT/diode modules which form the building block of contemporary VSC technologies. Without additional circuitry, the VSC circuit is forced to an uncontrolled rectifier mode once the dc voltage dips and the semiconductor devices may be damaged by the uncontrollable high current rushing through freewheeling diodes into the dc side. The dc fault vulnerability of VSCs constitutes one major showstopper for MTDC networks realization to date.

As VSC vulnerable diodes cannot handle the fault current for more than a few milliseconds, dependence on ac-circuit breakers to trip the circuit is not suitable since they typically interrupt the fault current in 2-3 power frequency cycles. Several solutions have been proposed to address this problem for a point-to-point link. These can be classified into three generic concepts:

1. Diverting fault current into a bypass path until the fault is externally interrupted; typically by an ac side breaker;
2. Injecting a sufficient reverse dc voltage in the dc circuit to quickly suppress dc current, or;
3. Triggering a controlled ac side fault so as to inhibit fault current infeed from the ac circuit.

The bypass concept is typically realized using bypass thyristors triggered to share the fault current with affected freewheeling diodes until the ac side breaker trips the circuit [15]. Although in industrial use (e.g. Trans Bay Cable project), this solution is not optimal particularly for overhead HVDC lines.

Injecting reverse dc voltage in the dc circuit can be administered by either more complex VSC structures (e.g., as in [16] and [17]) or by using a dc circuit breaker (DCCB) connected at the VSC dc side (e.g., as in [18] and [19]). Regardless of the technology used to build said DCCB, the latter will need to be significantly quicker

than mechanical ac circuit breakers and also be able to dissipate the energy stored in the dc circuit.

The third concept creates a controlled ac fault at the ac terminals of the VSC station to stop current infeed into the dc circuit under fault [20], [21].

Analogous to ac grids, reliable dc networks must feature defined protection zones with high selectivity where all types of faults are rapidly isolated without affecting the rest of the system. Regardless of the protection arrangement for terminal VSC stations, dc circuit breakers are required at dc nodes (internal busbars) to interrupt high fault currents in the absence of zero current crossings. As previously mentioned, conventional ac mechanical circuit breakers are slow and suited to ac type faults. On the other hand, solid-state dc circuit breakers composed entirely from forced commutation semiconductor devices can achieve fast interruption times albeit at high capital cost and on-state operational losses [19]. As a compromise a hybrid dc circuit breaker has been proposed where a mechanical path serves as a main conduction path with minimal losses during normal operation, and a parallel connected solid-state breaker is used for dc fault isolation [18]. However, capital cost remains high, and it has relatively large footprint. The mechanical opening time is a few milliseconds at 320kV [22]. Also, the semiconductors conduct and commutate high fault currents arising during the mechanical path opening time.

It can thus be concluded that there is no efficient solution to the dc fault protection in an MTDC network to date. As research and development is underway, the most satisfactory solution seems to be a fast mechanical dc circuit breaker that is capable of interrupting the circuit in less than 2ms. While this is a very stringent requirement from a mechanical assembly, it might be eventually achieved in the coming one or two decades given the substantial effort and investment dedicated to developing such a mechanical breaker.

In addition to effective protection in faulty conditions, voltage regulation and optimized power flows through network lines are also mandatory for proper and efficient operation of a dc grid. Dual to frequency in an ac network, a stable dc voltage level is the indicator to power balance along the dc system. It follows that

subtle dc voltage control schemes must be developed and utilized. Several techniques have already been devised [23]. However, most of these techniques are not suitable for generic dc grids with large numbers of converters and dc nodes.

A real dc super-grid with multiple in-feed points, tapping points, and various terminals connected to different ac grids renders the voltage regulation issue even more complex. Forming and solving an optimal dc load flow problem may be a practical solution to calculate terminal voltage set points. Information and commands throughout the network can be exchanged between individual dc nodes and a control center, which determines optimal load flow scenarios similar to ac systems [24].

## 1.3 Motivation and objectives

In general, any attempt to address voltage regulation in a real dc grid cannot disregard that it is not possible to build a vast grid without voltage stepping and matching. Unlike an ac transformer, so called 'dc transformer' will be based on active controlled power electronic components where dc voltage control and/or power flow control can be readily augmented. Having grid components dispersed through the DC network actively contributing to voltage regulation, power flow control and rapid fault protection, in addition to terminal ports, will significantly boost network controllability and security.

While organizations such as CIGRE, IEEE, and IEC are developing guidelines and standards for common HVDC manufacturing and operation practices, more point-to-point links are planned and commissioned in the absence of common standards [25]. The result is more point-to-point connections at different voltage levels (*e.g.* ±80kV, ±150kV and ±320kV), technology, and topology concepts. Therefore, apart from any efficiency considerations, high power dc-dc converters (dc transformers) appear the only way to interconnect and retrofit existing point-to-point links.

When dc transformers built with active components are present at vital nodes throughout a potential dc grid, an augmented fault protection function will constitute a milestone towards a super-grid. It is, therefore, a motivation of this research to explore the possibilities of dc fault isolation being administered by dc transformers at dc nodes.

In light of the above discussion, the thesis primary objectives are:

- Reviewing state of the art dc-dc power electronics converter topologies and identifying main challenges impeding their utilization in high voltage and high power applications.
- Identifying a set of desirable features in candidate dc-dc power electronic converters for use in multi-terminal HVDC networks.
- Proposing and analysing a quasi-two level mode of operation for the modular multilevel converter as the kernel of an isolated dc-dc converter topology suitable for high voltage and high power applications
- Proposing and analysing a family of hybrid multilevel dc/ac converter topologies that utilizes said new mode of operation.
- Holding a thorough comparison between the considered topologies in terms of conduction losses, installed power electronics, soft switching characteristics, energy storage, and filtering requirements.
- Analysing the use of the proposed dc/ac converter topologies as the kernel of a non-isolated dc-dc converter topology and assessing its viability for high voltage and high power applications
- Provide conclusions as well as recommendations for future extension of the research undertaken in this thesis.

# Chapter 2

# DC-DC Converters for DC networks

This chapter reviews various dc-dc converter topologies and their building blocks with emphasis on their merit for high voltage and high power applications. The basic hard-switched dc-dc converters will be revisited. Basic dc/ac bridge structures suitable for so-called front-to-front or direct dc-dc converter topologies will be presented. A review of isolated and non-isolated dc-dc converter topologies will be conducted with emphasis on topologies of promise for HVDC. This chapter will conclude with a set of desirable features in any potential dc-dc converter for HVDC applications. This set of desirable features will be used in subsequent chapters to evaluate the new structures proposed in this thesis.

## 2.1 Hard switched DC-DC converters

Numerous designs of hard-switched dc-dc converters can be found in the literature [26]. Figure 2.1 depicts a three-port generic representation of non-isolated hard-switched dc-dc converter structures. In Figure 2.1 , $D$ is the switch on-state duty ratio, $V_{in}$ is input voltage, and $V_o$ and $V_o$' are output voltages. For the basic buck converter, $f$ (D) = D. For the basic boost converter, $f$ (D) = 1/(1 – D). For a basic buck-boost converter, $f$ (D) = – D/(1 – D).

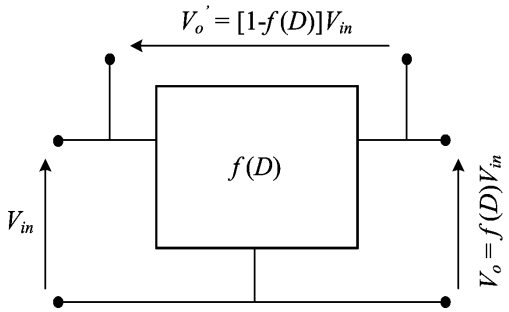
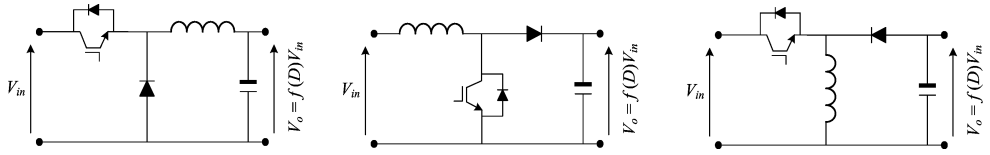



Figure 2.1 Generic three-port dc-dc converter representation

The three basic converters are shown in Figure 2.2. Further details as to their design and operation can be found in many sources (for instance, [27]) and it is not the focus of the current discussion. The key aspects of interest for the present discussion are the switching frequency, passive components design, and semiconductors blocking voltages. With higher voltage and power levels, it is desirable to minimize the size of the passive components (inductors and input and output capacitors). It is therefore desirable to increase the switching frequency. As a direct consequence, switching losses rise given the hard switching[1] nature of power electronic switches.

On the other hand, the blocking voltage of power electronic components is $V_{in}$ for the buck converter, $V_o$ for the boost converter, and $V_{in} + |V_o|$ for the buck-boost converter. It follows that to scale these designs to higher voltages, series connection of active switching devices is necessary. Series connection of insulated gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs), for instance, is a demanding task that requires complex gate drives and snubber circuits to account for the non-uniform gating delays and enforce static and dynamic voltage sharing.

This discussion points to the apparent demerit of basic non-isolated hard-switched dc-dc converter designs beyond low voltage applications.




(a) (b) (c)

Figure 2.2 Basic dc-dc converter designs: (a) buck, (b), boost, and (c) buck-boost.

## 2.2 DC/AC bridge designs

DC/AC voltage source converter bridges are the building blocks of the isolated and non-isolated dc-dc converters reviewed in section 2.3 and section 2.4. Therefore, an understanding of their operating principles is essential. This section outlines relevant aspects in terms of their operation and control.

[1] A power electronic switch is hard switched when it truns on or off with current flow therein.

### 2.2.1 The two-level voltage source converters

The three-phase two-level VSC topology is shown schematically in Figure 2.3. Each phase leg hosts two semiconductor switches (or two series-connected switch arrays) which conduct complementarily with an intervening dead-time. During the dead time, both switches are gated off. Three phase alternating voltages can be produced at the three ac poles. The voltage of each ac pole with respect to dc link midpoint is one phase voltage. With a constant dc voltage, the alternating phase voltage at each ac pole is a square wave. Therefore it cannot be operated in 180º modulation when interfaced directly to electric grids and more sophisticated modulation techniques are needed. Two-level VSC modulation techniques have been intensively researched with three primary targets in mind: mitigating harmonic distortion in the VSC ac voltages and currents, improving dc link utilization, and minimize switching losses.

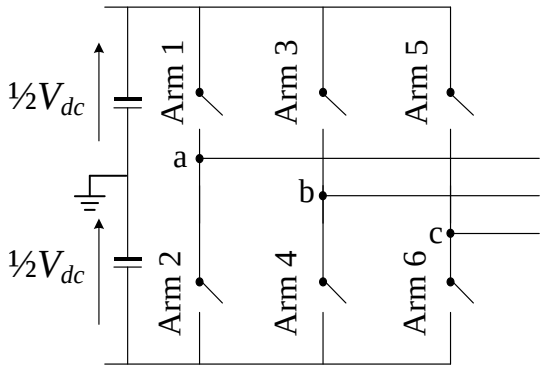



Figure 2.3 A two-level three phase voltage source converter

Generally, sinusoidal pulse width modulation (SPWM) generates a train of pulses with a voltage-second area the same as that of the reference signal over one switching or fundamental cycle [28]. Its downside is that the maximum linear modulation index is limited to 1pu beyond which non-linear over-modulation occurs and additional low order harmonics are generated in the output. Furthermore, the semiconductor devices are switched at the carrier frequency. This leads to significant

switching losses given the carrier frequency should be significantly higher than the fundamental voltage (in the kHz range).

SPWM with triplen or third harmonic injection extends the maximum modulation index to 1.155pu with all other SPWM features retained. The triplen voltage components in the output voltage cancel in the line-to-line voltages and thus do not appear in the load currents.

Space vector modulation (SVM) is developed from the space vector representation of the inverter output voltage in the α-β plane. The dc voltage utilization is 1.155pu, and it offers additional flexibility in terms of pulse placement and switching patterns selection, hence switching losses can be optimized. SVM is suitable for real-time and digital implementation, but it assumes a perfect three phase grid/load in terms of phase and magnitude [28].

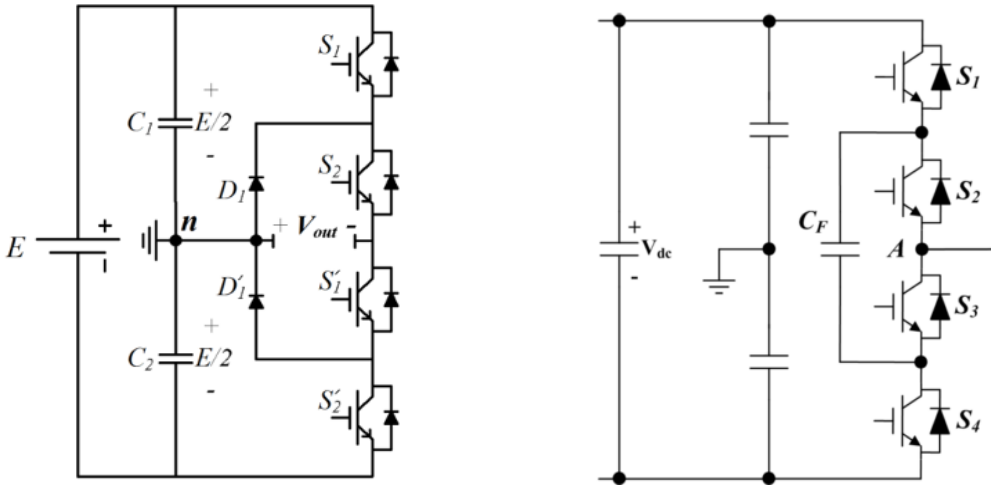
Selective harmonic elimination (SHE) is another modulation technique that controls the fundamental voltage and eliminates specific harmonics by directly calculating the switching instances. In this manner, it generates high quality output voltage at a lower switching frequency than other modulation methods. It also enables the VSC to operate at a relatively high modulation index (exceeding 1.155pu) as achievable in three-phase systems.

### 2.2.2 Multilevel voltage source converters

Two level VSCs traditionally suffer from EMI problems due to the high *dv/dt* at medium voltages (or even low voltages above a few hundreds of volts). Multilevel converter structures have been introduced to mitigate this problem by introducing additional levels in the output voltage. This also improves the total harmonic distortion (THD) figure in the output voltage and simplifies the connection series semiconductor devices to block the dc voltage as required in medium voltage applications (e.g., variable speed drives).

A group of multilevel converters is based on the clamping technique. An example of clamped converters is the diode clamped multilevel converter (DCMC) depicted in Figure 2.4a and the flying capacitor multilevel converter (FCMC) shown in Figure

2.4b [29]. The three-level DCMC, also called the neutral point clamped (NPC) converter, was proposed in 1981 [30] and later extended to general multilevel cases in 1983 [31]. Then, the flying capacitor multilevel converter was introduced in [32]. Several other topologies have been derived over the years from the basic DCMC and FCMC concepts. Examples of these topologies are; the active neutral point clamped (ANPC) converter [33], hybrid clamped multilevel converter (HCMC) [34], and the multilevel-clamped multilevel converter ($MLC^2$) [35].




(a) (b)

Figure 2.4 (a) Schematic of the diode clamped converter, and (b) a schematic of the flying capacitor inverter.

On the downside, these topologies become complex in terms of power circuit and modulation when the voltage level number is increased. Additionally, the power switching device losses are not evenly distributed among the switches in each arm, which challenges loss analysis and thermal design.

To provide high number of voltage levels in the output, the cascaded full-bridge converter was introduced. It was a significant step towards enhanced modularity of industrial converters offering simplicity of the power circuit and control design. As shown in Figure 2.5, several full-bridge converter modules are cascaded in each phase and are modulated such that each module produces a voltage level of certain

duty ratio so as to synthesize a low-THD phase voltage waveform. The primary drawback of the cascaded full-bridge converter is the requirement of a separate dc source for each module. These dc sources can be photovoltaic panels or batteries which is complex to arrange in a real industrial environment [36]. The challenge of using the cascaded-full-bridge converter concept with a common dc-link has been solved with the introduction of the modular multilevel converter concept in 2001 [37].

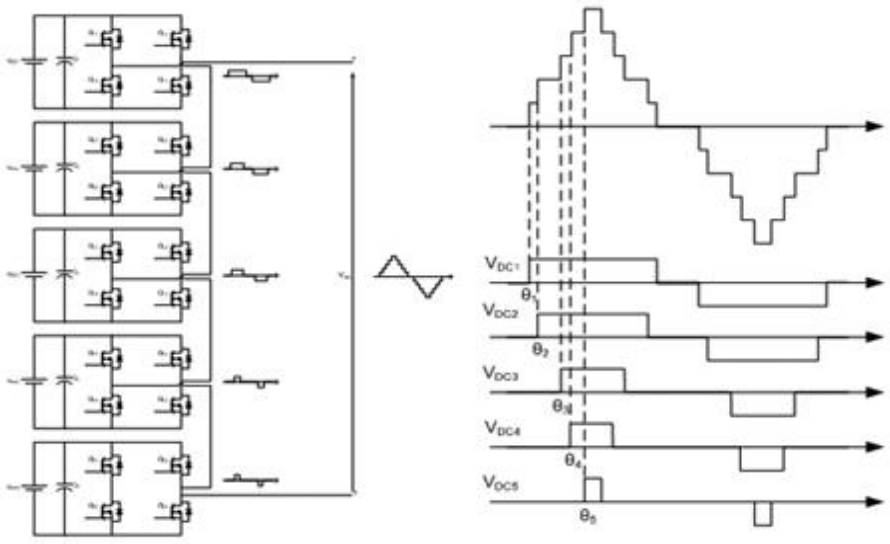



Figure 2.5 Structure and waveforms of an 11-level cascaded full bridge multilevel converter.

### 2.2.3 The modular multilevel converter (MMC)

The arm of each phase leg in an MMC comprises typically a cascade connection of half-bridge VSC chopper cells (HB cells) connected in series with an arm inductor as in Figure 2.6. The MMC was first introduced in 2001 [38] and features the following merits [39]:

- Distributed capacitive energy storages rather than a concentrated dc link capacitor;
- Modular design which facilitates manufacturing, assembly, and maintenance;

- Redundancy is possible in a simple manner as well as scaling to high voltages by series connection of HB cells;
- Low total harmonic distortion in the ac output.
- Grid connection via standard transformer or transformerless; and
- Possibility of common dc bus configurations for multi-drive and high-power applications.

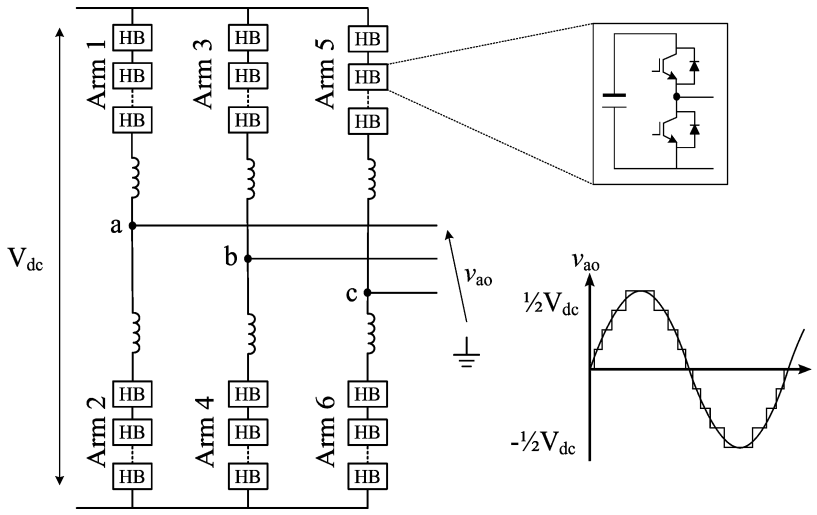



Figure 2.6 Generic Structure of the modular multilevel converter.

On the down side, the converter requires a higher number of semiconductors and gate units (e.g., with respect to the two-level VSC). The total stored energy of the distributed capacitors is significantly higher than that of a conventional 2L-VSC or NPC-VSC, which reflects on bridge volume.

### 2.2.3.1 MMC operation

Conventionally, established modulation techniques operate the MMC such that the upper and lower arms of the same phase-leg conduct simultaneously, and this constitutes the sum of the cell capacitor voltages in conduction path of both arms must be equal to the total DC link voltage minus the AC voltage drop in the arm

inductances [40]. This necessitates the voltages developed across the cell capacitors of the upper and lower arms to be complementary, which can be approximated by;

$$\begin{aligned} v_{uj} &= \tfrac{1}{2}V_{dc}\left(1 - m\sin(\omega_s t + \varphi_j)\right) \\ v_{lj} &= \tfrac{1}{2}V_{dc}\left(1 + m\sin(\omega_s t + \varphi_j)\right) \end{aligned} \tag{2.1}$$

where $V_{dc}$, $v_{uj}$, and $v_{lj}$ are the converter input dc link voltage, upper arm voltage, and lower arm voltage, respectively; $j$ representing phase a, b, or c, $m$ being the modulation index, and $\varphi_j = \left\{0, \tfrac{4}{3}\pi, \tfrac{2}{3}\pi\right\}$ for the three phases a, b, and c, respectively. With the arm voltages in (2.1), the ac pole voltage is a staircase sinusoidal output of peak magnitude ± ½$V_{dc}$. Thus minimal harmonic content is present in the ac pole voltage and no ac filters are required should the number of steps be sufficient [37], [41].

With such simultaneous operation of the upper and lower arms of each MMC phase leg, the arm currents of each phase-leg contain ac and dc components. With reference to the equivalent circuit of Figure 2.7 , the upper and lower arms currents of one phase leg can be expressed as in (2.2) and (2.3).

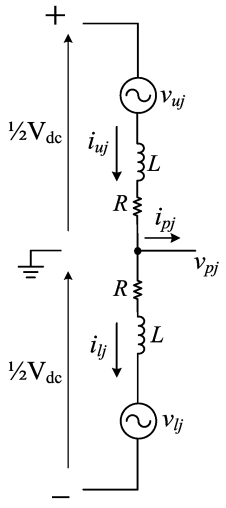



Figure 2.7 The equivalent circuit of one MMC phase leg.

$$\begin{aligned} i_{uj} &= \tfrac{1}{2} i_{pj} + i_{CMj} \\ i_{lj} &= i_{CMj} - \tfrac{1}{2} i_{pj} \end{aligned} \tag{2.2}$$

where;

$$i_{pj} = I_{pj} \sin(\omega_s t - \varphi_{ij}) \tag{2.3}$$

$\varphi_{ij}$ being the current phase angle in each ac pole and $I_{pj}$ the peak phase current. The fundamental frequency ac component of the arm current (½$i_{pj}$) represents the fundamental current that is associated with active power exchange between the converter and the ac side. In (2.2), $i_{CM}$ represents the common mode current component of the arm current which represents the power exchange between the converter and the dc side. It also contains a number of low-order harmonics (predominantly 2nd harmonic) that are caused by cell capacitor voltage fluctuations in attempting to counter the ac voltage drop in the arm inductances. The sum of even order harmonic arm currents is also called the circulating current. The sum of circulating currents in all phase legs is zero. This implies the circulating currents are decoupled from the ac and dc circuits and flow only within the MMC circuit. $i_{CMj}$ can be expressed as in (2.4) [42] [41].

$$i_{CM} = \tfrac{1}{3} I_{dc} + I_{2j} \sin(2\omega_s t - \varphi_{2j}) \tag{2.4}$$

where $I_{dc}$, $I_{2j}$, and $\varphi_{2j}$ are the dc common mode current component, peak 2nd harmonic current, and 2nd harmonic current phase angle in each phase, respectively. The loop equations of the MMC phase leg in Figure 2.7 are;

$$L\frac{di_{uj}}{dt} + Ri_{uj} + v_{pj} + v_{uj} = \tfrac{1}{2} V_{dc} \tag{2.5}$$

$$L\frac{di_{lj}}{dt} + Ri_{lj} - v_{pj} + v_{lj} = \tfrac{1}{2} V_{dc} \tag{2.6}$$

Summing (2.5) and (2.6) yields (2.7).

$$v_{diff-j} = L\frac{d}{dt}\left(i_{uj} + i_{lj}\right) + R\left(i_{uj} + i_{lj}\right) = V_{dc} - \left(v_{uj} + v_{lj}\right) \tag{2.7}$$

Using (2.2), (2.7) evolves to

$$v_{diff-j} = 2\left(L\frac{d}{dt}i_{CMj} + Ri_{CMj}\right) = V_{dc} - \left(v_{uj} + v_{lj}\right) \tag{2.8}$$

where $v_{diff-j}$ is the voltage difference between the dc side and the phase leg voltage. From (2.8) the voltage $v_{diff-j}$ can be used to control the common mode current $i_{CMj}$ by controlling the energy exchange in the phase leg so as to suppress or minimize the circulating current component.

Assuming the number of cell capacitors inserted in the conduction path at any instant in the upper and lower arms are $N_{uj}$' and $N_{lj}$', respectively, the common mode current $i_{CMj}$ can be expressed in terms of the upper arm voltage $v_{uj}$ and the lower arm voltage $v_{lj}$ as in (2.9) – (2.11) [43].

$$i_{uj} = \frac{N_{uj}^{'}}{N}C_{cell}\frac{dv_{uj}}{dt} \quad , \quad i_{lj} = \frac{N_{lj}^{'}}{N}C_{cell}\frac{dv_{lj}}{dt} \tag{2.9}$$

Substituting (2.2) into (2.9), the latter can be rewritten as in (2.10);

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dv_{uj}}{dt} &= \frac{Ni_{CMj}}{N_{uj}^{'}C_{cell}} + \frac{Ni_{pj}}{2N_{uj}^{'}C_{cell}} \\ \frac{dv_{lj}}{dt} &= \frac{Ni_{CMj}}{N_{lj}^{'}C_{cell}} - \frac{Ni_{pj}}{2N_{lj}^{'}C_{cell}} \end{aligned} \tag{2.10}$$

Also, the common mode current loop equation is;

$$\frac{di_{CMj}}{dt} = \frac{R}{L}i_{CMj} + \frac{1}{2L}\left(v_{uj} + v_{lj} - V_{dc}\right) \tag{2.11}$$

Equations (2.10) and (2.11) form the set of differential equations of (2.12) and (2.13) which can be used to design suitable controllers to suppress the circulating current in

the phase leg. Circulating current suppression control loops have been developed and verified in several papers (e.g. [44] and [45]).

$$\overset{o}{x} = \mathrm{A}x + \mathrm{B}u \tag{2.12}$$

where;

$$x = \begin{bmatrix} i_{CMj} \\ v_{uj} \\ v_{lj} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathrm{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{R}{L} & \frac{1}{2L} & \frac{1}{2L} \\ \frac{N}{N_{uj}^{'} C_{cell}} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{N}{N_{lj}^{'} C_{cell}} & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$\mathrm{B} = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2L} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{N}{2N_{uj}^{'} C_{cell}} & 0 \\ 0 & -\frac{N}{2N_{lj}^{'} C_{cell}} & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad u = \begin{bmatrix} V_{dc} \\ i_{pj} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{2.13}$$

In steady-state, the converter power exchange with the ac side equals the power exchanged with the dc side. Under such a condition, the converter cell capacitors exchange zero net active power with the ac side over one or several fundamental cycles. However, the capacitors energies in each arm need to be balanced so that their voltages are maintained within a certain band around the desired set point $V_{dc}/N$.

Several modulation and balancing methods have been proposed to achieve cell voltage balancing with minimal switching and control effort based on level-shifted PWM (e.g., [39], [41], [46]) phase-shifted PWM (e.g., [47], [48], [49]), selective harmonic elimination (SHE) [50]. But the simplest of these particularly for high number of output levels is the so called nearest level control (NLC) [51]–[52].

The simplest NLC sequence is shown in the flowchart of Figure 2.8 where it is desired to keep all cell voltages within a certain band. In each control cycle all cell capacitors per arm are measured as well as arm current. Cells are then ordered in an *insertion array* depending on arm current direction. When arm current flows in the capacitors charging direction (identified here as $i_{arm} > 0$) the cells are ordered in an ascending order in the insertion array such that cells with the lowest voltages are inserted in the conduction path. When arm current flows otherwise in the discharging direction (identified as $i_{arm} < 0$) the cells are ordered in a descending order in the insertion array such that cells with the highest voltages are inserted in the conduction path.

The number of capacitors per arm to be inserted in the conduction path in each control cycle $N$' is obtained – in the simplest form – by dividing the arm reference voltage $V_{ref}$ generated from the current control loop by nominal cell voltage $V_{cell}$ and rounding the result to the nearest integer [51].

When an MMC is used for HVDC applications, several hundred HB cells may need to be connected in series in each MMC arm. Measurement of all the cell voltages each control cycle as required by the NLC constitutes a higher computation burden. Frequent cell voltage measurement is important not only for the voltage balancing algorithm, but also to swiftly detect individual cell failures and neutralize their impact on the operation of the whole MMC.

The number of measurements can be reduced when medium voltage HB cells are utilized as in ABB's MMC design known as the cascaded two level converter (C2L). In said medium voltage HB cell, each of the two semiconductor switch positions is realized by series connection of IGBTs. In Figure 2.9, eight press-pack IGBT modules are connected in series in each switch position. Another salient advantage of the series connection is the cell's ability to continue operation with a faulted IGBT in either switch position provided they fail to short-circuit, which is a characteristic of press-pack IGBT design [53]. To ensure this ability, sufficient voltage rating redundancy must be considered in design.

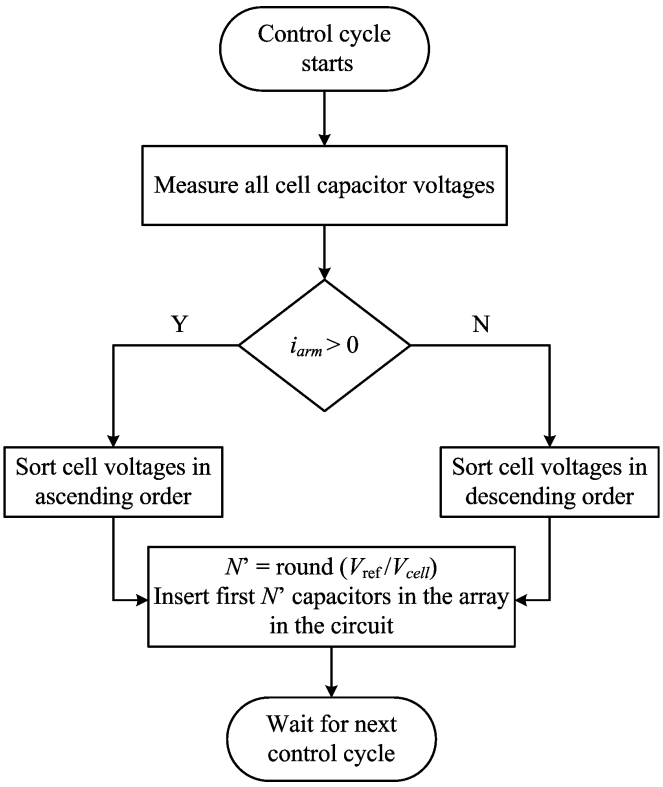



Figure 2.8 Flowchart of the simplest NLC with cell voltage sorting.

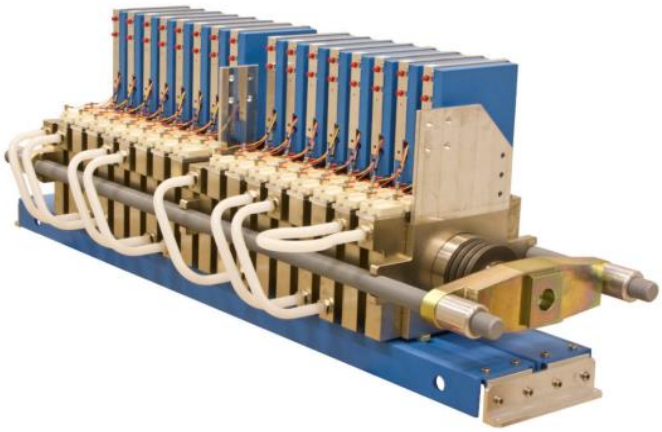


Figure 2.9 Medium voltage half bridge cell with eight series connected IGBTs in each switch position (Picture obtained with permission of ABB [53]).

Pulse width modulation is reportedly used in the C2L partly to achieve lower THD with respect to NLC given the lower number of output voltage levels in a C2L relative to an equivalent MMC with standard HB cells.

Unlike the two-level VSC, the MMC does not require a dc-link capacitor for dc current filtering but rather employs many low voltage capacitors in the circuit. The overall energy storage in a three phase MMC is therefore;

$$E_{MMC} = \frac{3}{N} C_{cell} V_{dc}^2 \tag{2.14}$$

It is customary to use so-called specific energy which defines the amount of stored kJ of energy per MVA of the MMC rating. This is defined as;

$$E_s = \frac{3}{NS_{MMC}} C_{cell} V_{dc}^2 \tag{2.15}$$

From which the cell capacitance can be found;

$$C_{cell} = \frac{E_s S_{MMC}}{3NV_{cell}^2} \tag{2.16}$$

It was suggested in [53] that a specific energy value of 30 – 40 kJ/MVA keeps the cell voltage ripple to within 10%. It was shown in [54] that for a 1059MVA ±320kV MMC with 400 cell per arm, the cell capacitance to achieve said specific energy range at 1.6kV nominal cell voltage is about 10mF (using 2.16).

In this example, the total energy stored in the MMC as calculated from (2.14) is about 30.72 MJ which is nearly triple the energy stored in an equivalent two-level VSC assuming a 50μF dc-link capacitance is used. The required energy storage clearly reflects on the volume of the HB cell. Figure 2.10 and Figure 2.11 depict typical HB cells from two manufacturers. In Figure 2.10a, it can be observed that the capacitor volume consumes almost half the cell size in this design. Figure 2.10b depicts a stack of eight HB cells with cooling and fibre optic connections. Figure 2.11 depicts an ABB design where two medium voltage half bridges are mounted on the same structure. It can be seen that each medium voltage HB cell requires a bank of eight capacitors in this design as well as eight series connected press-pack IGBTs in each switch position in each cell (as was depicted in Figure 2.9).

It can thus be concluded that the large energy storage required for the MMC with respect to the two-level VSC, the MMC station size is relatively larger than an equivalent two-level VSC station. The required amount of energy storage is related to the fundamental frequency. In a GSC application, the MMC is bound to operation at 50 Hz, whereas in other applications (e.g., dc-dc conversion) where the frequency could be elevated, the amount of energy storage can be reduced, which can significantly reflect on station size. It will be shown in Chapter 3 that the amount of energy storage can be significantly reduced and also decoupled from the fundamental frequency by altering the MMC operating mode.

#### 2.2.3.2 Control loops

When the MMC is used as a grid-side converter, classic vector control can be used for current control. This will be introduced and used as the GSC controllers in section 5.6.

Assuming the MMC voltage space vector is $\overline{V_a}$ and is connected to an ac grid whose voltage space vector is $\overline{V_g}$ through an ac transformer whose leakage reactance is $X_{tr}$, the loop equation can be written in the stationary frame as in (2.17).

$$\overline{V_g}^s = \overline{V_a}^s + R_{tr}\overline{I_g}^s + L_{tr}p\overline{I_g}^s \tag{2.17}$$

The loop equation can be expressed in the synchronous rotating frame as in (2.18).

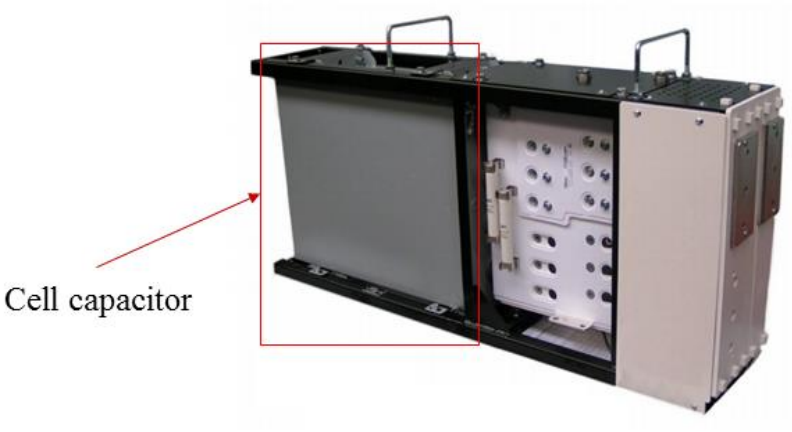
$$\overline{V_g}^e = \overline{V_a}^e + R_{tr}\overline{I_g}^e + L_{tr}p\overline{I_g}^e + j\omega_e L_{tr}\overline{I_g}^e \tag{2.18}$$

In (2.17) and (2.18) superscripts *s* and *e* refer to the stationary and synchronous frames of reference, respectively. $R_{tr}$ is the series resistance of the transformer windings, $\overline{I_g}$ is the grid current space vector, and *p* is the derivative operator. Rearranging (2.18);

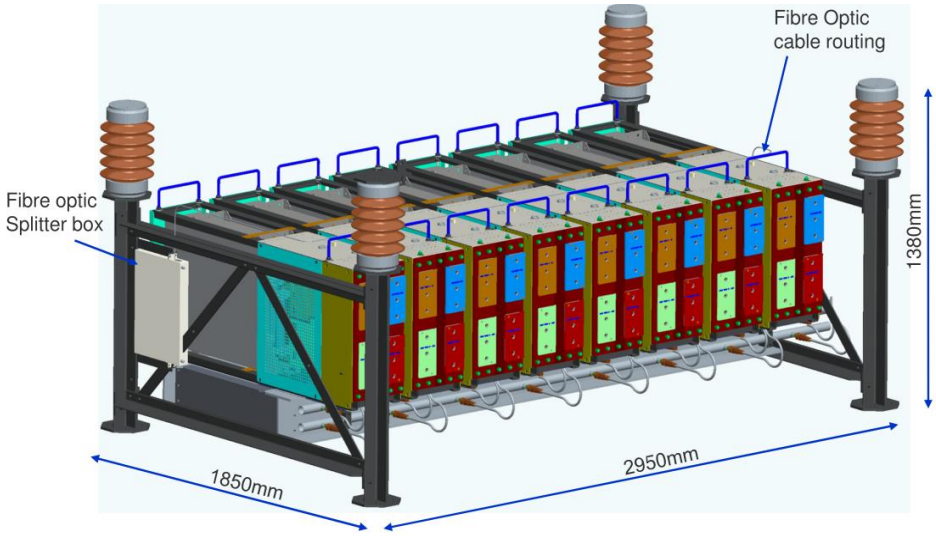
$$\overline{V_a}^e = \overline{V_g}^e - \left(R_{tr} + L_{tr}p\right)\overline{I_g}^e - j\omega_e L_{tr}\overline{I_g}^e \tag{2.19}$$

Resolving (2.19) to its d-q components;

$$v_{da}^{e} = v_{dg}^{e} - \left(R_{tr} + L_{tr}\,p\right) i_{dg}^{e} + j\omega_{e} L_{tr} i_{qg}^{e}$$
$$v_{qa}^{e} = v_{qg}^{e} - \left(R_{tr} + L_{tr}\,p\right) i_{qg}^{e} - j\omega_{e} L_{tr} i_{dg}^{e} \qquad (2.20)$$




(a)




(b)

Figure 2.10 (a) A half bridge cell with a single IGBT in each switch position, and (b) a stack of eight HB cells with cooling circuit and fiber optic connections (Pictures obtained with permission of GE/Alstom [55]).

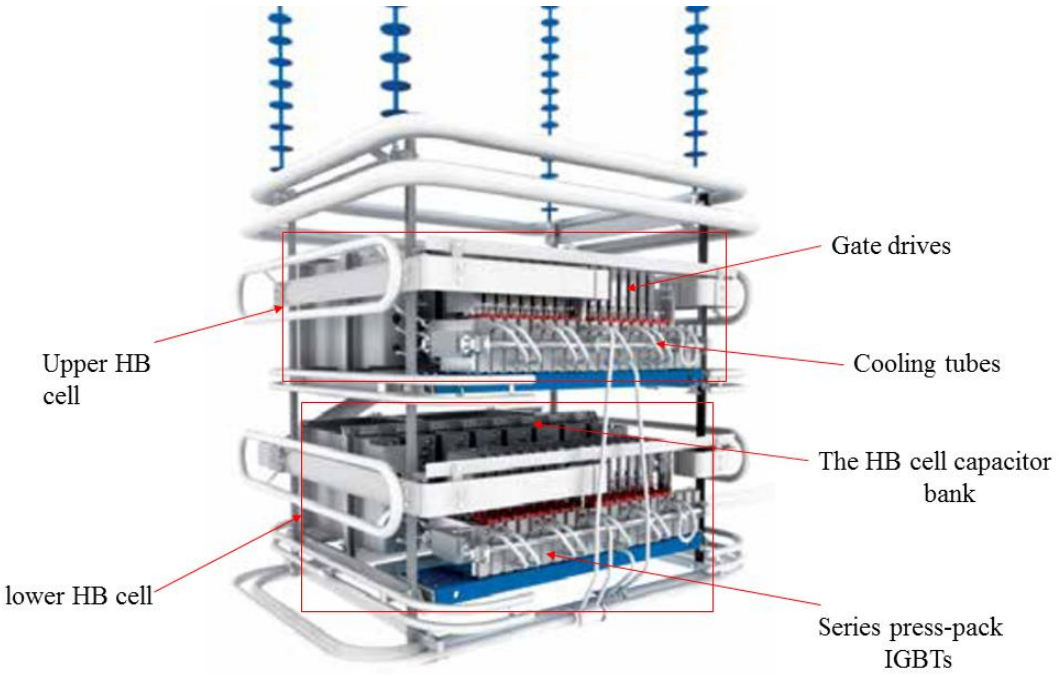



Figure 2.11 Design of so called 'double HB cell' which contains two medium voltage HB cells. (Picture obtained with permission of ABB [56]).

The grid-voltage phase angle $\theta_e$ and frequency $\omega_e$ are acquired using phase locked loop (PLL) which aligns the d-axis of the rotating frame of reference to grid voltage space vector. It follows that $v_{dg}^{e} = \left|\overline{V_g}\right|$ and $v_{qg}^{e} = 0$. The grid voltage and current are measured and transformed to d–q values in the resulting grid voltage oriented synchronous rotating frame. This way, the d-axis grid current component reflects the active power exchange between the MMC and the grid, whereas the q-axis component indicates the reactive power exchange. Consequently, MMC controllers under grid-voltage orientation must keep the q-axis grid current command $i_{qg}^{*} = 0$ for unity power factor operation in steady state.

From (2.20), the voltage commands fed to the MMC modulation and balancing algorithms become;

$$\begin{aligned} v_{da}^{e\,*} &= -\left(R_{tr} + L_{tr}\,p\right) i_{dg}^{e} + F_d \\ v_{qa}^{e\,*} &= -\left(R_{tr} + L_{tr}\,p\right) i_{qg}^{e} + F_q \end{aligned} \tag{2.21}$$

In (2.21), the terms $F_d$ and $F_q$ represent feedforward terms which are expanded in (2.22).

$$\begin{aligned} F_d &= \left|\overline{V_g}\right| + j\omega_e L_{tr} i^e_{qg} \\ F_q &= -j\omega_e L_{tr} i^e_{dg} \end{aligned} \tag{2.22}$$

The first term in each right hand side in (2.21) can be obtained by a proportional integral (PI) controller. The PI controller of the *d* or *q* current control loops is fed by the error signal between the measured *d* or *q* grid current component, and *d* or *q* grid current commands $i_{dg}$* and $i_{qg}$*, respectively. The output of each PI controller is then compensated by the respective feedforward term of (2.22) to produce the voltage commands $v_{da}$* and $v_{qa}$*.

As depicted in Figure 2.12 the *d*-axis current command is generated from an outer dc voltage control loop. This control loop compares the measured dc-link voltage to an external reference $V_{dc}^*$ and the error is fed to a PI controller that generates the d-axis grid current command. This outer loop could otherwise be a power flow control loop where the d-axis current reference is generated from the PI controller acting upon a power flow error signal.

As it is normally desired to operate the MMC at unity power factor (or a small range of power factor values) in steady state, the outer control loop that generates the q-axis current command processes an error signal between the measured reactive power and a zero-reactive power command (i.e., $Q_g^* = 0$). The online values of active and reactive power fed to the outer control loops can be constructed from the measured grid current according to (2.23).

$$P_g^e = \frac{3}{2} v_{dg}^e i_{dg}^e, \quad Q_g^e = -\frac{3}{2} v_{dg}^e i_{qg}^e \tag{2.23}$$

Both *d*-axis and *q*-axis inner current control loops must be of higher bandwidth than the outer control loops to achieve fast current control under transient conditions. This is an important consideration for tuning the PI controllers of said loops.

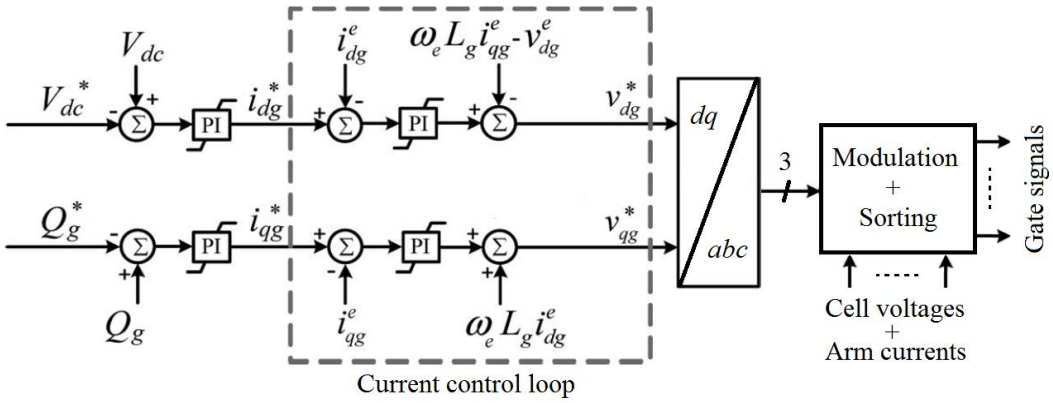



Figure 2.12 Generic control structure of a modular multilevel converter.

### 2.2.3.3 Operation under dc fault

As introduced in Chapter 1, when the voltage across the dc terminals of a voltage source converter drops beyond a certain value due to, for instance, a dc fault in the dc circuit to which said voltage source converter is connected, fault current flows in an uncontrollable manner from the ac power circuit to said dc power circuit. This uncontrolled current will overstress the solid state semiconductor components of said converter to the extent of irreversible damage if said dc fault current is not limited or interrupted quickly. This applies to the HB MMC as well. A solution to this problem is of critical importance particularly for medium voltage and HVDC transmission systems.

MMC operation under fault is investigated by a simulation case study in which a model of a 700 MVA ±200kV grid side HB-MMC station has been built in Simulink®/Matlab. The station is connected to a 100km dc line in a symmetric monopole arrangement. System parameters are given in Figure 2.13 and Table 2.1. DC cables are used; cable parameters are taken from the CIGRE B4 dc grid test system [57]. The MMC averaged model developed in [58] is utilized. This model has been validated against a 10kW experimental platform and shows high accuracy for MMC dc fault studies [58]. The VSC station is vector controlled in a power flow control mode where dc voltage is dictated by a stiff dc source at the other side of the 100km dc cables. A 200μs fault detection time is inserted before MMC IGBTs are

blocked, by which the dc current reaches 2pu. All IGBT threshold voltages and on-state slope resistances are considered throughout as per datasheets.

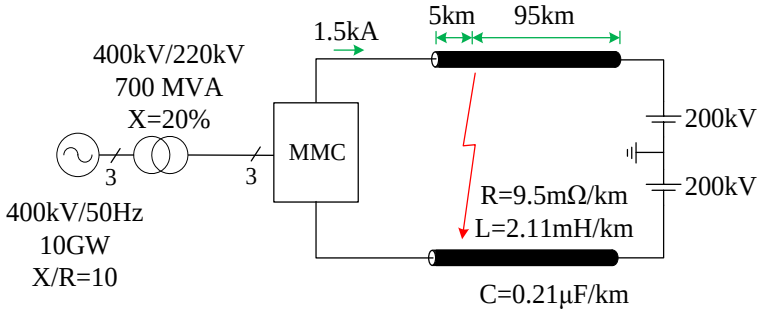
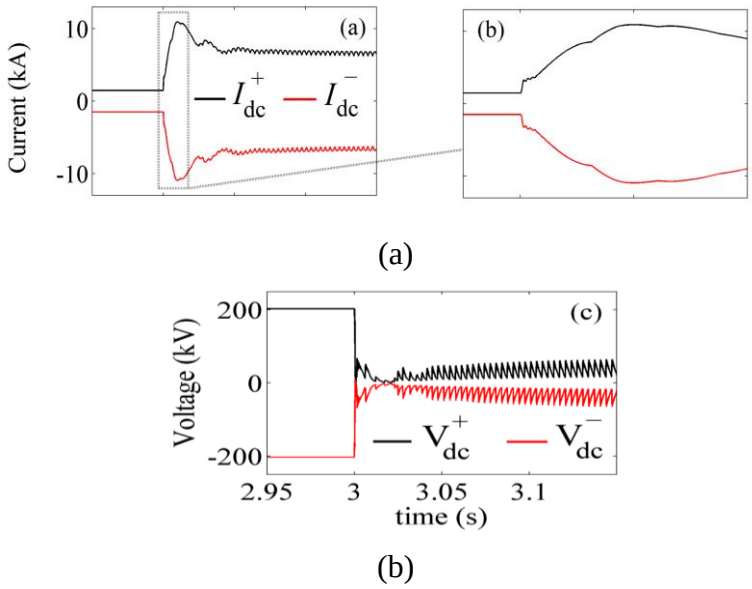



Figure 2.13 A dc-fault case study on a 700MVA, ±200kV MMC station.

TABLE 2.1
PARAMETERS OF THE SIMULATED MMC CASE STUDY

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cell capacitor ($C_c$) | 10mF | Cell voltage ($V_c$) | 3 kV |
| No. cells/arm ($N$) | 135 | Arm reactor ($L_{arm}$) | 15mH |
| MMC IGBT modules | | StakPak 5SNA-2000K450300 (4.5 kV – 2kA) | |

A pole-to-pole fault 5km away from the station is simulated at $t$ =3s. Fault resistance is modeled 1Ω. The 5 km cable distance is represented as 2 pi-sections at each dc pole. Figure 2.14a and Figure 2.14b depict dc pole voltages and currents at the station under said fault when MMC IGBTs are blocked without further protective action. While the dc voltage collapses immediately (<1 ms), the dc current shoots up quickly with a rate of rise which is only limited by the inductance in the fault path, MMC arm inductance, and ac impedance. The ac grid would feed the dc fault until the ac breakers trip the circuit in about 2-3 power cycles.




(a)

(b)

Figure 2.14 Numerical simulation results for the ±200kV 700MVA test station under pole-to-pole fault 5km away at $t$ = 3s without protection; (a) positive and negative dc pole fault current profiles without protection, (b) zoomed section of the fault current of (a), and (c) positive and negative dc pole voltage profiles without protection.

As reported in Chapter 1, a number of protection methods can be identified in the literature. Either thyristor bypass are used to protect vulnerable diodes, dc breakers used in the dc circuit, blocking VSC designs could be used, or a controlled ac fault could be triggered at the ac side to inhibit fault current injection from the ac side.

The bypass concept is typically realized using bypass thyristors connected across the terminals of each switching cell or unit of the converter which are triggered to share the dc fault current with affected freewheeling (antiparallel) diodes until a fast electromechanical switch forms an auxiliary bypass in wait for the ac side breaker to trip the circuit. Despite being in limited industrial use (e.g. Trans Bay Cable project), this solution fails to meet the needs of the industry for quick restoration after temporary dc faults on overhead lines. This is mainly due to the relatively long interruption time of ac circuit breakers (typically two ac power frequency cycles). Also, fault current slope needs to be sufficiently limited so as to avoid overheating of thyristors and antiparallel diodes in the fault current path. Consequently, additional

large dc chokes may be needed along with sufficient branch reactors (e.g. in case of modular multilevel converters) and ac side impedance.

Other solutions attempt to inject a reverse dc voltage across the dc power circuit to force the dc current to zero. This is in essence similar to an aspect of dc fault current interruption concept in conventional HVDC systems based on line commutated converters. In voltage source conversion based HVDC, this can be administered externally using one or more dc circuit breakers. An example of the so called 'hybrid dc circuit breaker is depicted in Figure 2.15. Regardless of the technology used to build the employed dc circuit breakers, they need to dissipate the energy stored in the dc circuit, which can be substantial. Furthermore, the converter station must handle the dc fault current until the full dc circuit breaker operation cycle elapses. Thus, bypass thyristors and large dc chokes may still be required. These major challenges currently impede the industrial realization of such solutions.

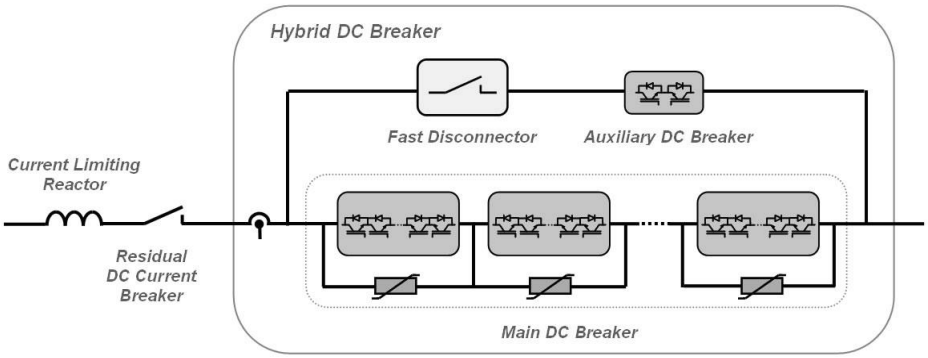



Figure 2.15 Layout of the hybrid dc circuit breaker [18].

Alternatively, MMCs can internally insert reverse dc voltage across their dc terminals to suppress fault current provided that bipolar or blocking switching cell topologies are employed (see Figure 2.16) [59]. However, the expense is extra complexity and a significant rise of silicon area and on state losses brought about by the increased number of semiconductors being continuously in conduction path.

Another protection concept creates a controlled ac fault at the ac terminals of the voltage source converter to stop current infeed into the dc power circuit under fault. For that, two anti-parallel thyristors are typically connected across the terminals of each switching cell or unit of the converter. Said thyristors are turned on upon fault inception to trigger an artificial three-phase ac fault at the converter ac terminals.

This concept employs double the number of thyristors utilized in the bypass concept, which is a drawback. The use of anti-parallel thyristor valves in a separate ac side bridge rather than an anti-parallel thyristor pair in each switching cell or unit was proposed. This, however, implies an extra non-modular converter structure is built in the valve hall with dedicated snubbing and protective circuitry. There is an apparent economic penalty in loss of modularity and modification of valve hall layout to accommodate the extra converter. Said demerits impede industrial utilization of this protection concept to date.

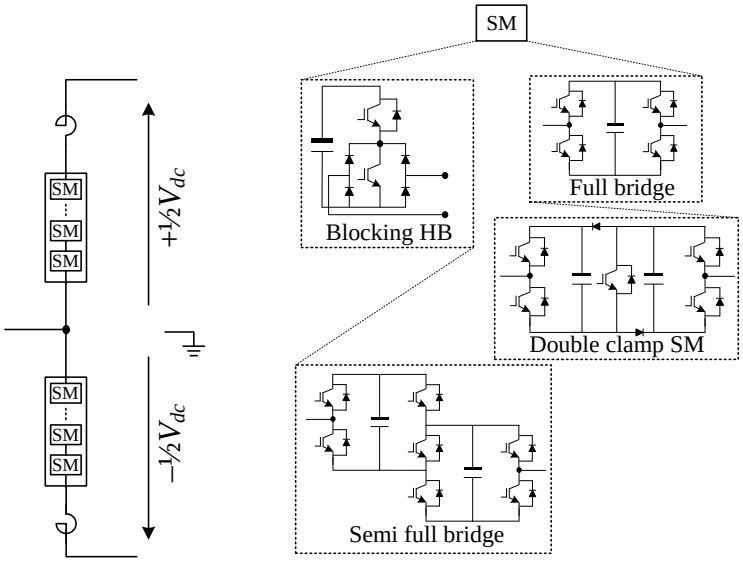



Figure 2.16 MMC cell (submodule) configurations for dc fault blocking.

### 2.2.4 The Alternate arm converter

One solution to overcome the dc fault vulnerability of the HB-MMC converter is to employ so-called hybrid or mixed-cell design [60], [61]. Typically it is required that a minimum of ½$V_{dc}$ blocking is available in each arm by FB cells or any of the blocking cells of Figure 2.16. In order to reduce the resulting conduction losses penalty, so-called the alternate arm converter (AAC) has been developed in [62] to achieve the required blocking capability with less amount of semiconductors. As shown in Figure 2.17 each arm of an AAC comprises a stack of cascaded FB cells in

series with a switch array denoted a *director valve*. Each FB cell has three states; '+1' state representing the switching state in which the cell produces $+V$, '–1' state representing $-V$ output, and '0' state representing shorted FB terminals (0V output).

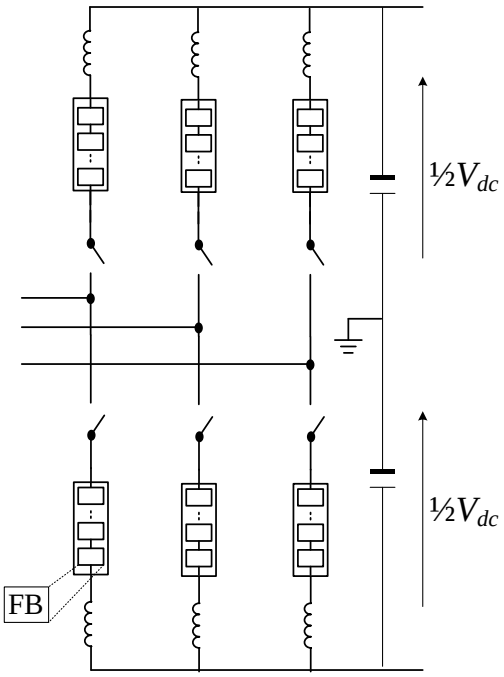



Figure 2.17 Structure of the Alternate arm converter

In steady-state, each arm of an AAC phase leg synthesizes one half of the fundamental cycle. To synthesize the positive half cycle, the upper arm director switch is turned on and all the FB cells switch sequentially – being initially at '+1' state – to build a multilevel positive half of the sinusoidal ac voltage output. Meanwhile, the lower arm director valve is off and lower arm FB cells are in '–1' state. This implies the load current flows entirely in the upper arm while the positive voltage half-cycle is synthesized. To synthesize the negative half-cycle of output voltage and commutate current to the lower arm, the lower director valve is turned on first to establish a closed path between all the FB cells of the phase leg and the dc side to balance their energy (and cells voltages). The time period when both director valves are on while FB cells of the phase leg are in state '+1' is called the *overlap*

*period*. Following the overlap period, the upper director valve is turned off and the lower arm FB cells switch sequentially to synthesize the negative half cycle.

The fact that the AAC employs FB cells enables it to generate an ac voltage peak higher than the respective dc pole's nominal voltage by exploiting the '–1' state of some FB cells. This capability is also available to the FB-MMC and hybrid MMC, albeit at the expense of higher semiconductor area with respect to the AAC.

It is worth noting that the turn on and turn off of director valves occurs when the FB cells of the phase leg are in the '+1' and, theoretically, their aggregate voltage is in small deviation from the dc link voltage. This implies that director valves switching is under a near-zero-volt condition. Not only will this diminish their switching losses, but also makes series connection of IGBTs in director valves less demanding in terms of snubbing and gating requirements. Nevertheless, some sort of snubbing might still be needed for uniform dynamic voltage sharing in each director valve.

As in the MMC, ensuring balanced cell voltages is essential to maintain output voltage quality. A sorting mechanism (such as that of section 2.2.3.1) can be utilized to keep the individual cell voltage ripple within a predefined band. However, for the sorting mechanism to be effective, the net energy exchange for each stack of FB cells in a half cycle needs to be minimized (ideally zero). The zero net energy exchange condition means that the energy input to the stack from the dc circuit is equal to the energy output to the ac circuit (assuming power flows into the ac circuit). This condition implies that;

$$E_{ac} = E_{dc} \tag{2.24}$$

Assuming the ac pole current and voltage are;

$$\begin{aligned} i_{ac}(t) &= \hat{I} \sin \omega_s t \\ v_{ac}(t) &= \hat{V} \sin(\omega_s t + \theta) \end{aligned} \tag{2.25}$$

Using (2.25) and the fact that the load current flows dominantly in each arm at a time, (2.24) can be developed to;

$$\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} v_{ac}(t) i_{ac}(t) dt = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{V_{dc}}{2} i_{ac}(t) dt \tag{2.26}$$

It follows from (2.26) that the zero next energy exchange of each FB cells stack over a half cycle is;

$$\hat{V} = \frac{4}{\pi}\left(\frac{V_{dc}}{2}\right) \tag{2.27}$$

The condition in (2.27) implies that the peak ac pole voltage is 27% higher than the dc pole nominal voltage. This is so-called 'sweet spot' in [62].

Requirement to operate near the sweet spot is a restriction as it implies that migration from the sweet spot entails a longer overlap period to compensate for the resulting voltage mismatch between the phase leg and the dc link. Should the overlap period extend for a considerable part of the fundamental cycle, extra cells in each arm may be required to keep the ac voltage transition during overlap so as to avoid output voltage distortion. This defies the purpose of the AAC.

Although modulation methods have been proposed to relieve such a situation [63], this remains a significant challenge for AAC utilization in high power and high voltage applications. It is also important to note that unlike the MMC, the AAC requires a dc-link capacitor to retain dc ripple within tolerances.

## 2.3 Isolated dc-dc converter designs

Galvanic isolation is inherently realized in ac grids by the use of the ac transformer circuit. Since there is no other type of circuit capable of achieving effective galvanic isolation at HVDC power and voltage levels, any dc-dc converter topology that provides galvanic isolation between the connected dc circuits must utilize an ac transformer. The ac transformer in this case will naturally undertake the voltage stepping duty. However, ac transformers are bulky pieces of equipment at HVDC power levels to the extent that transportation of the transformer to site is not an easy task. This is one of the main reasons why normally HVDC LCC stations employ

three single phase power frequency transformers rather than a single three phase one. Although a dc-dc converter is not bound to operate at the 50Hz power frequency, it will be shown in Chapter 3 that the increase in power density obtained by raising the fundamental frequency is limited by electrical and mechanical constraints.

Galvanic isolation may also be needed should the grounding arrangements of the dc circuits to be connected impede safe or normal operation with a galvanic connection in place. It may be important also to have galvanic isolation at dc nodes through which bulky amount of power flows. In the case of a dc fault in one circuit, the other circuit is naturally isolated and it becomes a matter of simple control to inhibit the fault propagation. This capability will be explored in section 5.6.

The most fundamental design of an isolated dc-dc converter that offers some potential for high power HVDC is the so called dual active bridge (DAB) [64] also known as the front-to-front (F2F) dc-dc converter which is shown schematically in Figure 2.18. In a DAB two three-phase dc/ac bridges are interfaced by an ac transformer. The following subsections will evaluate the adequacy of some candidate DAB designs reported in the literature for HVDC environment.

### 2.3.1 Two-level dual active bridge (2L-DAB)

Figure 2.19 shows a two-level dual active bridge with an array of series-connected IGBTs in each arm to enable operation at high dc voltage. With the use of fundamental frequency ranging from 250Hz to 1kHz in the ac link, the overall size and weight of dc-dc converter can be reduced without significant sacrifice to its efficiency. Traditionally, such two-level dual active bridges are operated in square wave mode at fundamental frequency where each arm conducts for $180^{o}$ (half a fundamental period) [65], [66], [67], [68]. The phase shift (also known as the load angle) between the voltage space vectors of both bridges is traditionally used for power flow control [64]. Power flows from the side with the leading voltage space vector. In this operating mode, self-commutated semiconductor devices in the DAB tend to turn on and off at zero currents for much of the operating range (while anti-parallel diodes are in conduction) as will be shown later in this section. Thus, relatively low switching loss is achieved.

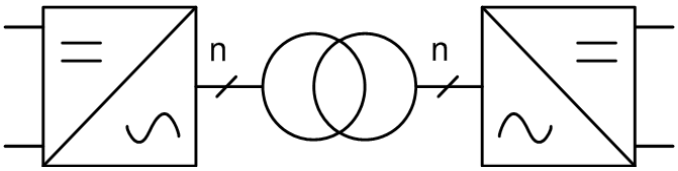



Figure 2.18 Generic three-phase DAB (F2F) dc-dc converter

Observe that the use of pulse width modulation can provide an additional degree of freedom, which can be exploited to minimise the circulating reactive power in the ac link. However, with the fundamental frequency range stated above, the use of high-frequency pulse width modulation (PWM) must be precluded, because the increase in switching losses and transformer losses are expected to outweigh the gains [69], [70]. To avoid the shortcomings of the high frequency PWM, low-frequency modulation scheme such as selective harmonic elimination (SHE) (e.g., with one notch per quarter cycle) can be used to achieve the necessary control flexibility such as ac voltage and reactive power control in ac link, especially during a dc fault. However, with SHE the range at which inherent DAB soft switching at turn-on and off is achieved will be reduced; hence, switching losses are expected to increase.

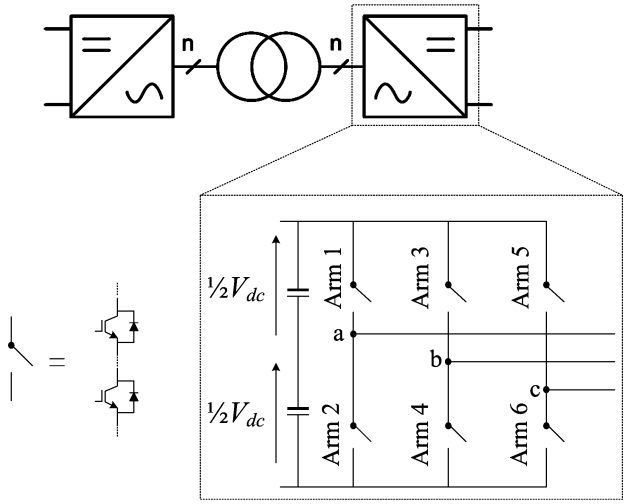



Figure 2.19 Schematic of a two-level DAB dc-dc converter design.

Theoretically, the phase *a* ac pole to ground voltages $v_{ap}$ and $v_{as}$ of the bridges can be expressed as in (2.28).

$$\begin{aligned} v_{ap}(t) &= \frac{2V_{dcp}}{\pi k} \sum_{k=1,3,5..}^{\infty} \sin(k\omega_s t) \\ v_{as}(t) &= \frac{2V_{dcs}}{\pi k} \sum_{k=1,3,5..}^{\infty} \sin(k\omega_s t + k\varphi) \end{aligned} \tag{2.28}$$

where, $\varphi$ is the angle of $v_s$ relative to $v_p$, and $k = 2i + 1, \forall\ i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$. Subscripts *a*, *p*, and *s* refer to the turns ratio, primary, and secondary sides, respectively. If the medium-frequency transformer is assumed to be lossless, and with transformer leakage inductance referred to primary is $L_s$, the primary instantaneous current can be expressed as:

$$i_{ap}(t) = i_{ap}(0) + \frac{1}{\omega_s L_s}\left[ -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2V_{dcp}}{\pi k^2} \sin(k\omega_s t + \frac{\pi}{2}) + a\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2V_{dcs}}{\pi k^2} \sin(k\omega_s t + \frac{\pi}{2} + k\varphi) \right] \tag{2.29}$$

The instantaneous power at the terminals of the primary converter expressed as $p(t) = 3\, v_{ap}(t)\, i_{ap}(t)$ can be developed from (2.28) and (2.29). The average power exchanged within DAB becomes:

$$P_{DAB} = a \frac{6V_{dcp}V_{dcs}}{\pi^2 \omega_s L_s k^3} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \sin k\varphi \tag{2.30}$$

Equation (2.30) indicates that the medium-frequency transformer must be designed to be able to transmit all the powers associated with significant low-order harmonics, including that of the fundamental component. It also shows that the harmonic power transfer diminishes with higher harmonic orders.

The salient drawbacks of the two-level DAB when utilized for HVDC applications are:

1- The generation of square waves at each ac pole in the primary and secondary bridges exposes the ac transformer insulation to intolerable *dv/dt* stresses especially at high voltages. The large *dv/dt* also results in significant EMI.

2- To switch high voltages an array of many series connected IGBTs is needed in each arm of the primary and secondary bridges. In addition to lack of modularity, complex gating and snubbing circuitry is needed to ensure static and dynamic voltage sharing among the IGBTs in each array.

3- Design of high power and high voltage transformers (handling several hundreds of MWs at several hundreds of kVs) operating with square wave voltage excitation even at lower medium frequency is a very challenging task for the current state of the art.

4- Not suitable for high voltage transformation ratios as the semiconductors of the low voltage side must handle high currents. For instance, for $a = 20$ and the primary side dc current is 1kA, the secondary side dc current will be 20kA. Many semiconductor devices must be parallel connected to handle this current (in addition to the series connection) which is not technically viable.

### 2.3.2 Multi-module DAB

To overcome the single large 2L-DAB dc-dc converter drawbacks, it has been proposed to modularize the 2L-DAB station into many identical modules each comprising a DAB dc-dc converter rated at a few kVs and a few MWs (see Figure 2.20). In connecting a high voltage dc circuit to a low voltage dc circuit through said multi-module DAB, the dc links of individual DAB modules can be connected in series, in parallel, or in series-parallel to achieve the required voltage transformation ratio [71].

With this configuration, the ac transformer is modularized into a number of medium voltage medium-frequency transformers which facilitates the ac link design and may allow an increase in fundamental frequency with respect to the single large 2L-DAB. Also, the flexibility of terminal connections facilitate the use of the multi-module DAB for applications with high voltage transformation ratios. Furthermore, *dv/dt* levels generated by medium voltage square waves are tolerable.

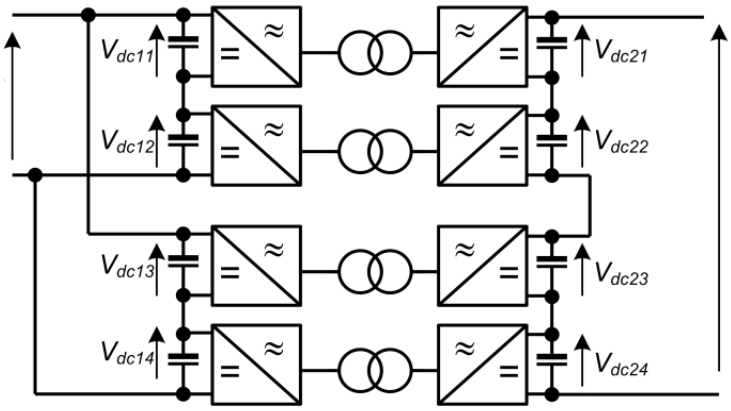



Figure 2.20 Schematic structure of s multi-module DAB dc-dc converter

An HVDC multi-module DAB design has been analysed in [72] in which each DAB module is rated at 5kV. For that each arm in the primary and secondary bridges comprises only two series connected 4.5kV forced commutation devices for a 100-FIT steady-state voltage of 2.6kV. The force commutated devices can reportedly be IGBTs or IGCTs (Integrated gate commutated thyristor) to handle high current capacity. A case study on a 1.21GW multi-module DAB connecting a ±150kV dc line at the primary side to a ±300kV dc line at the secondary side concluded that 120 DAB modules are required, each being 5kV, 10MW, and with $a = 1$. At the secondary side the 120 modules will be connected in series while the 120 primary side bridges are grouped into two parallel-connected 60-module groups. In each said group, the 60 modules are connected in series.

The multi-module DAB dc-dc converter discussed in this subsection, and its derivatives (e.g., single phase half bridge DAB configuration, single phase full bridge DAB configuration) are expected to offer much better solutions at medium-voltage when compared to the single large DAB dc-dc converter. The main disadvantage associated with all multi-module dc-dc converters when employed beyond medium-voltage are:

1- The use of multiple transformers and their requirement for high insulation from real ground.

2- The need for an additional control layer to balance individual dc-link capacitors at the primary and secondary sides

### 2.3.3 Resonant DAB designs

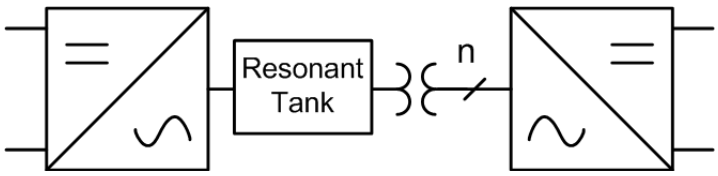



Figure 2.21 Generic structure of a resonant F2F dc-dc converter.

The F2F dc-dc converter topologies discussed in 2.3.1 and 2.3.2 can employ a resonant tank in the ac link before or after the ac transformer with the main purpose of extending the soft switching range. The resonant tank may also filter out some of the high harmonics present in the square wave voltage wave produced by converter bridges, which may offer advantages for transformer design. For a HVDC power-level dc–dc converter to compete with the high efficiency standards set by ac power transformers, extending the soft switching range may be an important aspect. This is why soft-switched dc-dc converters have long been investigated in relation to resonant converter topologies [73], [74], [75], [76], [77].

Several topologies have been reported in the literature where a series, parallel or series-parallel resonant tanks have been introduced to the ac link. While adequate for certain low and medium power applications, significant challenges impede the scaling of most resonant designs to MV or HVDC high-power high-voltage range. That is, resonant stages experience high internal voltage stresses and, hence, require a special insulation design. Additionally, in practice inductance and capacitance values drift owing to ageing and operating conditions. This leads to a drift of operating points from the design target which reduces system efficiency and may even impede proper operation.

In transformerless resonant designs, lack of galvanic isolation may be an additional drawback. Such a resonant design employing no ac transformer in the ac link has

been reported in [78] and [79]. Figure 2.18 shows said converter which was originally proposed as a high stepping voltage ratio multi-functional unit for use in multi-terminal HVDC transmission systems with the ability to control power flow in both directions and to prohibit the propagation of a dc fault beyond well-defined sections of the HVDC network. However, high stepping voltage ratios may not be practically viable since the semiconductor switch arrays connected in the low voltage side bridge must be rated to withstand the peak voltage across the resonant tank capacitor, which is 1.2 to 1.4 times the nominal rated voltage of the high-voltage side. Generally, transformerless operation of F2F dc-dc converter designs might be attractive in terms of cost and power density. However, it may lead to poor device utilization.

The resonant converter design of Figure 2.18 is based on single phase concepts. Consequently, there exists power ripple on both dc sides of the design of at twice the resonant frequency which must be filtered. The presence of filter capacitors – subject to their capacity and voltage – adds to the dc fault current levels. Like other non-isolated dc-dc converter topologies (refer to section 2.4), pre-existing grounding arrangements may preclude its connection to established dc links. These drawbacks may preclude the utilization of this type of converter for HVDC applications.

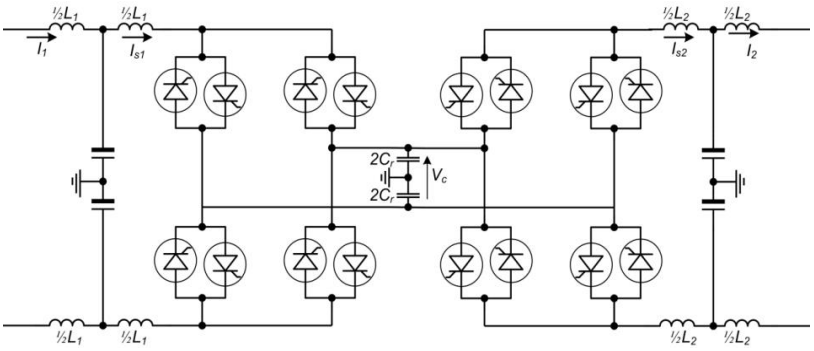



Figure 2.22 A schematic of the non-isolated resonant dc-dc converter of [78].

### 2.3.4 MMC-based and AAC-based DAB designs

With regards to the drawbacks of scaling the 2L-DAB topology to HVDC voltage and power levels, it is logical to consider the MMC design as an alternative for the two-level bridges of the 2L-DAB. Replacing each two-level bridge of the 2L-DAB with an MMC structure automatically eliminates the voltage sharing problem of the series-switch arrays in each arm. The modular design ensures that each HB cell capacitor clamps the primary IGBT in the cell (i.e., the bypassing IGBT). Additionally, the ability of the MMC to shape the ac voltage output means that *dv/dt* can be relieved by the adopted converter modulation technique. Also, if sinusoidal waveforms are utilized in the ac link, the ac transformer design becomes an easier task with respect to square wave excitation. Since the ac link is internal and not connected to any ac grids, ac link frequency can be made higher than ac power frequency. The higher frequency not only reduces the transformer core volume but also constricts the intracycle energy swings of MMC arms and thus smaller cell capacitances can be used, which results in a more compact MMC converter footprint.

When otherwise an ac grid connection is established in the ac link (see figure 19b), operation at grid power frequency is mandatory and standard three winding ac power transformers can be utilized [80] [81]. However, the overall station size becomes roughly double the size of a standard MMC grid side converter station. This configuration can also be viewed as though the point of common coupling (PCC) between an ac grid and a dc line is interfaced to another dc line at a different voltage level. Observe the use of three single phase transformers in each ac link at high power levels.

In MMC-DAB design of Figure 2.19a, It was suggested in [81] that the ac currents could be reduced, and hence ac losses, should the MMC bridges operate in over-modulation (i.e., a modulation index $m > 1$). This could be realized when full bridge cells constitute a portion of each MMC arm so as to produce an ac pole voltage $v_{ac} > ½V_{dc}$. Alternatively, the AAC [62] (refer to section 2.2.4) whose stable steady state operating point is at a peak phase voltage of 127% the dc pole voltage can normally realize the over-modulation. However, the expense of over-modulation would be increased on-state losses in the MMCs due to the use of full bridge cells. The use of

the AAC instead of the MMC to achieve the over-modulation would sacrifice the black start capability and current control capability during fault (refer to section 5.6.2.2).

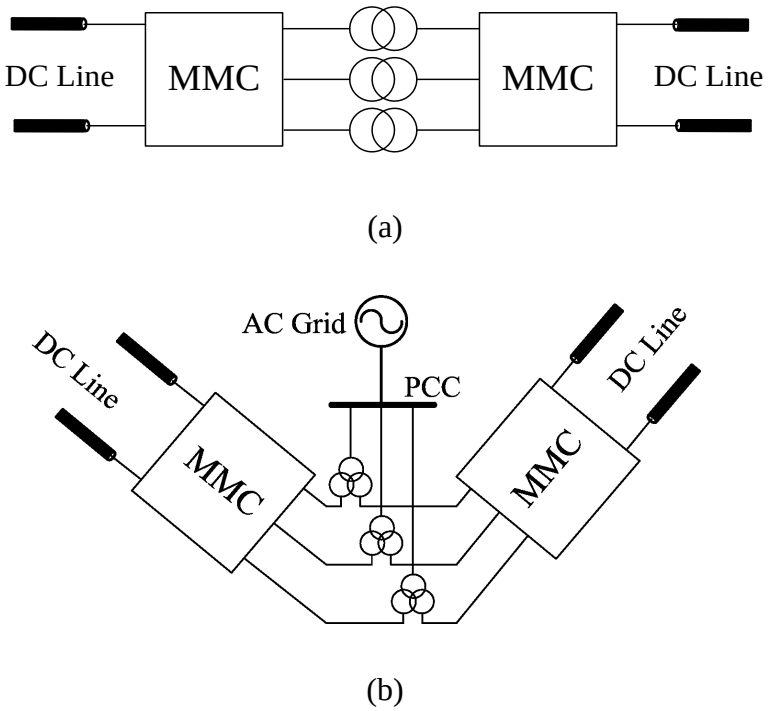



Figure 2.23 A schematic of an MMC based HVDC dc-dc converter station; (a) with no interface to an ac grid, and (b) with an interface to an ac grid.

When each MMC of the F2F dc-dc converter operates in medium-frequency multilevel sinusoidal modulation, the main attributes and drawbacks of this mode can be summarized as:

- Lower voltage stresses (*dv/dt*) on the isolation transformer compared to its two-level equivalent.
- Full modulation index range is available for voltage control in the ac link during dc faults and for provision of black start of a dead dc networks following blackout.
- This mode does not fully exploit the active powers associated with significant low-order harmonic voltages and currents; therefore, MMC-DAB operated in this

mode is expected to have lower power density compared to its two-level equivalent.

- This design may be unable to fully exploit soft switching available to 2L-DAB configuration (only some of the devices will be turned on and off at zero current).
- Although the use of a medium-frequency ac link of the MMC-DAB may lead to compact design as previously stated, operation with low modulation index during black start following dc network fault will increase the loading on the cell capacitors. Thus, cell capacitance must be oversized to keep the cell voltage ripple within tight limits and to avoid exposing switching devices to increased voltage stress for the black start period.

## 2.4 Non-isolated dc-dc converter designs

At some HVDC nodes; for instance, a tap off connection, galvanic isolation may not be crucial (e.g. should the tap off dc circuit be of the same topology as the main dc line). Galvanic isolation, normally realized by a full-power ac transformer, may also be sacrificed for economic reasons to achieve higher power density particularly for offshore installations.

Several non-isolated dc-dc converter designs have been reported in the literature and the most promising of them will be highlighted in this section. It is important to note that the term ‘non-isolated’ is distinct from ‘transformerless’. As will be seen in this section there can be a non-isolated designs that still incorporate an ac transformer. It follows that a ‘transformerless design’ is one that does not incorporate any ac transformers.

### 2.4.1 Non-isolated DAB designs

#### 2.4.1.1 DC autotransformer

The dc autotransformer proposed in [82] and shown in Figure 2.24 only converts part of the total dc power exchange between the two dc sides into ac power to be transferred between converter bridges through the coupling ac transformer. An asymmetric monopolar arrangement of this design is shown in Figure 2.24 and it can

be viewed as a non-isolated DAB design as the power flow through the coupling transformer is also controlled by the magnitudes and phase shift between the voltage space vectors of individual bridges.

In the asymmetric monopolar arrangement of Figure 2.24 comprising an upper bridge and a lower bridge, the part of dc power converted into ac power $P_{ac}$ is;

$$P_{ac} = I_H (V_H - V_L) \tag{2.31}$$

where $I_H$, $V_H$, and $V_L$ are the high voltage dc side current and voltage and low voltage side voltage, respectively. $P_{ac}$ is eventually fed to the low-voltage dc side through the lower bridge. The remaining part of the dc power is transferred directly to the dc side of the lower bridge using the common mode currents of the upper bridge (dc component of the arm currents). Thus, the MVA rating of the coupling transformer in the ac link is reduced or even halved when $V_H : V_L$ = 2:1 or $(V_H - V_L) : V_L$ = 1:1. With the power flow shown by direction of the dc currents in Figure 2.24 and $I_{dH}$ and $I_{dL}$ being the magnitudes of common mode currents in the arms of the upper and lower converters, respectively, the dc link current of the lower bridge ($I_L$) is;

$$I_L = 3( I_{dH} + I_{dL} ) \tag{2.32}$$

where $I_{dH} = \frac{1}{3} I_H$ and;

$$I_{dL} = \frac{1}{3} I_H (V_H - V_L) / V_L \tag{2.33}$$

Observe that $I_{dL}$ is set by the ac power that is transferred through the ac link. For example, when $V_H = 2V_L$, $I_{dH} = I_{dL} = \frac{1}{3} I_H$ and $I_L = 2I_H$, and these indicate that the dc autotransformer is expected to have higher efficiency compared to F2F equivalent. The reason is that the semiconductor switches of the lower bridge experience half the current stresses relative to that of an equivalent F2F connection (at a conversion ratio of 2).

However, for the dc autotransformer to block dc fault propagation from one dc circuit to the other, large number of FB cells needs to be inserted in the outer arms in order to block fault current flow. This represents a major weakness as it compromise

the high efficiency that could be achieved when only HB cells are employed beyond a certain conversion ratio. Additional problem of the asymmetric auto dc transformer of Figure 2.24 is that it exposes both windings of the coupling transformers to continuous high dc bias. This situation is avoided when dc autotransformer is reconfigured for symmetrical dc circuit topology where transformer windings experience no dc voltage stress.

A multiport topology of the dc autotransformer has been recently presented in [83]. It exhibits the same operating principles of the two-port dc autotransformer explained above while using multiple ac transformers. In conclusion, so-called dc autotransformer designs may achieve higher power density and less amount of semiconductors with respect to equivalent F2F dc-dc converters for low voltage (transformation) ratios. It is also limited to cases where galvanic isolation is not a prerequisite.

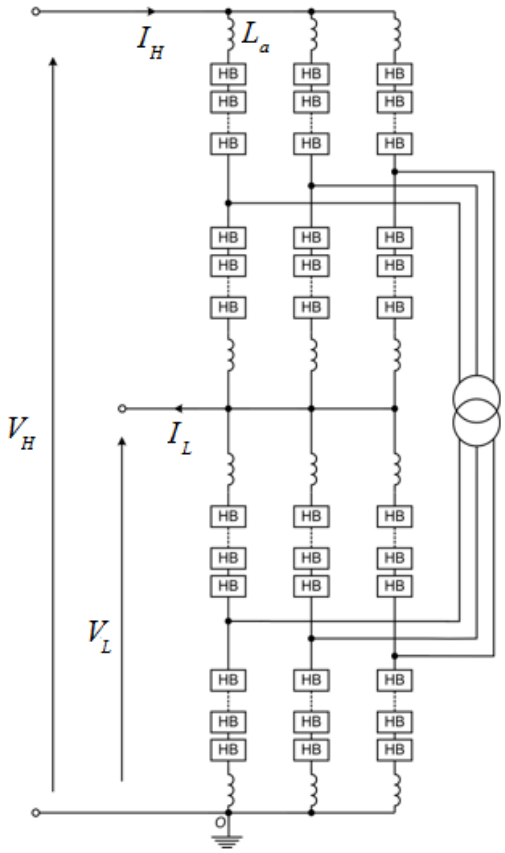



Figure 2.24 Generic three-port dc-dc converter representation

#### 2.4.1.2 DAB dc tap-changer

A design of a multi-ratio MMC-based DAB design has been reported in [84]. This design resembles an 'ac tap-changer' in the sense that it offers more than one voltage transformation ratio in a single design.

This non-isolated dc-dc converter may also employ a 1:1 ac transformer for galvanic isolation. In either case, each MMC bridge of the DAB can be used to achieve a 'voltage elevation'.

The operating principle of each MMC bridge here is different from standard MMC. Each cell in the primary side MMC must be rated to the primary dc voltage input if voltage elevation is required. Furthermore, all cells must be bipolar (i.e., a full bridge cell). Each MMC is composed of two phase legs to produce a single phase ac voltage obtained between the two ac poles of the primary MMC bridge.

Voltage elevation is realized utilizing the '–1' state of FB cells. In the example of Figure 2.25 where there is three FB cells per arm, the ac voltage $v_{ac}$ can be made five multiples of the dc input magnitude (i.e., an elevation ratio of 5) with the following cell arrangement:

- For the first half cycle: The upper arm in phase leg 1 and the lower arm of phase leg 2 have all cells in '+1' state. The lower arm of phase leg 1 and the upper arm of phase leg 2 each have two cells in '–1' state and one cell in '0' state.

- For the second half cycle: The lower arm in phase leg 1 and the upper arm of phase leg 2 have all cells in '+1' state. The upper arm of phase leg 1 and the lower arm of phase leg 2 each have two cells in '–1' state and one cell in '0' state.

This switching sequence produces a two-level ac output of magnitude $5V_{dc}$. Voltage elevation can also be achieved through the secondary MMC bridge (the ac transformer is present only for isolation). Here, HB cells are sufficient and each cell is to be rated at the peak ac voltage across the two ac pole. For instance, for the

secondary bridge of the same DAB dc-changer to elevate the voltage by a ratio of 5 (i.e., an overall voltage elevation of 25 in the DAB dc tap-changer), the following cell arrangements are needed in the secondary MMC:

- For the first half cycle: The upper arm in phase leg 1 and the lower arm of phase leg 2 have all cells in '+1' state. The lower arm of phase leg 1 and the upper arm of phase leg 2 each have two cells in '+1' state and one cell in '0' state.

- For the second half cycle: The lower arm in phase leg 1 and the upper arm of phase leg 2 have all cells in '+1' state. The upper arm of phase leg 1 and the lower arm of phase leg 2 each have two cells in '+1' state and one cell in '0' state.

The primary or secondary bridge can be operated in two-level (square wave) mode when no elevation is required. In either case, power flow is governed by the phase shift between the respective voltage space vectors.

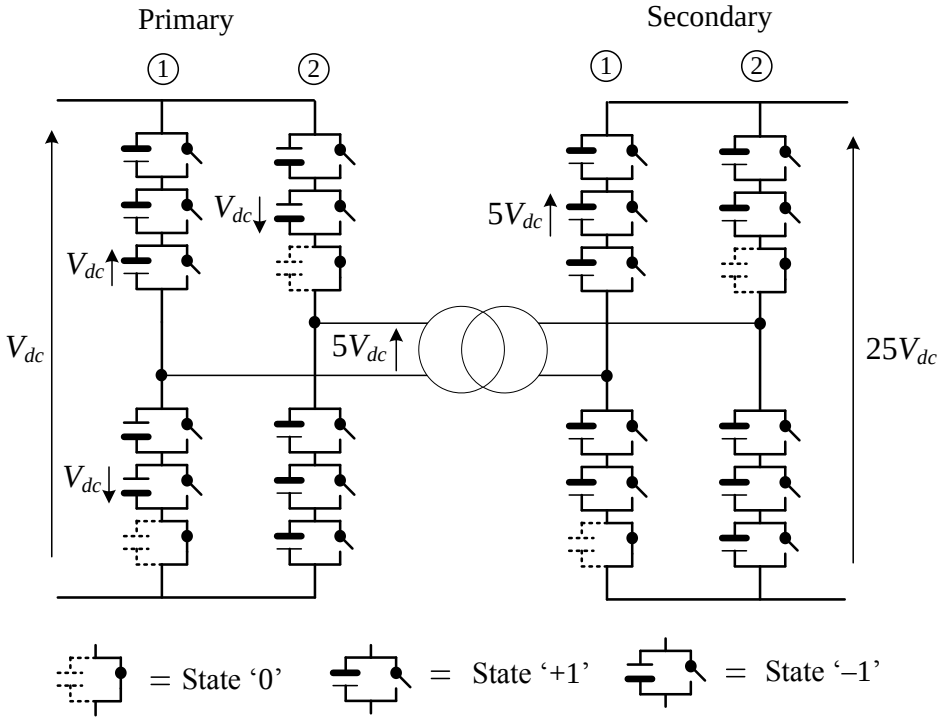



Figure 2.25 A non-isolated dc tap-changer DAB with an overall voltage elevation ratio of 25 from primary to secondary.

It has been shown in [84] that the ac pole currents are shared between the arms of respective phase legs and that cell energies and capacitors voltage ripple can be managed by the conventional sorting algorithm (see 2.2.3.1).

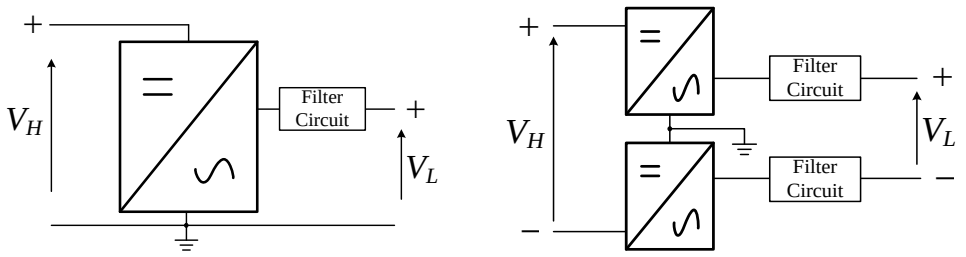
Despite the flexibility offered by this tap-changer-like design, its utilization is likely limited to medium voltage applications. The underlying reason is that each FB cell in the primary bridge has to be rated to the primary side dc voltage to achieve any voltage elevation. Similarly, for the secondary bridge to elevate the voltage each HB cell must be rated to the peak ac link voltage.

### 2.4.2 Transformerless dc-dc converter designs

A number of transformerless dc-dc converter designs have been reported for utilization in HVDC applications. While these designs realize voltage stepping without using any ac transformer circuit, they employ chain-links of FB or HB submodules.

Two transformerless dc-dc converter designs will be considered here. The two designs are, however, derived from one concept. That is, a dc/ac VSC converts the dc voltage to ac voltage. In an asymmetric monopolar arrangement the produced ac voltage would be offset by the magnitude of the low side voltage. A filter circuit is then used to filter the alternating component of the VSC output voltage. In bipolar or symmetric monopolar dc circuit arrangements, one such dc-dc converter configurations is connected between a dc pole and ground (see Figure 2.26).

The salient distinction between the two considered designs is the internal structure of the VSC stage and filter type. In the first design, denoted *the single-stage modular multilevel dc-dc converter*, the VSC buck stage is an MMC and the filter circuit comprises passive components. In the second design, denoted *the hybrid cascade dc-dc converter*, the VSC buck stage is a conventional two-level (six-pulse) bridge and the filter circuit comprises chain-links of FB or HB submodules.




(a) (b)

Figure 2.26 Generic transformerless dc-dc converter design; (a) the asymmetric monopolar building block, and (b) the symmetric monopolar configuration.

#### 2.4.2.1 The single-stage modular multilevel dc converter (MMDC)

Several version of the MMDC has been presented in [85]. The same concept has been proposed and developed concurrently in [86] and [87] although under a different name. Despite the different approaches followed in the analysis and classification of each of the proposed topologies in [85], [86], and [87], these topologies are all slight variations of the same concept.

Figure 2.27 depicts so-called push-pull MMDC proposed in [85] where standard MMC phase legs can be used to generate an alternating voltage waveform. Due to the asymmetric arrangement (lower dc pole represent ground potential), a dc offset of $V_L$ is present. The operating principle utilizes the coupled inductors $L_1$ to limit the circulating current responsible for regulating submodules energy levels while the coupled inductors $L_2$ act as a filter such that the low side dc voltage and current ripple are within tolerances.

Figure 2.28 shows MMDC arrangement of [86] and [87] which can be viewed as the three phase symmetric monopolar version of the push-pull MMDC. For expedience, the former will be denoted the symmetric MMDC. The symmetric MMDC generates output voltages that contain ac plus dc bias at the ac poles of the upper and lower MMC bridges with respect to ground. Therefore, it similarly requires output filter inductance and capacitance to attenuate the fundamental ac voltage components from each phase voltage when measured relative to ground; otherwise, pole-to-ground dc voltage of the low-voltage side will be modulated at the fundamental frequency used to exchange power between converter arms.

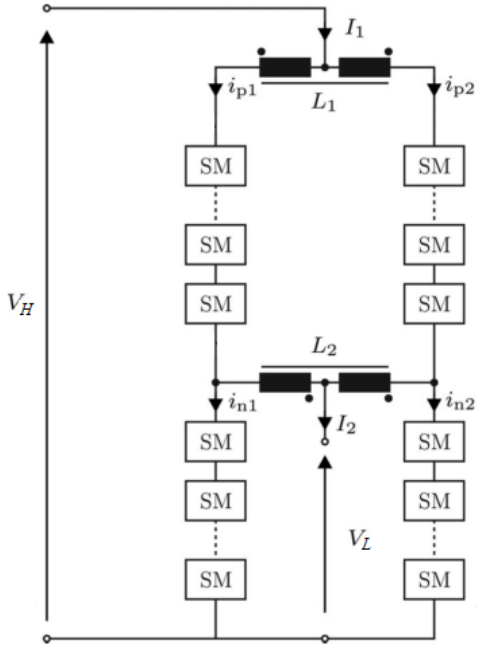



Figure 2.27 Design of the push-pull single stage modular multilevel dc-dc converter (MMDC)

In the considered MMDC topologies, the required inductor filters are expectedly large. For instance a case study in [87] concluded that a filter inductance $L_f$ = 990mH is needed for a ±17.6kV 40MW system. In [72] detailed design of the push-pull MMDC version was carried out and it was concluded that filtering the ac components will necessitate a similar amount of magnetics as in an equivalent multi-module DAB dc-dc converter. It was reported also in [88] that a third version denoted the tuned-filter MMDC proposed in [85] requires even more magnetics than an equivalent push-pull MMDC.

With respect to dc fault isolation, the MMDC concept does not naturally inhibit the propagation of dc faults without the addition of extra semiconductors (FB submodules in the outer arms). Even when the dc blocking capability is ensured by sufficient FB blocking submodules, converter semiconductors may be exposed to excessive current stresses due to the large filter inductances in the fault current path. A study of the MMDC behaviour under different dc fault scenarios is mandatory for better evaluation of the concept; this is still not reported in the literature.

Given the above reasons, the MMDC concept may not be competitive in medium and high-voltage applications.

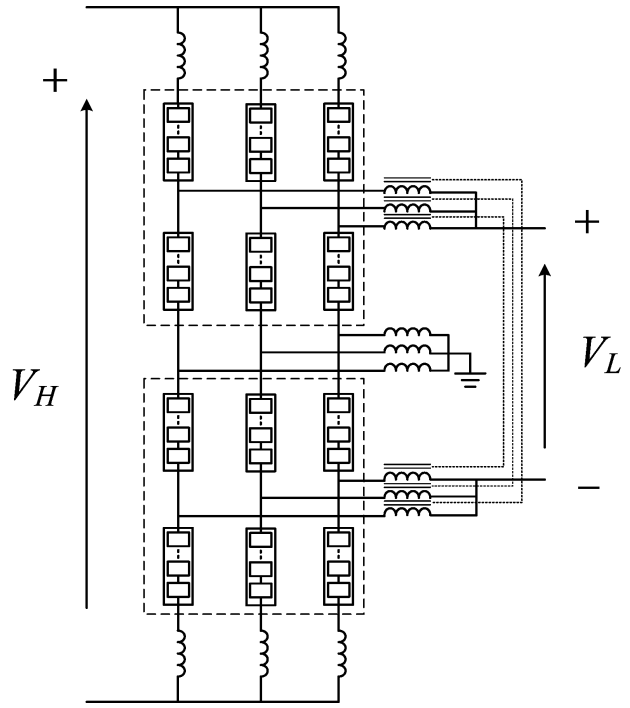



Figure 2.28 The symmetric monopolar MMDC design of [87].

#### 2.4.2.2 The hybrid cascaded dc-dc converter

Figure 2.29 shows three configurations of said second high-voltage transformerless dc-dc converter design (HCDC) and recently proposed in [89]. The HCDC comprises a six-pulse bridge whose ac poles are connected to chain-links of submodules. For an asymmetric monopole design, it can be observed from Figure 2.29 that the six-pulse bridge can be connected either between the high voltage dc pole and ground (configuration HCDC1), between the low voltage dc pole and ground (configuration HCDC2), or between the high and low voltage dc poles (configuration HCDC3). The chain-links are connected to the low voltage dc pole in HCDC1, to the high voltage pole in HCDC2, and to ground in HCDC3. In all configurations, each chainlink is connected in series to a current limiting inductor $L_d$.

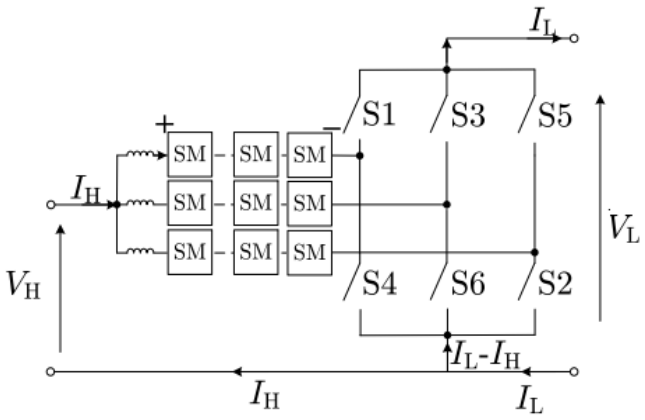
In HCDC3 the HB chain-links of each limb are rated to full dc voltage of the high voltage side in order to be able to switch alternatively between $V_{dcH}$ and $V_{dcL}$ using series connected IGBTs of the six-step bridge (e.g., $S_1$ and $S_4$ for phase 'a') without exposing cell capacitor and switching devices of individual HB cells to excessive voltage stresses. The series device IGBTs of the high and low voltage sides must be rated to withstand $V_{dcH} - V_{dcL}$, which is attractive from semiconductor conduction loss point of view. In HCDC3, the HB cell capacitors clamp the voltage across the submodule switching devices during abrupt switching between $V_{dcH}$ and $V_{dcL}$. The main drawback of HCDC3 is that during dc fault on its high-voltage side, the freewheeling diodes of the six pulse bridge – depending on their polarity – as well as primary switches of the HB cells will be exposed to high current stresses.

In HCDC2, the dc link of the six-pulse bridge is the high-voltage side; therefore, chain-links submodules in the low voltage side must be of full-bridge design. In this arrangement, the FB chain-link of each limb generates square waveform bipolar ac voltage of the magnitudes given in (2.34) in order to generate a ripple free (filtered) dc voltage with magnitude of $V_{dcL}$ at the low voltage side.

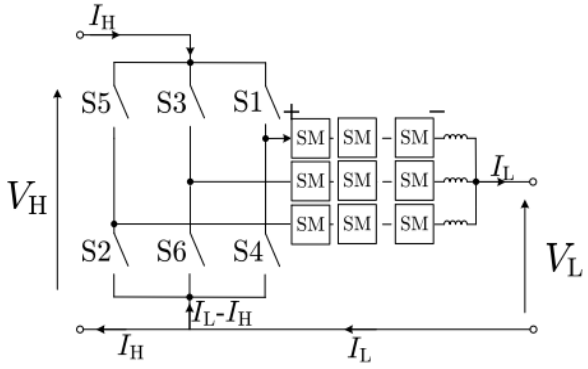
$$\begin{cases} V_{dcH} - V_{dcL} & , \quad S_1 \rightarrow ON \\ -V_{dcL} & , \quad S_4 \rightarrow ON \end{cases} \tag{2.34}$$

This means the series connected switching devices of the six-pulse bridge must be rated to block full dc voltage of the high voltage side.

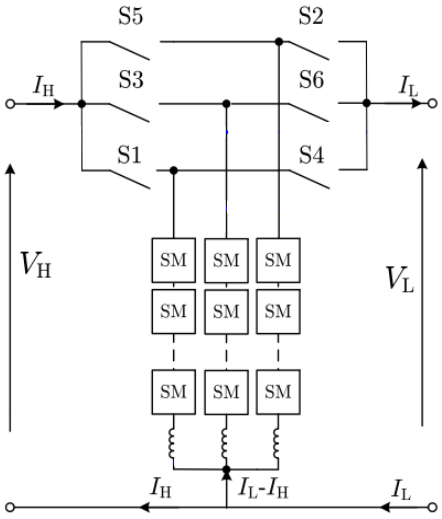
In HCDC1, the dc link of the six-pulse bridge is the low voltage dc side. Thus, the HB cells are sufficient in the chain-links for steady state operation instead of FB cells. The underlying reason is that each limb needs to generate only a unipolar voltage waveform to boost the low side dc voltage as given in (2.35). In this scenario, the chain link of each limb must be able to support full dc voltage of the high-voltage side.




(a)




(b)




(c)

Figure 2.29 Configurations of the hybrid cascade dc-dc converter (HCDC): (a) HCDC1, (b) HCDC2, and (c) HCDC3.

$$\begin{cases} V_{dcH} - V_{dcL} & , \quad S_1 \rightarrow ON \\ V_{dcH} & , \quad S_4 \rightarrow ON \end{cases} \tag{2.35}$$

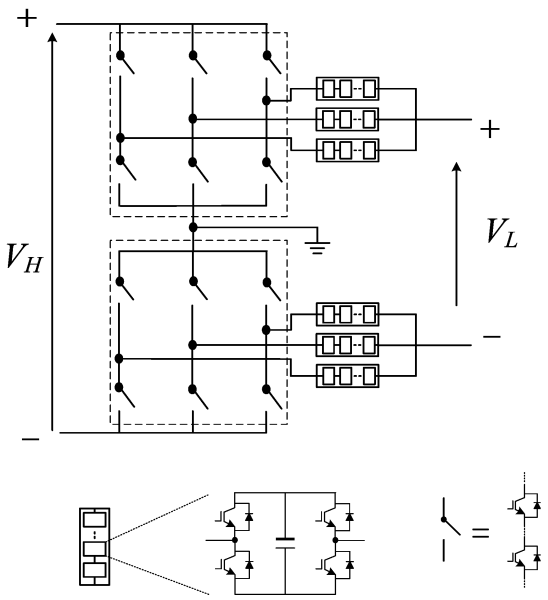



Figure 2.30 Generic three-port dc-dc converter representation

Overall, the HCDC offers promise for dc-dc conversion applications insensitive to galvanic isolation. However, in addition to the lack of galvanic isolation, conduction losses in HCDC designs are not yet reported. Also, the amount of extra semiconductors required to enable HCDC designs to effectively block the propagation of dc faults between both dc circuits and the consequent conduction loss penalty are yet to be established for the three designs of Figure 2.29 with consideration of all possible dc fault scenarios and dc circuit topologies. Figure 2.30 depicts a symmetric monopolar dc circuit configuration where both pole-to-ground and pole-to-pole dc faults are possible and need to be studied.

## 2.5 Desirable Features in Candidate HVDC-DC Converter

Considering the discussion presented along previous sections of this chapter, the following generic set of desirable features can be defined for a candidate dc-dc converter for use in multi-terminal HVDC networks:

- A suitable compromise between capital cost, footprint (power density), and losses (running cost). The right compromise is to be set on case-by-case basis, depending on the voltage and power transfer levels involved and the nature of the application (e.g. onshore or offshore)
- Soft switching is an important asset whether over part of or the full range of operating points.
- Capability to ride-through dc side faults whether temporary or permanent. No less important is the capability to provide circuit breaking functions by blocking dc fault propagation from the faulted dc side to the healthy dc side(s).
- Flexibility to utilize the available power electronics components to administer power flow control and dc voltage regulation duties.
- Galvanic isolation is favourable particularly for connection of dc lines of different ground point arrangements.
- Galvanic isolation is important for designs involving two or more dc/ac converters with an intermediate ac link. The introduced ac voltage matching (voltage stepping) capability is essential to minimize reactive power circulation in the ac link or otherwise avoid poor utilization of installed semiconductors at the high voltage side.
- Avoiding high fundamental frequency operation. This in part is due to the slower nature of high voltage power electronics devices. Furthermore, the reduction in size and weight of the coupling ac transformer (if present) beyond a certain limit is impeded by the physical clearances at high voltage levels. Also, iron losses and parasitic phenomena are limiting. Some of these constraints are, however, relieved in multi-module designs.

- The voltage slopes (*dv/dt*) resulting from switching actions within the dc-dc converter must be fully controllable particularly when a coupling ac transformer is utilized at such high voltage levels.
- The capability of black start is a valuable asset. For this purpose, it is desirable that a candidate design is capable of modulation index control over a wide range. This is also helpful for power flow control as well as handling faulty conditions and power flow disturbances.
- Scalability to high voltages without excessive complexity, compromising controllability over *dv/dt*, or reducing reliability.
- Modularity, full or partial, of the dc-dc converter structure is an important economical aspect. In modular designs, internal fault handling is also improved resulting in higher reliability.
- Employing resonant tanks is not encouraged due to the value drift problem of passive components by aging. Furthermore, some resonant designs feature high internal voltage stresses which may render insulation design uneconomic at high voltage.

In light of these design guidelines, the following chapters will propose a number of converter designs aiming at fulfilling (at least) most of the mentioned criteria. The proposed designs will be analysed and validated at both device and system levels. Also, some design aspects will be discussed.

In recognition of the challenges presently involved in building a high voltage and high power dc-dc converter of the above technical merits while retaining an attractive compromise between cost and footprint, the primary aim of the present thesis is more of broadening the horizon in a quite fresh field of research than responding solely to pressing industrial needs.

# Chapter 3

# Dual Active Bridge Structure Based on the Quasi Two-Level Converter

This chapter introduces the operation of DAB (or F2F) dc-dc converters with trapezoidal voltage waveforms in the ac link. The operation of MMC structure with said trapezoidal (quasi two-level) voltage waveforms is studied. Various design and operation aspects are studied in depth supported with numerical simulations and experimental validation, where appropriate.

In chapter 5, the isolated dc-dc converter structures proposed in this chapter and in chapter 4 will be compared and will be judged in Chapter 7 against the set of desirable criteria put forward in 2.5.

## 3.1 Trapezoidal operation of the DAB dc-dc converter

It has been concluded in chapter 2 that operation of the DAB dc-dc converter in two-level mode impedes scalability to higher voltage ranges primarily due to the high *dv/dt* stress impressed on the coupling ac transformer insulation as well as the complexity and low reliability associated with series-switch strings. A possible alternative that has been discussed is modularising the DAB converter into so called multi-module DAB. Alternatively, sinusoidal voltage waveforms could be adopted in the ac link to allow the utilization of the MMC concept with all its advantages. However, the resulting footprint of a DAB station harbouring two front-to-front MMC converters is too large, as mentioned in Chapter 2, even with operation at higher fundamental frequency. Additionally, soft-switching capabilities of a DAB structure are not effectively utilized under sinusoidal operation of MMCs.

In order to circumvent the shortcomings of the two-level operation of DAB dc-dc converters and relief the footprint penalty arising from the use of MMCs with sinusoidal ac voltages, operation of DAB with trapezoidal ac waveforms in the ac link is introduced herein. In this mode, each of the two MMCs in a DAB synthesizes

a stair case approximation of a three phase trapezoidal voltage waveform at the respective ac poles. As will be detailed along this chapter, the operation of a MMC-based DAB with trapezoidal ac voltage waveforms offers a better utilization of the available dc voltage at each dc side. Additionally, this mode of operation offers relatively low switching and conduction losses. It requires relatively less installed semiconductor power and smaller footprint. Also, operation with switching sequences which are distinct from conventional MMC's complementary switching is possible. Due to this structural and operational distinction to the conventional MMC operated in sinusoidal mode, the MMC under trapezoidal operation will be denoted 'the quasi two-level converter (Q2LC)' henceforth for expedience.

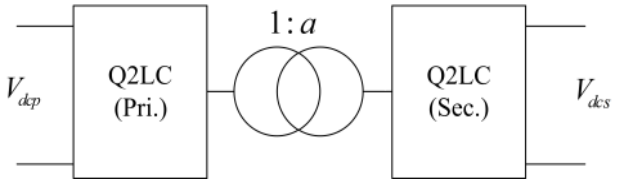
Figure 3-1 depicts the generic structure of a Q2LC-based F2F dc-dc converter and the staircase approximation of the trapezoidal ac waveform as synthesized by each Q2LC ac pole. In Figure 3-1, $T_d$ is the dwell time spent in each intermediary voltage level between the two dominant voltage levels of the trapezoidal ac waveform, $T$ is the fundamental ac period, $a$ is the coupling ac transformer turns ratio, and $V_{dcp}$ and $V_{dcs}$ are the primary and secondary dc voltages, respectively.

Only three phase DAB structures are considered in this thesis. In a three phase DAB ac link, one three phase transformer could be utilized, or alternatively three single phase transformers connected in a Y-Y, Y-Δ or Δ-Δ configuration [90]. As in typical HVDC station, the ac link of a high voltage high power DAB would normally be composed of single phase transformers to facilitate transportation.

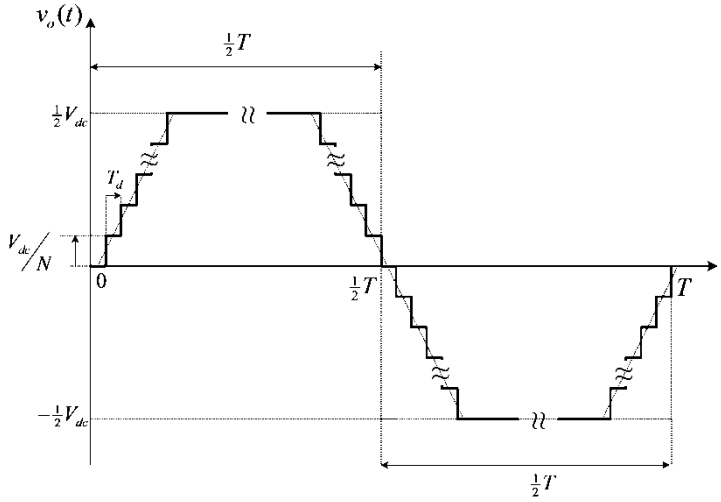
In an DAB ac link with a Y-Y coupling transformer configuration, the phase to neutral voltage (winding voltage) at each of the primary and secondary sides may be a two-step trapezoidal ac waveform or a six-step trapezoidal ac waveform, depending on the potential of the neutral point with respect to the respective dc link midpoint voltage.

The two-step three phase trapezoidal ac waveforms are produced as shown in Figure 3- 2b when neutral points are connected to respective dc link midpoints. A dc-link split capacitor bank is required to establish this connection even if a dc side filter is not required for the converter operation. Figure 3- 2 depicts the generic DAB

structure with such connection. The ac voltage and current of two corresponding ac poles at the low voltage and high voltage sides are depicted in subplot (b). For a symmetric monopolar arrangement, said two-step trapezoidal voltage waveform has two dominant levels at $\pm\frac{1}{2}V_{dc}$. Said connection between the neutral and respective dc link midpoint permits triplen harmonic current flow therethrough as shown in subplot(c) of Figure 3- 2. Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) analysis of the ac voltage and current shows the presence of major odd harmonics including triplen components (Figure 3- 2d).




(a)




(b)

Figure 3-1 (a) generic structure of Q2LB-based DAB dc-dc converter, and (b) the trapezoidal ac waveform as produced at the ac pole of each Q2LC.

Alternatively, the neutral point voltage of the primary and secondary windings could be left floating with respect to respective dc link midpoints. This way, there is no path for triplen currents. Consequently, the ac voltage and current become free from

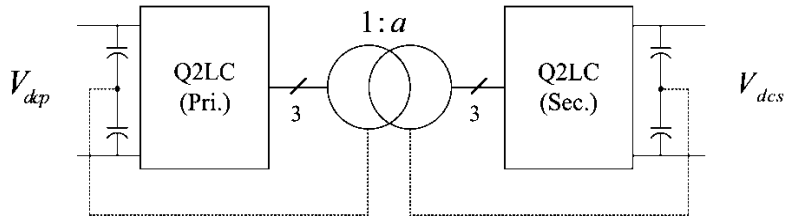
triplen components (Figure 3-3). This voltage waveform is called six-step trapezoidal waveform. A six-step waveform has dominant levels at $\pm\frac{2}{3}V_{dc}$ and $\pm\frac{1}{3}V_{dc}$.

It has been shown in [91] that six-step voltage waveforms produce a flux pattern in the ac transformer core which is very close to that of sinusoidal excitation (Figure 3-4). This conclusion has been verified by measurements carried out on 0.18 mm thick laser-processed grain-orientated steel in an Epstein frame for up to 10 kHz excitation frequencies with and without loading. Although further research is required to verify these findings on a high power design, it can be concluded that six-step excitation shows more promise for iron losses of DAB ac link transformer which are comparable to these of sinusoidal voltage excitation. This is likely to facilitate the design process of the ac link. However, this is traded for a floating neutral point voltage as well as higher peak ac pole current as noticed from Figures 3-2 and 3-3 which are generated from an illustrative simulation case of a 600MW DAB dc-dc converter connecting two symmetrical monopolar dc lines at ±150kV and ±320kV. Only operation of the DAB dc-dc converter with six-step trapezoidal ac-link voltages will be considered henceforth.

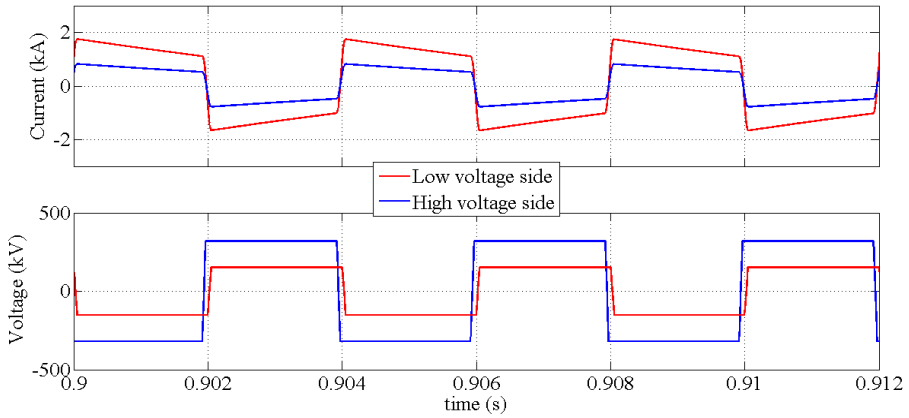
In general, the power density can be increased with a higher ac frequency, leading to reduction of the volume and weight of the coupling transformer stage. It has been shown in previous research that tenfold increase of power density is attainable by increasing frequency from 50Hz to 1000Hz without compromising design reliability [91][65].

However, as has been pointed out in chapter 2, beyond a certain limit, the relation between power density and frequency becomes non-linear due to the limitations set by the physical clearance required for mounting large transformer bushings as well as creepage distance restrictions.

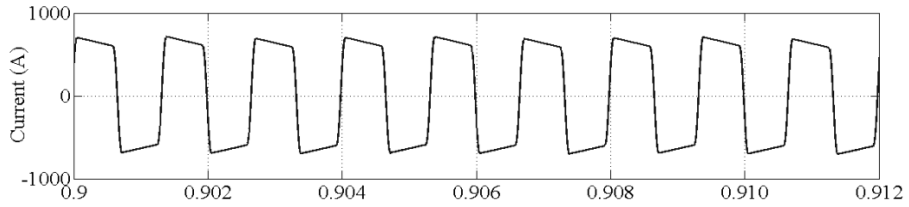
The studies conducted henceforth assume a fundamental ac link frequency in the range of 250Hz to 500Hz. The primary reasons for such a choice are:



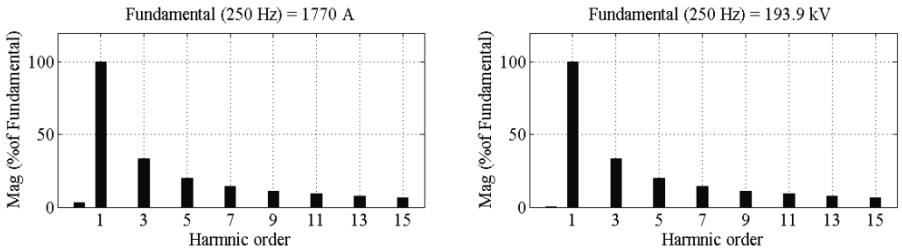

(a)




(b)

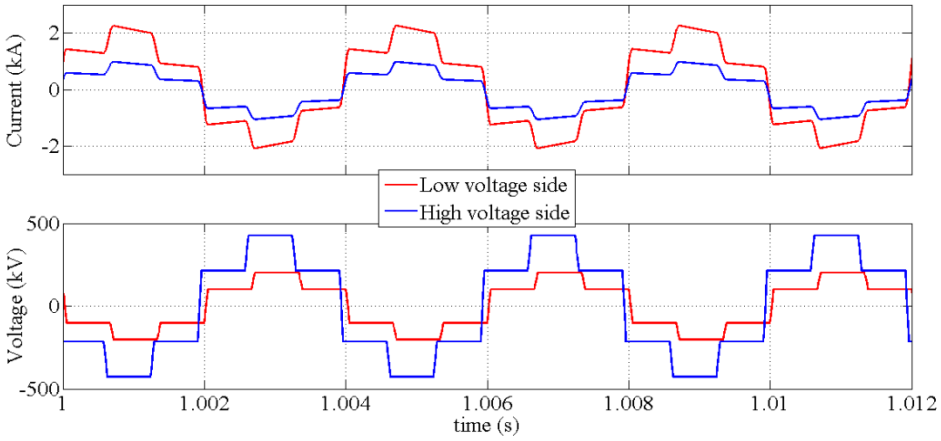



(c)

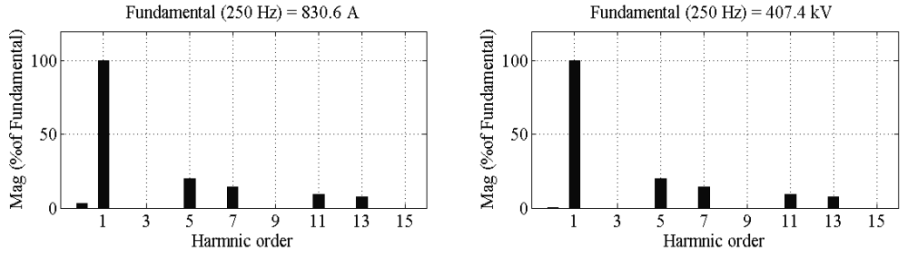



(d)

Figure 3- 2 DAB dc-dc converter with two-step trapezoidal ac-link voltage (a) generic structure, (b) zero sequence current of the high voltage side, (c) transformer windings voltage and current of one phase, and (d) FFT analysis of the voltage and current of one ph phase, and (d) FFT analysis of the voltage and current of one phase (low voltage side)




(a)




(b)

Figure 3-3 DAB dc-dc converter with six-step trapezoidal ac-link voltage (a) transformer windings voltage and current of one phase, and (d) FFT analysis of the voltage and current of one phase (high voltage side)

1- Given current state of core material technology [91], operation at such frequency range may allow some of the low order harmonics contribute to the power transfer process in addition to the fundamental component. This might be feasible with the use of suitable materials such as laser-processed grain-orientated steel with fine thickness. For instance, if the core material allows power transfer up to 2kHz, this implies the $5^{th}$ and $7^{th}$ harmonic components (in addition to $3^{rd}$ component if operated with two-step trapezoidal waveforms) engage in power transfer when the fundamental frequency is 250Hz.

2- Mitigate losses incurred by parasitic components. Primary parasitic components are: inter-winding capacitances (between windings), and intra-winding capacitances (between turns of same winding), and capacitances

between windings and the core or shields. These parasitic capacitances lead to oscillations and ringing at high voltage slopes (high *dv/dt*) and at higher frequencies.

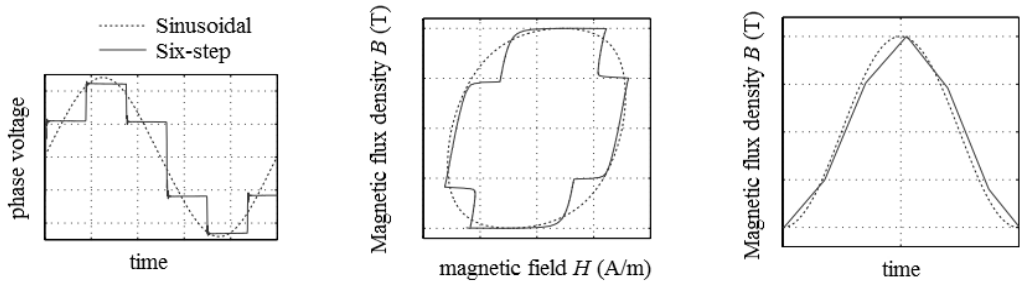



Figure 3-4 Comparison of ac transformer excitation with sinusoidal and six-step voltage waveforms. (middle) B-H curves, and (right) Magnetic flux density in transformer core over a fundamental period [91].

It is worth noting that the use of six-step trapezoidal waveforms implies the absence of high order triplen harmonics, which also relieves said parasitic losses. Additionally, the slopes of trapezoidal waveforms can be further manipulated to eliminate some other high order harmonics.

Consequently, engineering the core in terms of shape, dimensions, and material to suit the indicated frequency range (which is about a 5 to 10-fold the frequency of a conventional ac power transformer) and with six-step trapezoidal excitation is potentially a relatively easier task. Especially that there exists no special insulation design requirement for extra DC stress (as the case with HVDC grid side terminal ac power transformers).

Detailed studies are needed to better evaluate the above claims with regards to coupling transformer design. This is a topic for future research as pointed in Chapter 7 and is not a point of focus in this thesis due to the associated complexity and length, as well as lack of suitable experimentation tools. Instead, the primary aim of the thesis henceforth is to investigate the aspects, merits and, demerits of trapezoidal operation of high power high voltage dc-dc converters with respect to power electronic components structure, design, and operation.

## 3.2 The Quasi Two-level Converter

### 3.2.1 Synthesis of the trapezoidal voltage waveform

Each MMC in the DAB dc-dc converter of Figure 3-1a is operated in a quasi two-level (trapezoidal) mode where the cell capacitors of each phase arm are in the conduction path for short time intervals only to facilitate orderly stepped transitions between voltage levels ½Vdc and –½Vdc through intermediate cell voltage levels (see Figure 3-1b). The dwell time $T_d$ spent at each intermediate voltage level is sufficiently small to reduce the energy storage requirement per cell capacitor for a given voltage ripple, and must remain compatible with the switching speed of high-voltage insulated gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs). Also, the value of Td must be large enough to avoid unacceptable voltage derivative *dv/dt* stresses and eliminate higher harmonics from the output voltage waveform.

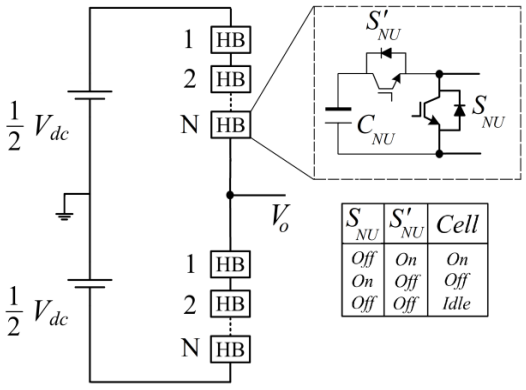



Figure 3-5 Generic structure of a single phase leg quasi two-level converter.

In this manner, each phase of the Q2LC generates a step approximation of a trapezoidal ac voltage with pre-defined volytage steps equal to one cell capacitor voltage ($V_{dc}/N$), with a total transition time $T_t$ between the two dominant voltage levels ½$V_{dc}$ and –½$V_{dc}$ given as in (3-1).

$$T_t = (N - 1)\, T_d \tag{3-1}$$

where $N$ is the number of cells per arm. The proposed trapezoidal mode exploits the structure of the modular multilevel converter to realize a converter that presents a low *dv/dt* akin to true multilevel modulation but with a reduced footprint due to relieved cell energy storage requirement. The dwell time at each cell voltage level is selected sufficiently small so that the total transition time $2(N-1)\,T_d$ per cycle is much smaller than the fundamental period time span $T$. During the non-transitional times, where the ac voltage is at either of the two dominant voltage levels, the ac poles of the Q2LC will be connected to the positive or negative rails. This implies that the Q2LC exhibits some of the operation characteristics of a two-level converter. That is, current flows separately in each arm per phase leg for an interval $T_{2L}$ of the fundamental half-cycle, where $T_{2L}$ is expressed as in (3-2).

$$T_{2L} = \tfrac{1}{2}T - \left(N-1\right)T_d \tag{3-2}$$

Only during brief periods when the cell capacitors are successively switched, both upper and lower arms of each Q2LC phase leg share ac pole current as in true multilevel operation of the MMC. Therefore, the proposed trapezoidal operation mode eliminates the common-mode components normally present in the arm currents of a conventional MMC except during voltage transition intervals $T_t$.

For a deeper understanding of the Q2LC operation aspects, it is useful to view each phase arm as a string of series-connected IGBTs, representing the power path, where each *power IGBT* is shunted by an *auxiliary circuit* comprising an auxiliary IGBT/diode pair and a capacitor. In Figure 3-5, the power IGBT/diode pair in each half bridge (HB) cell is depicted in bold line. The auxiliary circuit normally acts as an active soft voltage clamp ensuring equal dynamic and static voltage sharing between all the power IGBTs of an arm. While an ac pole reverses phase voltage polarity, an appropriate switching pattern permits the auxiliary circuit of each power IGBT to act also as an energy buffer, as explained earlier.

For uniform intermediary voltage steps, all the auxiliary capacitor voltages must remain near equal. Since each arm of a two-level converter (or a MMC) must block the dc-link voltage, the required voltage level of each auxiliary capacitor is ideally

$V_{dc}$ / $N$. The Q2LC controllers must ensure balanced capacitor voltages within an acceptable band around this set-point.

With stepped voltage transitions introduced between –½Vdc and ½Vdc, the steady-state voltage seen by each arm in Figure 3-5 is:

$$V_x = V_{dc}\,(1 - N_{Yon} / N) \tag{3-3}$$

where subscripts $X \in \{U, L\}$ and $Y = \overline{X}$. Symbols U and L refer to the upper and lower arms, respectively. In (3-3), $N_{Yon}$ is the number of inserted auxiliary capacitors in the complementary arm. For modelling purposes, $N_{Yon}$ may be expressed as in (3-4).

$$N_{Yon}(t) = \begin{cases} \sum_{i=0,1\ldots N-1} u(t - iT_d - t_o), & t_o \le t < (N-1)T_d + t_o \\ N & (N-1)T_d + t_o \le t < ½T + t_o \\ N - \sum_{i=0,1\ldots N-1} u(t - [½T + iT_d + t_o]), & ½T + t_o \le t < ½T + (N-1)T_d + t_o \\ 0, & ½T + (N-1)T_d + t_o + \le t < T + t_o \end{cases}$$

$$where \quad t_o = \frac{k}{f_s} + \varphi_Y, \quad k = 0,1,2,\ldots.,\infty \qquad Y \in \{U, L\}$$

(3-4)

Substituting (3-4) in (3-3) gives the arm voltage $V_X$ as a time function. In the Q2LC, an ac pole is tied to one of the dc rails when $N_{Yon} \in \{0, N\}$. Stepped voltage transitions occur when $1 \le N_{Yon} < N$ in a staircase approximation of a trapezoid. Since the voltage across both arms of a phase leg at any instant equals the dc-link voltage, maintaining the capacitors voltages around the $V_{dc}$ / $N$ set point intuitively requires that the total number of inserted auxiliary capacitors in both arms at any instant satisfies (3-5).

$$N_{Uon} + N_{Lon} = N \tag{3-5}$$

This entails a complementary switching pattern of both arms of each phase leg. However, the Q2LC operating mode permits the use of a third cell switching state – denoted idle state – where both the power and auxiliary IGBTs are in off-state (Figure 3-5). Possible switching sequences employing this switching state are able to achieve proper operation with $N_{Uon} + N_{Lon} < N$, as will be shown in section 3.2.4.1. The single-leg Q2LC output voltage expression is given in (3-6). Equation (3-6) holds as well for switching sequences where the idle cell state is employed, provided the arm having idle cells is not used to calculate (3-6).

$$v_o(t) = V_{dc}\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{N_{Uon}(t)}{N}\right) = V_{dc}\left(\frac{N_{Lon}(t)}{N} - \frac{1}{2}\right) \tag{3-6}$$

### 3.2.2 Grouping of half bridge cells in a Q2LC

The high voltage levels in HVDC applications often require hundreds of cascaded HB cells per phase arm so as to block the dc link voltage. While this is customary in MMC design, sequential switching of hundreds of cells in a Q2LC arm may pose a computational challenge for the controllers if cell voltage balancing algorithm requires measurements of individual cell voltages during the ac pole voltage transition. This is due to the short span of voltage transition times of synthesized trapezoidal voltages ($T_t$ is in the range of a few tens to a few hundreds of microseconds). Nonetheless, a suitable voltage balancing algorithm may be tailored to circumvent this drawback.

Additionally, sequential switching of hundreds of cells in each arm of a Q2LC at $T_d$ time steps may result in the interval $T_t$ constituting a significant portion of the fundamental period, which leads to a reduction of the fundamental ac voltage component and requires extra energy storage capacity available to cells to avoid violation of cell voltage ripple tolerances. Theoretically, the dwell time $T_d$ may be minimized to reduce $T_t$. However, the minimum value of $T_d$ is dictated by the switching delays of switching devices, and must not result in a violation of tolerable *dv/dt* stress.

In a possible solution to the above challenge, the Q2LC is not required to produce a trapezoidal ac voltage waveform of $N$+1 voltage levels when $N$ low-voltage cells are

installed per arm. Instead, each number of low-voltage cells per arm can be considered to form a 'subgroup' by being controlled to switch simultaneously. A low-voltage cell here is a cell which employs a single 1.7kV, 3.3kV or 4.5kV IGBT/diode pair in the power and auxiliary circuits of the cell.

By grouping cells into subgroups, the number of output ac voltage levels can be reduced from $N + 1$ to $N_s + 1$ (Figure 3-6) where;

$$N_s = \left\lceil N/n \right\rceil \tag{3-6}$$

and $n$ is the number of cells per cell subgroup. The minimum value of $N_s$, which corresponds to the upper value of $n$, is subject to the permissible *dv/dt* levels. In such a case, each subgroup will be composed of $n$ HB cells which are effectively series-connected. Equal static and dynamic voltage sharing in a subgroup is assured by the auxiliary capacitors. Gating delays may cause slight voltage imbalance between capacitors of the sub-group. To avoid complex gate drive circuitry, the employed capacitor balancing technique will need to address individual cell voltages of the arm rather than subgroups aggregate voltages.

In curtailing the number of ac pole voltage levels to $N_s + 1$, the main Q2LC design constraint can be set to the selection of $N$, $T_d$, and $\omega_s$ (the fundamental angular frequency) values to control the *dv/dt* level at a minimum drop in fundamental voltage magnitude and with minimum cell capacitance. This issue will be revisited several times along the thesis.

As an alternative to cell grouping, medium voltage half-bridge cells can be employed in the Q2LC rather than low-voltage cells. A medium voltage cell is a cell where IGBT/diode pairs are series connected in the power path and auxiliary path to block a higher voltage, as in the cascaded two-level converter of ABB [53] (refer to 2.2.3). In this case, $N$ of (3-6) becomes the total number of power IGBTs per arm and $n$ denotes the number of series power IGBT modules in the cell.

Whether low-voltage or medium voltage cells are employed in the Q2LC, a suitable redundancy margin in terms of cell numbers and voltage ratings is mandatory for uninterrupted and balanced operation of the Q2LC with faulted cells.

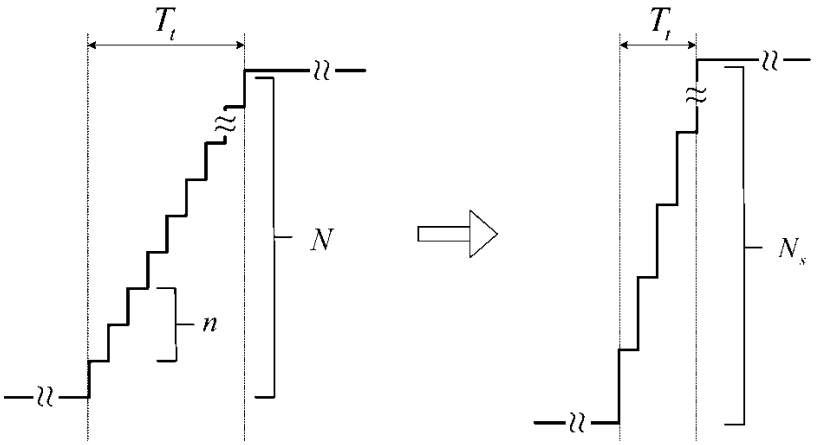



Figure 3-6 Effect of cell grouping on the ac pole trapezoidal voltage and transition time in a Q2LC; (left) no grouping, and (right) cells grouped.

### 3.2.3 Analysis of the trapezoidal ac voltage

It may be clear to the reader at the is point that, in a Q2LC design, the number of cells per arm $N$ (or number of levels $N_s$), the dwell time $T_d$, and the operating frequency $\omega_s$ have a fundamental impact on the synthesized trapezoidal ac waveform and its harmonic content. This is going to be generically discussed in the following.

Fourier expansion of (3-7) can be used to investigate the harmonic content of the trapezoidal ac output assuming a periodical trapezoidal waveform of magnitude $V_{dc}$ and frequency $\omega_s$ which is symmetrical about both vertical and horizontal axes. Thus, $a_o = 0$ (no dc offset) and $a_k = 0$, and the trapezoid is decomposed to sinusoids of odd harmonic order (i.e. $k \in 2Z^* + 1$ or $k = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$).

$$f(x) = a_o + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k \cos(kx) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k \sin(kx)$$

where; (3-7)

$$a_o = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)dx$$

$$a_k = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\cos(kx)dx$$

$$b_k = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(x)\sin(kx)dx$$

Solving (3-7), the resulting Fourier expansion is given in (3-8).

$$v_o(t) = 2V_{dc}\delta \sum_{k\in 2Z^*+1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(k\pi\delta)}{k\pi\delta}\frac{\sin(k\pi f_s T_t)}{k\pi f_s T_t}\cos(k\omega_s t) \tag{3-8}$$

In (3-8), $\delta$ refers to the duty ratio ($\delta = 0.5$). From (3-8), the magnitude of the $k^{th}$ harmonic component of $v_o$ is given in (3-9).

$$v_{o(k)} = 2V_{dc}\delta \frac{\sin(k\pi\delta)}{k\pi\delta}\frac{\sin(k\pi f_s T_t)}{k\pi f_s T_t} \tag{3-9}$$

Using (3-1), (3-6), and (3-9) the approximate fundamental magnitude of $v_{o(k)}$ can be expressed as;

$$v_{o(k)} = \frac{2V_{dc}}{k\pi}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)\frac{\sin(\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k(N_s-1)T_d)}{\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k(N_s-1)T_d} \tag{3-10}$$

The fundamental value $v_{of}$ can be found by setting $k = 1$ in (3-10). A modulation index $m$ can be defined as in (3-11).

$$m = \frac{2v_{o(f)}}{V_{dc}} = \frac{4}{\pi}\frac{\sin(\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s(N_s-1)T_d)}{\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s(N_s-1)T_d} \tag{3-11}$$

At small values of parameters $\omega_s$, $N_s$ and/or $T_d$, (3-11) evolves to (3-12) which resembles square wave operation.

$$m = \frac{4}{\pi}\lim_{\alpha\to 0}\frac{\sin\alpha_T}{\alpha_T} \approx \frac{4}{\pi} \quad \forall \quad \alpha_T = \tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k\left(N_s - 1\right)T_d \tag{3-12}$$

Equation (3-12) implies that the fundamental voltage of a trapezoidal ac waveform can reach up to 1.27 (or 4/π) of a sinusoidal ac waveform. When operation at a fundamental modulation index ($m < 4/\pi$) is required, the reduction of $m$ can be administered by increasing $\omega_s$, $N_s$ and/or $T_d$, which is a manipulation of the trapezoid slope (angle $\alpha_T$) Alternatively, the trapezoidal ac waveform fundamental component magnitude can be reduced by clamping the two dominant voltage levels of the trapezoid to $\pm\frac{1}{2}m_cV_{dc}$, where ($m_c < 1$). In this case, the available dc voltage (span between two dominant voltage levels) is $m_cV_{dc}$ and the number of voltage levels becomes $\|m_cN_s\|$, where $\|x\|$ is the value of $x$ rounded to the nearest integer. This way $v_{o(k)}$ becomes;

$$v_{o(k)} = \frac{2m_cV_{dc}}{k\pi}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)\frac{\sin\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k\left(\|m_cN_s\|-1\right)T_d\right)}{\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k\left(\|m_cN_s\|-1\right)T_d} \tag{3-13}$$

which corresponds to a fundamental modulation index $m$ of;

$$m = \frac{4m_c}{\pi}\frac{\sin\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k\left(\|m_cN_s\|-1\right)T_d\right)}{\tfrac{1}{2}\omega_s k\left(\|m_cN_s\|-1\right)T_d} \tag{3-14}$$

where $m$ is necessarily less than 4/π as long as $m_c < 1$. In depth analysis of modulation index control under trapezoidal ac waveforms is presented in Chapter 5.

Equations (3-8), (3-9), (3-10) and (3-13) are valid for single-phase-leg and multiphase converter configurations with trapezoidal output. For an H-bridge single phase configuration, the dominant voltage levels of the trapezoidal ac voltage waveform are at $\pm V_{dc}$. Thus the right-hand-sides of said equations must be multiplied by 2 for the H-bridge converter case.

An alternative way of analysing the harmonic content of the trapezoidal ac waveform is to decompose the staircase approximated trapezoidal ac voltage into square waveforms each representing a voltage step. This is a slightly more accurate representation of the trapezoidal ac pole voltage, being a staircase waveform, despite that the margin of error between both representations is negligible as will be shown shortly. The representation of $v_{o(k)}$ as a sum of square wave components makes use of the Fourier expansion of the periodic waveform shown in Figure 3-7a. Using (3-7), the magnitude of the $k^{th}$ harmonic component is given in (3-15).

$$v_{o(k)} = \frac{2A}{k\pi}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{k\tau}{2}\right) \tag{3-15}$$

Using (3-15), the magnitude of the $k^{th}$ harmonic component of the trapezoidal voltage waveform of number of levels $N_s$+1, available dc voltage $V_{dc}$, dwell time $T_d$, and fundamental frequency $\omega_s$ is given in (3-16).

$$\begin{aligned} v_{o(k)} &= m_k \frac{4}{\pi k}\frac{V_{dc}}{N_s}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)\eta \qquad \forall\ N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ v_{o(k)} &= m_k \frac{4}{\pi k}\frac{V_{dc}}{N_s}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)\lambda \qquad \forall\ N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{aligned} \tag{3-16}$$

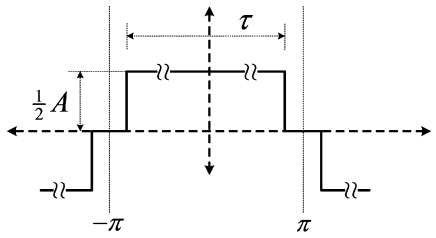
where;

$$\begin{aligned} \eta &= \sum_{i \in 2Z^* + 1}^{N_s - 1} \sin\left(\frac{k}{2}\left(\pi - iT_d\omega_s\right)\right) \\ \lambda &= \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{i \in 2Z^+}^{N_s - 1} \sin\left(\frac{k}{2}\left(\pi - iT_d\omega_s\right)\right) \end{aligned} \tag{3-17}$$

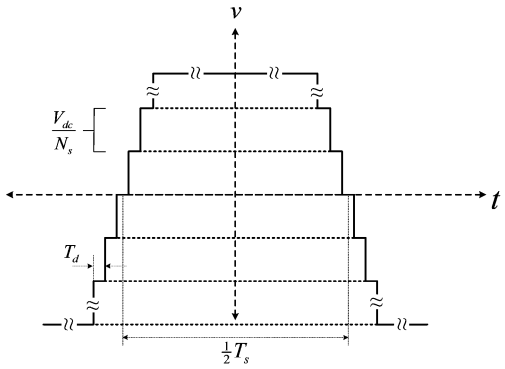
In (3-16), $m_k$ is the modulation index of harmonic $k$ ($m_k = m_c$ at $k = 1$). The distinction between the expressions for even and odd values of $N_s$ can be understood in comparing Figures 3-7b and 3-7c.

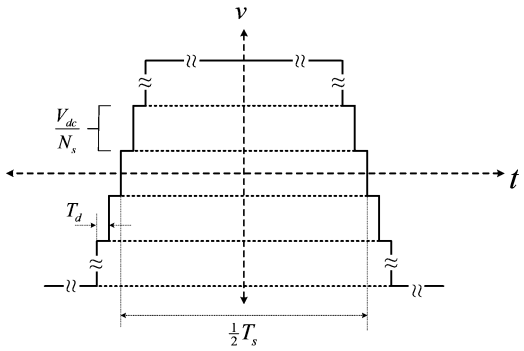
The magnitude of $v_{of}$ has less than 0.1% error when calculated by (3-16) and (3-17) rather than (3-10) at $k = 1$ over the expected range of parameter values. Therefore, both representations are suitable for studying the impact $N$, $\omega_s$ and $T_d$ have on $v_{of}$. At

$k = 1$ and taking $2V_{dc}/\pi$ as a base value, (3-10) can be expressed in per-unit as in (3-18).




(a)




(b) (c)

Figure 3-7 (a) waveform of a square wave component of the staircase trapezoidal ac waveform, (b) the staircase trapezoidal waveform with even number of steps (odd number of levels), and (c) the staircase trapezoidal waveform with odd number of steps (even number of levels).

$$v_{of}^{pu} = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\omega_s\left(N_s - 1\right)T_d\right)}{\frac{1}{2}\omega_s\left(N_s - 1\right)T_d} \tag{3-18}$$

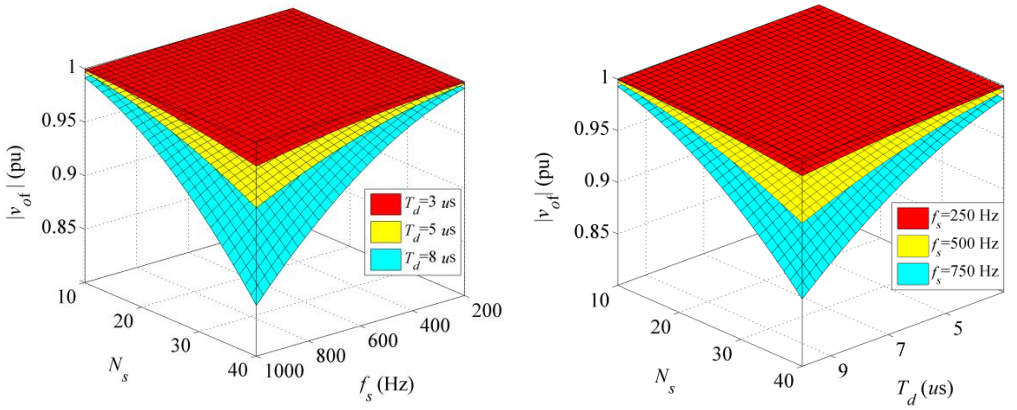
The per-unit representation in (3-18) holds for all single- and multiphase-phase configurations (representing phase-to-ground voltage). $v_{of}^{pu}$ is graphed in Figure 3-8 for different values of $N_s$, $f_s$ and $T_d$. As expected, $v_{of}^{pu}$ decreases with an increase in any of the three parameters; with a minimum of $2/\pi$ pu when $(N_s - 1)\, T_d = \frac{1}{2}T_s$, which represents a triangular-shaped output voltage.

The lower the fundamental voltage magnitude, the higher the load current for a given power transfer; with subsequent penalties in terms of efficiency, volume and capital cost. Expectedly, the results show that the sacrifice in the fundamental modulation index with a trapezoidal voltage output is insignificant for an acceptable range of parameter values. This allows for a margin for various design objectives to be met. Proper design of each of the three parameters in (3-18) depends mainly on the operating voltage, control design, employed switches, and volume constraints.

The low order harmonic are to contribute to power transfer; therefore investigating their magnitudes is important for the ac transformer design, as has been highlighted in section 3.1. Figure 3-9 depicts the per-unit magnitudes of the main low-order harmonic components of $v_o$ plotted against $N_s$ and $T_d$ at a constant frequency ($f_s$ = 500Hz). It can be observed that with higher values of $N_s$ and $T_d$, the harmonic magnitudes fall and may reverse polarity (half cycle phase shift). The base value for each harmonic pu magnitude is $2V_{dc}/k\pi$ ($4V_{dc}/k\pi$ for a single phase H-bridge) with $k$ being the harmonic order.

### 3.2.4 Q2LC switching sequences

The fact that HB cells are employed as energy tanks for very brief intervals when a Q2LC generates trapezoidal ac voltage waveforms brings about more degrees of freedom in terms of switching sequences. Four possible switching patterns can be employed to achieve stepped two-level operation, and are termed ‘non-complementary switching (NCS)’, ‘complementary switching (CS)’, ‘shifted complementary switching (SCS)’, and ‘shifted non-complementary switching (SNCS)’ modes.




(a) (b)

Figure 3-8 Fundamental output voltage of single-leg Q2LC in terms of $N$, $\omega_s$, and $T_d$ (a) for discrete values of $T_d$, and (b) discrete values of $\omega_s$.

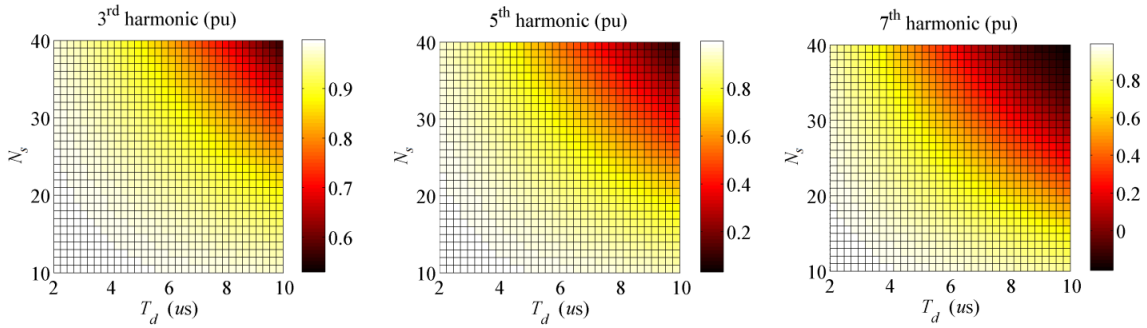


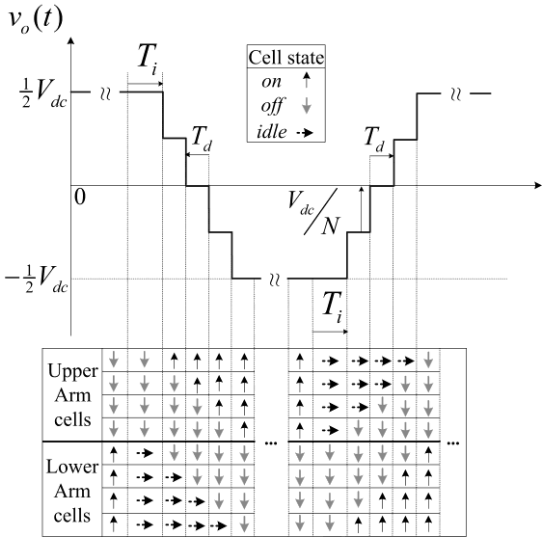

Figure 3-9 Per unit magnitude of main harmonic components of the single-leg Q2LC output voltage, with $f_s$ =500Hz.

### 3.2.4.1 Non-complementary switching sequence (NCS)

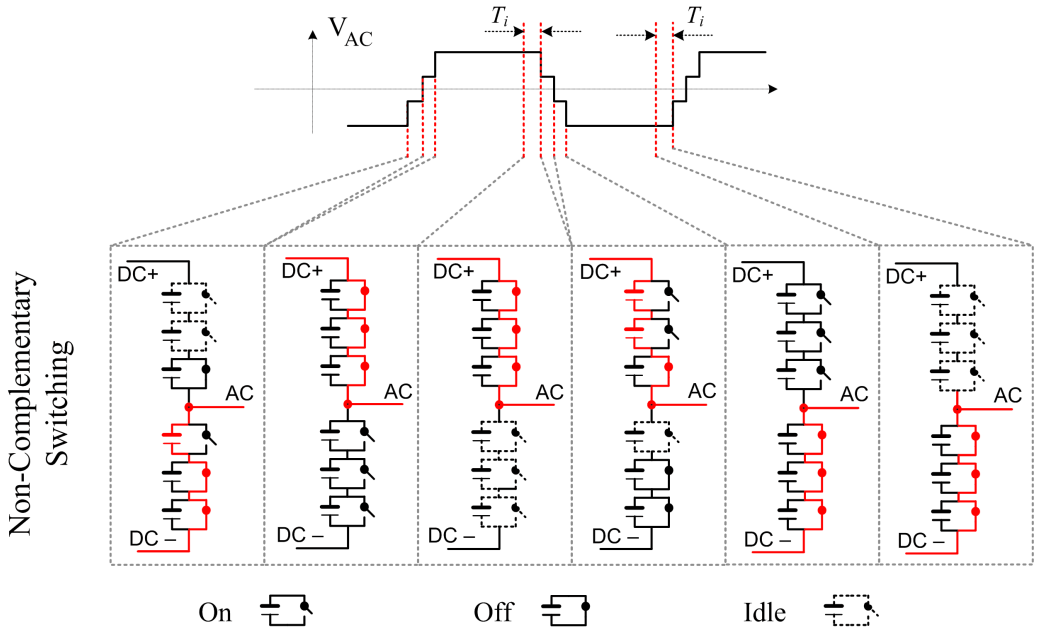
In this switching sequence, all three possible switch states of each HB cell (Figure 3-5) are exploited. The NCS sequence is shown in Figure 3-10a for a 4 cell-per-arm, single-leg Q2LC. The NCS sequence is also visualized for a 3-cell-per-arm single-leg Q2LC in Figure 3-10b.

Starting with the load voltage at ½$V_{dc}$, all the upper arm cells are in an off state while the lower arm cells are in on state. The lower arm cells are brought to an idle state a period $T_i$ before the ac pole voltage transition commences. $T_i$ may be chosen in the

region of a few microseconds to ensure that cell voltages track (pro rata) any dc-link voltage variations occurring while the ac pole is clamped to either of the dc rails. For a stepped voltage transition from $\frac{1}{2}V_{dc}$ to $-\frac{1}{2}V_{dc}$ to occur, capacitors $C_{1U}$ to $C_{4U}$ (upper arm capacitors in Figure 3-5) are sequentially inserted by switching-on the corresponding cells with a dwell delay $T_d$. The load voltage transits to $-\frac{1}{2}V_{dc}$ in four discrete steps, each being $\frac{1}{4}V_{dc}$. During the transition, the lower arm voltage decreases in $\frac{1}{4}V_{dc}$ steps, according to (3-3). For each step voltage drop, a lower arm cell is switched-off. With the last upper arm capacitor inserted into the circuit, the last lower arm cell turns off and the pole load current commutates from the upper arm to the lower arm. A few microseconds ($T_i$) before the next load voltage polarity reversal, the upper arm cells are switched to an idle state and a similar switching procedure is repeated for the voltage transit from $-\frac{1}{2}V_{dc}$ to $\frac{1}{2}V_{dc}$, as in Figure 3-10. The idle cells of an arm could alternatively be switched-off simultaneously at the instant when the last capacitor of the complementary arm is inserted. However, this may bring about additional switching losses, depending on the loading conditions at the instant of switching.




(a)




(b)

Figure 3-10 Non-complementary switching NCS sequence (a) sequence shown for a 4 cell-per-arm single-leg Q2LC, and (b) visualized for a 3 cell-per-arm single-leg Q2LC.

### 3.2.4.2 Complementary switching sequence (CS)

In this switching sequence (Figure 3-11), cells are utilized only in the on or off states (no idle state). Cells of both arms switch in a complementary pattern. With $N_{Lon} = N - N_{Uon}$, the number of inserted capacitors in one arm always equals the number of off-state cells in the other arm of the same leg. This is a similar principle to conventional MMC switching [39]. Equation (3-4) holds for this switching mode. Therefore, according to (3-3) and (3-4), arm voltages are continuously complementary over the fundamental cycle.

### 3.2.4.3 Shifted complementary switching sequence (SCS)

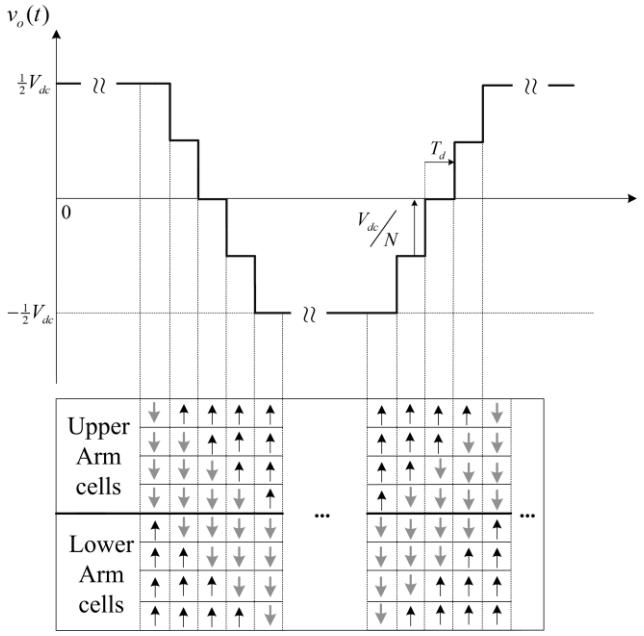
The use of this switching pattern is limited to single-phase H-bridge Q2LCs. The SCS sequence produces $2N+1$ levels in the output voltage, by introducing a time lag $0 < \alpha < T_d$ between the switching functions of each two phase legs, where the arms in each leg switch complementarily as in the CS sequence. This is shown in Figure 3-

12. The SCS sequence produces a further relieved *dv/dt* stress for the same value of $T_t$. An Q2LC of $N$ cells per arm operating with the SCS sequence is functionally equivalent to an Q2LC structure of $2N$ cells per arm operating with the SC sequence and a smaller dwell time ($½T_d$ when $\alpha = ½T_d$), therefore has similar voltage and current dynamics as featured with the CS sequence.

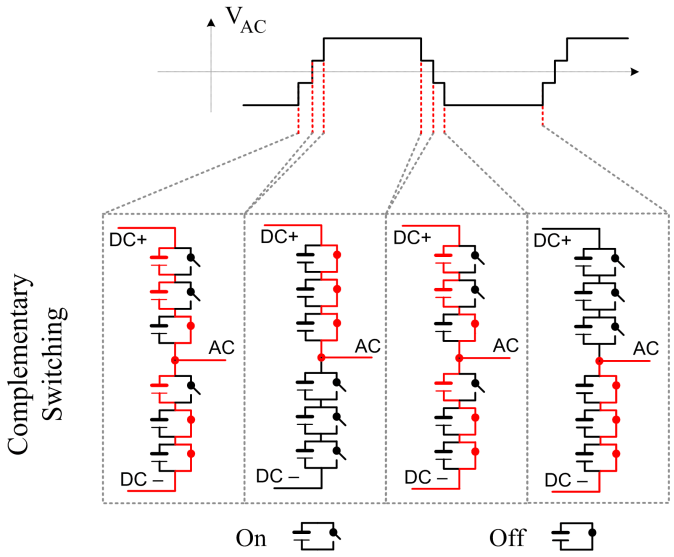
The delay $\alpha$ can alternatively be inserted between the complementary switching functions of both arms of the each leg, thus becoming valid for single-leg and three-phase Q2LCs as well. However, this may trigger extra common-mode currents. A further study of this mode is needed.

#### 3.2.4.4 Shifted non-complementary switching sequence (SNCS)

Similarly, a shifted non-complementary switching (SNCS) sequence can be produced by inserting a delay $0 < \alpha < T_d$ between the switching functions of the two phase legs of a single-phase H-bridge Q2LC, where the arms in each leg switch in a non-complementary manner as in the NCS sequence. Again, operation is functionally equivalent to a Q2LC with double the number of cells per arm operating under the NCS sequence with a smaller dwell time; thus, with alleviated *dv/dt* stress.




(a)




(b)

Figure 3-11 Complementary switching CS sequence (a) sequence shown for a 4 cell-per-arm single-leg Q2LC, and (b) visualized for a 3 cell-per-arm single-leg Q2LC.

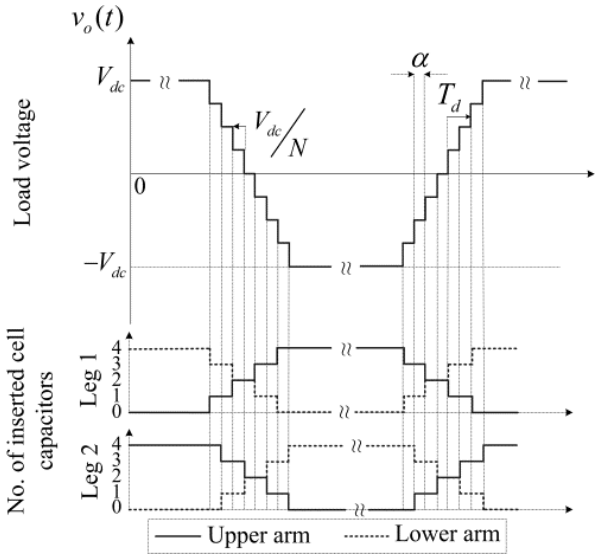



Figure 3-12 The Shifted complementary switching sequence (SCS).

The analysis carried out in the rest of this thesis will only consider the CS and NCS sequences for the study of various operation aspects of Q2LCs. However, all conclusions are valid for operation with SCS and SNCS sequences – after accounting

for the doubled number of levels and shorter $T_d$ – as duals to CS and NCS, respectively, unless otherwise stated.

### 3.2.5 Dwell time limits

Selection of the dwell time $T_d$ involves trade-offs between *dv/dt* stress, cell capacitor size, and fundamental output voltage. The required dead time $T_{DB}$ between the two IGBTs of each HB cell as well as other switching delays and transit times become significant considering the small value of $T_d$. The total switching time of one cell $T_{sc}$

(IGBTs switch complementarily) can be defined as:

$$T_{sc} = t_{d(off)} + t_f + t_{DB} + t_{d(on)} + t_r \tag{3-19}$$

For instance, the Infineon FZ1500R33HL3 3.3kV 1500A IGBT module has a total turn-on time of $t_{d(on)} + t_r = 1\mu s$ and turn-off time of $t_{d(off)} + t_f = 5\mu s$ When a dead time of $0.5 - 1\mu s$ is inserted, $T_{sc}$ must be at least 6.5µs. Consequently, the switching process of a cell must be initiated a time $t_{d(off)} + t_f$ before the cell is actually meant to alter its state.

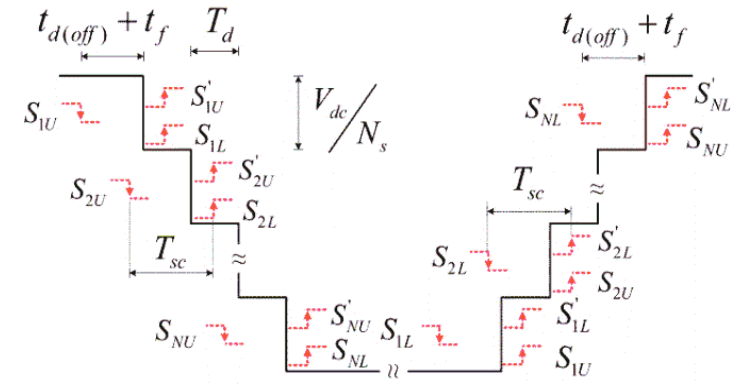
The dwell time, however, is not bounded by $T_{sc}$, which is beneficial for applications where higher frequency is required. For a dwell time $T_d < T_{sc}$, cell switching becomes naturally overlapped. Switching overlap in an arm means that the gating of the next cell to switch is initiated before the currently switching cell has actually changed state.

The overlapped switching sequence with positive (charging) arm current is shown in Figure 3-13, where the cells per arm are numbered in ascending order for simplicity. The actual order is determined by the employed capacitor balancing method. With negative (discharging) arm current, a cell capacitor is inserted (a step in output voltage) only when the respective auxiliary IGBT fully turns on.

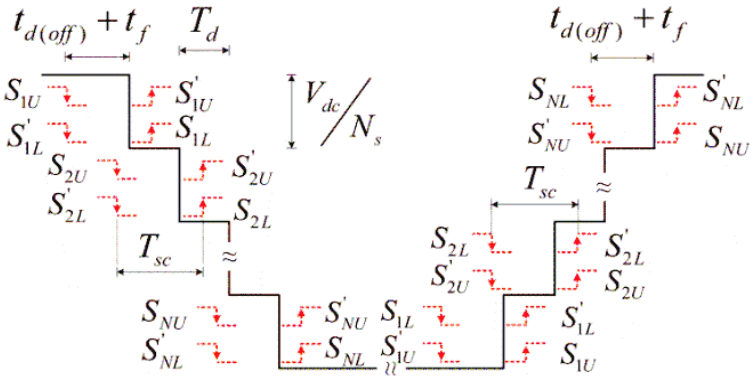
### 3.2.6 Operation of the Q2LC under CS and NCS switching sequences

A further investigation of the Q2LC operation aspects will be carried out in light of the proposed switching sequences. A case study is simulated using Matlab/Simulink®

involving the three-phase Q2LC of Figure 3-14 and Table 3-1. The Q2LC is energized by a stiff dc source and applies a three phase trapezoidal voltage waveform across the load. Although the considered Q2LC concept is not considered here for single-stage dc/ac conversion applications, the arrangement of Figure 3-14 is useful for a simple demonstration of internal bridge dynamics under said switching sequences.




(a)




(b)

Figure 3-13 Overlapped cell switching for dwell time $T_d < T_{sc}$ under (a) NCS (SNCS) sequence, and (b) CS (SCS) sequence.

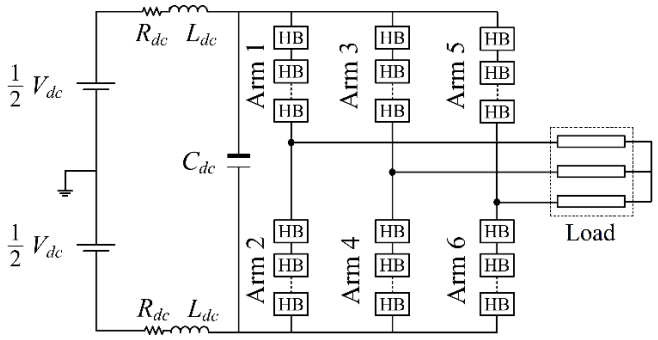



Figure 3-14 The Shifted complementary switching sequence (SCS).

TABLE 3-1

PARAMETERS OF THE CONSIDERED THREE-PHASE Q2LC

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| $V_{dc}$ | ±30 kV | $f_s$ | 250 Hz |
| $L_L$(phase) | 1.5 mH | $L_{dc}$ | 1 mH |
| $R_L$(phase) | 40 Ω | $R_{dc}$ | 0.1 Ω |
| $T_d$ | 5µs | $C_{dc}$ | 100µF |
| $C_{sm}$ | 80µF | $R_{arm}$ | 80 mΩ |
| $N_s$ | 10 | $L_{arm}$ | 16.5µH |

The ±30kV Q2LC of Figure 3-14 uses the IHV FZ1500R33HL3 IGBT module from Infineon rated at 3300V and 1500A. Thirty three cells are connected in each arm to achieve redundant operation with 1.8kV per cell, or 2kV per cell with three cells per arm bypassed (e.g. in case of failure). The IGBT on-state and diode forward voltages are modelled as per datasheet. A 0.5µH stray inductance is modelled for each half-bridge cell. The cells of each arm are arranged in subgroups to produce $N_s = 10$ with 80uF aggregate capacitance per subgroup. Individual cell voltages are balanced using the conventional sorting algorithm used for MMCs where cell capacitors are

continuously rotated based on measurements of their individual voltages and arm current polarities [39].

Figure 3-15 depicts the output voltage, output current, arm currents, and cell voltages for both CS and NCS switching sequences. With a modulation index $m_c = 1$, the output voltage exhibits stepped behaviour with a total of eleven ($N_s$+1) voltage levels independent of the switching sequence (Figure 3-15g). Except during switching periods, only one arm per leg conducts the full load current, similar to a conventional 2-level bridge. When ac voltage transition is realized by the CS sequence, load current flows simultaneously in both arms and nearly all cell capacitors in the phase leg experience current flow. With the connected load being inductive, this current will be charging for the capacitors of the switching-off arm (in which cells switch successively to the on-state) and discharging for the switching-on arm, where cells switch to the off state. The net result is that cell capacitors in each arm charge or discharge some of their energy once per half cycle of the fundamental frequency with voltage variation confined to a certain ripple band by action of the capacitor balancing technique. Figures 3-15b and 3-15e show that the ripple is about ±1.6% of the nominal cell subgroup voltage.

Any ripple in the dc side voltage will be exported (pro rata) to the on-state cells in each leg, since they must instantaneously balance with the dc side voltage. This is the reason for the slight voltage variation observed in the on-state cells while load current fully flows in the complementary arm (Figures 3-15b and 3-15e). A common-mode current is triggered in each leg during switching periods. This current, acting to regain voltage balance between each leg and the dc-link, is limited by stray circuit impedance. As modeled, the individual cell stray arm inductances sum up to 16.5μH per arm, while the equivalent on-state resistance of the power path per arm is about 80mΩ. Resonance between connected leg capacitance and the parasitic inductance triggers common-mode oscillations as seen in Figure 3-15a. It is observed that these oscillations are of insignificant magnitude and damp rapidly without dedicated arm resistance. These Q2LC internal current and voltage dynamics are not reflected on to the load side, as confirmed in Figure 3-15g.

The Q2LC exhibits slightly different internal voltage and current dynamics when the NCS sequence is employed. Nonetheless, the load side remains isolated from these dynamics as well. Each cell remains in conduction path for an average period of $½T_s - T_i$ where its voltage follows any dc link ripple pro rata, and then becomes bypassed for the rest of the fundamental period. Unlike the CS sequence, the full load current flows through cell capacitors of the switching-off arm brought into the conduction path. In consequence, the aggregate cell subgroup voltage ripple becomes ±2% peak-to-peak for the same 80μF aggregate cell subgroup capacitance. At the instant the last cell of the switching-on arm switches from idle to off, cell capacitors of the switching-off arm are all in conduction path and simultaneously balance with the dc-link voltage, triggering common-mode currents with slightly higher peak and oscillations as compared to CS sequence (Figure 3-15a).

It can be seen in Figure 3-15d that the current flow in the auxiliary circuit is significantly less than in the power IGBT modules, apart from the adopted switching sequence. This allows the use of lower current rating devices in the auxiliary circuit. Furthermore, it extends the life time of cell capacitors. In this test the FZ400R33KL2C IGBT module from Infineon with 3300V 400A are used for the auxiliary circuit in each cell. Note that the peak auxiliary circuit "pulse" current depends on the instant the cell balancing controller brings the capacitor into conduction path. It is worth noting as well that the cell balancing controller succeeds to sustain such a low voltage ripple while modelled to measure cell voltages only twice per half cycle. Nevertheless, cell voltages may need to be frequently polled for failure handling.

## 3.3 Q2LC-based DAB component sizing

Selection of HB cell voltage rating in a Q2LC design is affected by the operating dc voltage, *dv/dt* tolerance, operating frequency, and is subject to state of the art in high voltage semiconductor devices and capacitors. Design of the HB cell capacitance size in each Q2LC of a DAB is subject to the rated ac link current (i.e. rated power flow) and voltage transit time $T_t$, which is somewhat entangled with *dv/dt* restrictions and dc voltage levels at the high and low voltage sides of the DAB. Thus the design process involves several trade-offs. Nevertheless, with knowledge of the ac link

current profile and its rated value, HB cell energy storage and semiconductor devices current ratings can be calculated for given values of $T_t$ and $V_{dc}$. This guideline information can be used to select the optimal cell voltage subject to available semiconductor and capacitor technologies and related redundancy and economic considerations. The following subsection develops the ac link current waveforms for a generic Q2LC-based DAB which will be used later to size passive and semiconductor components.

### 3.3.1 Q2LC-based DAB ac link voltages and currents

The generic three phase DAB dc transformer structure in Figure 3-16a is considered whereas the phase voltages and ac pole currents of two corresponding phase legs referred to primary side are plotted in Figure 3-16b. The primary and secondary Q2LCs phase voltages $v_p$ and $v_s$, respectively, are phase shifted by the load angle $\varphi$ applying a voltage $v_{L_s}$ across the ac transformer leakage inductance $L_s$. Voltage transition periods are assumed equal for both bridges ($T_{tp} = T_{ts} = T_t$). A ratio $\rho = b/a$ (refer to Figure 3-16) is traditionally defined as the dc ratio where $V_{dcs} = bV_{dcp}$. AC phase current profile is subject to the operating value of $\rho$ as the latter impacts the voltage imposed on the ac transformer leakage reactance. The range of steady state values $\rho$ may take, and hence the ac transformer leakage voltage, is limited due to the slight variation of dc voltages (e.g. by variable loading) which requires a limited range of modulation indices variation.

Starting at point 0 in Figure 3-16b where $\theta = 0°$ the formulae for $v_{L_s}(\theta)$ for each section of a half cycle can be developed and the primary phase current $i_p(\theta)$ can be calculated in terms of its initial value $i_p(\theta_o)$ using (3-20), where $\theta_o = 0°$.

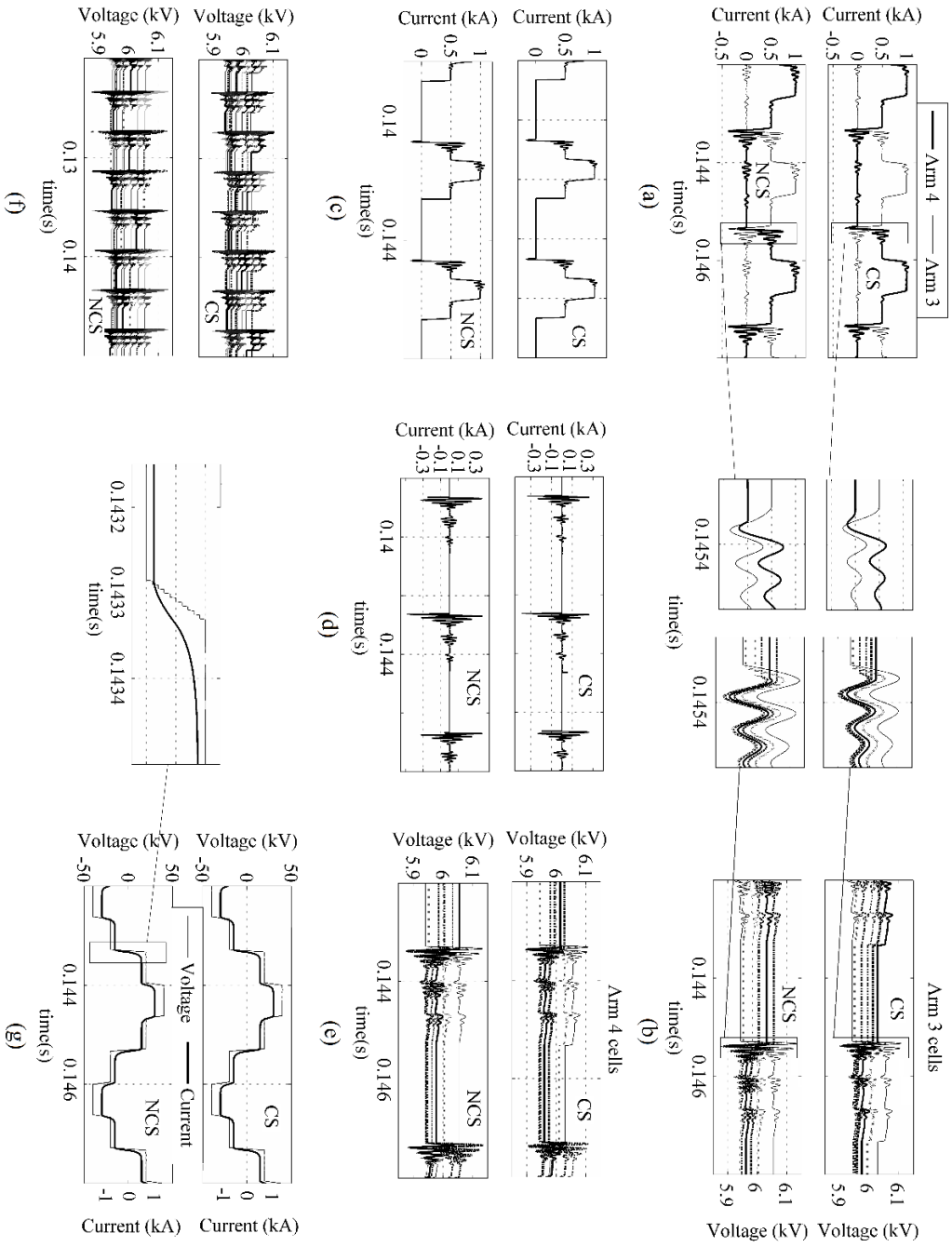
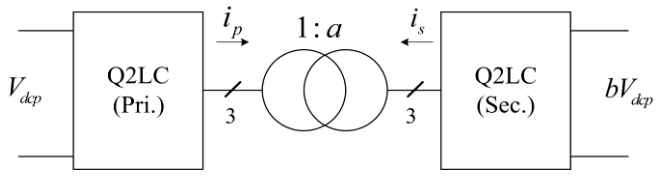
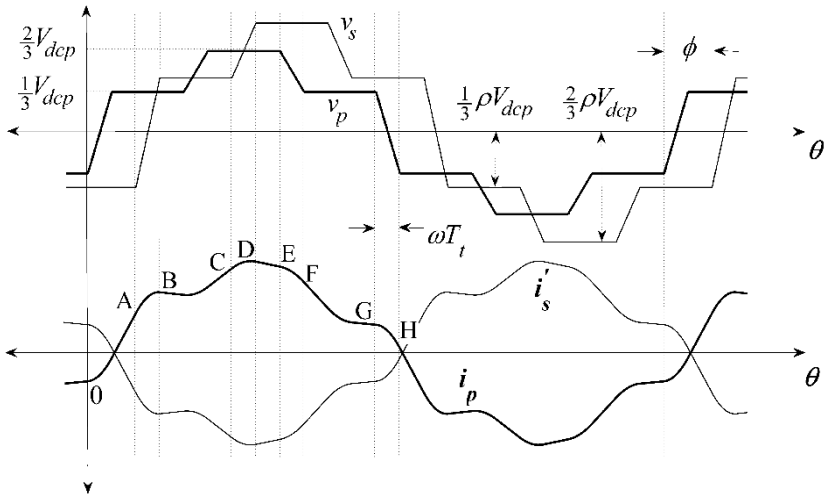



Figure 3-15 Simulation results for the Q2LC of Figure 3-14 and Table 3-1: (a) arm currents, (b) arm 3 cell voltages (6 cells), (c) power path IGBT/diode current, (d) auxiliary IGBT/diode current, (e) arm 4 cell voltages (6 cells), (f) time window of balanced arm 4 cell voltages, and (g) phase B output voltage and current.




(a)




(b)

Figure 3-16 (a) block diagram of a generic three phase Q2LC based DAB converter, and (b) ac voltages and currents of one transformer phase referred to the primary side [$i_s$' is the secondary side phase current referred to primary].

$$i_p(\theta) = i_p(\theta_o) + \frac{1}{\omega_s L_s}\int_{\theta_o}^{\theta} v_{L_s}(\theta)d\theta \tag{3-20}$$

The ac link currents have no dc offset and, thus, the ac current is symmetric around zero and the property in (3-21) holds. Using said property, $i_p$ ($\theta_o$) can be calculated as in (3-22), and the current profile sections in a half fundamental cycle can be calculated as given in Table 3-2.

TABLE 3-2

$i_p(\theta)$ PROFILE SECTIONS IN A HALF FUNDAMENTAL CYCLE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| For $0 \le \theta \le \omega_s T_t$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\frac{1}{\omega_s T_t}\theta^2 + (\rho-1)(\theta + \frac{2}{3}\pi - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t) - \rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-23) |
| For $\omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \varphi$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((\rho+1)\left(\theta - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t\right) + 2(\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3} - \rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-24) |
| For $\varphi \le \theta \le \varphi + \omega_s T_t$ | $i_p(\omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \varphi) - \frac{\rho V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s^2 L_s T_t}(\theta - \varphi)^2$ | (3-25) |
| For $\varphi + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{3}$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((1-\rho)\left(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t\right) + \rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-26) |
| For $\frac{\pi}{3} \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{3} + \omega_s T_t$ | $i_p(\varphi + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{3}) + \frac{V_{dcp}}{6\omega_s^2 L_s T_t}(\theta - \frac{\pi}{3})^2$ | (3-27) |
| For $\frac{\pi}{3} + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{3} + \varphi$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((2-\rho)\theta + (2\rho-3)\frac{\pi}{3} + (\frac{1}{2}\rho - 1)\omega_s T_t + \rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-28) |
| For $\frac{\pi}{3} + \varphi \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{3} + \varphi + \omega_s T_t$ | $i_p(\frac{\pi}{3} + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{\pi}{3} + \varphi) - \frac{\rho V_{dcp}}{6\omega_s^2 L_s T_t}\left(\theta - \varphi - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)^2$ | (3-29) |
| For $\frac{\pi}{3} + \varphi + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{2}{3}\pi$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((1-\rho)\left(2\theta - \pi - \omega_s T_t\right) + 2\rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-30) |
| For $\frac{2}{3}\pi \le \theta \le \frac{2}{3}\pi + \omega_s T_t$ <br> $i_p(\frac{\pi}{3} + \varphi + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{2}{3}\pi) - \frac{V_{dcp}}{6\omega_s^2 L_s T_t}\left(\theta - \frac{2}{3}\pi\right)^2$ | | (3-31) |
| For $\frac{2\pi}{3} + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{2\pi}{3} + \varphi$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((1-2\rho)\theta + (3\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3} + \left(\rho - \frac{1}{2}\right)\omega_s T_t + 2\rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-32) |
| For $\frac{2\pi}{3} + \varphi \le \theta \le \frac{2\pi}{3} + \varphi + \omega_s T_t$ | $i_p(\frac{2\pi}{3} + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \frac{2\pi}{3} + \varphi) + \frac{\rho V_{dcp}}{6\omega_s^2 L_s T_t}\left(\theta - \varphi - \frac{2}{3}\pi\right)^2$ | (3-33) |
| For $\frac{2}{3}\pi + \varphi + \omega_s T_t \le \theta \le \pi$ | $\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((1-\rho)\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t\right) + \rho\varphi\right)$ | (3-34) |

$$i_p(0) = -i_p(\pi) \tag{3-21}$$

$$i_p(\theta_o) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(2(\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{1}{2}(1-\rho)\omega_s T_t - \rho\varphi\right) \tag{3-22}$$

From Table 3-2, all three phase currents can be constructed. It can be noticed from Table 3-2 that during voltage transition period $T_t$ of each phase leg in either bridge, the respective ac pole current is parabolic. The calculations carried out in Table 3-2 are valid for the range of load angles $\omega T_t \le \varphi \le \frac{1}{3}\pi - \omega T_t$. Similar calculations can be repeated for higher load angle ranges, if the application requires so. However, in such high power and high voltage dc grid applications, high load angles are not typical.

The current profiles of segments CD (Figure 3-16) where $\frac{1}{3}\pi + \varphi < \theta \le \frac{1}{3}\pi + \varphi + \omega_s T_t$ and EF where $\frac{2}{3}\pi < \theta \le \frac{2}{3}\pi + \omega_s T_t$ are important for IGBT rating selection. The current flow during $\varphi \le \theta \le \varphi + \omega_s T_t$ (segment AB) and $\pi \le \theta \le \pi + \omega_s T_t$ (segment GH) are of particular importance for cell capacitor sizing. These two segments correspond to a voltage transit interval in either the primary or the secondary Q2LC.

### 3.3.2 Semiconductor devices current rating

Switching devices are to be rated at the peak arm current which is the peak phase current at rated power conditions. The phase current peak at rated power flow ($i.e.\ \varphi = \varphi_{\max}$) is subject to the dc ratio. As mentioned earlier, the dc ratio $\rho$ varies within a limited range around unity. Observe that the phase current waveform depends on the operating value of $\rho$. At $\varphi = \varphi_{\max}$ the local peak value of phase current within segment CD is the maximum phase current magnitude when $\rho = \rho_{\max}$, $\rho_{\max} > 1$ and occurs at $v_{L_s}(\theta_{CD}) = 0$. When $\rho = \rho_{\min}$, $\rho_{\min} < 1$, the phase current maximum magnitude (at $\varphi = \varphi_{\max}$) shifts to segment EF occurring at $v_{L_s}(\theta_{EF}) = 0$. Using Table 3-2, the maximum current values $i_p^{pk}(\theta_{CD}^{pk})$, $i_p^{pk}(\theta_{EF}^{pk})$, and the corresponding angles $\theta_{CD}^{pk}$ and $\theta_{EF}^{pk}$ are obtained as in (3-35) for $\rho_{\max} \ge 1$ and as in (3-35) for $\rho_{\min} \le 1$.

$$\theta_{CD}^{pk} = \frac{1}{\rho}\omega_s T_t(2-\rho_{\max}) + \varphi_{\max} + \tfrac{1}{3}\pi$$

$$i_p^{pk}(\theta_{CD}^{pk}) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\begin{array}{l}(\rho_{\max} - 3 + \dfrac{2}{\rho_{\max}})\omega_s T_t + 2\varphi_{\max} + \\ (\rho_{\max} - 1)\dfrac{\pi}{3}\end{array}\right) \tag{3-35}$$

$$\theta_{EF}^{pk} = 2(1-\rho_{\min})\omega_s T_t + \tfrac{2}{3}\pi$$

$$i_p^{pk}(\theta_{EF}^{pk}) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\begin{array}{l}(2\rho_{\min}^2 - 3\rho_{\min} + 1)\omega_s T_t + 2\rho_{\min}\varphi_{\max} \\ +(1-\rho_{\min})\dfrac{\pi}{3}\end{array}\right) \tag{3-36}$$

In case a DAB design requires $\rho_{\min} > 1$, then (3-35) defines the phase current maximum value. Similarly, if $\rho_{\max} < 1$, then (3-36) defines the phase current maximum magnitude. Equation (3-35) is also valid for partial loading for any $\rho > 1$ and $\omega T_t \le \varphi \le \frac{1}{3}\pi - \omega T_t$ whereas (3-36) is valid for partial loading as long as $\rho < 1$ and $\varphi > \omega T_t$ . At $\rho_{\min} = \rho_{\max} = 1$, the peak currents in (3-35) and (3-36) will reduce to (3-37).

$$i_p^{pk}(\theta) = \gamma_r \frac{2V_{dcp}\varphi_{\max}}{3\omega_s L_s} \tag{3-37a}$$

When rating power path switching devices current capacity, the higher of the current values produced by (3-35) and (3-36) is to be considered. Alternatively, (3-37) can be used where a suitable factor of safety is introduced to account for sufficient redundancy. Equations (3-35) – (3-37) represent currents of the primary side. The maximum current of the secondary side $i_s^{pk}(\theta)$ can be described by (3-35) – (3-37a) divided by the factor $\rho a$ .

Rating auxiliary circuit switching devices can be similarly carried out by calculation of ac pole current during voltage transition intervals. From (3-23) at $\theta = 0°$ the peak auxiliary circuit current in a primary side HB cell is given by (3-37b).

$$i_{px}^{pk} = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left((\rho-1)\left(\frac{2}{3}\pi - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t\right) - \rho\varphi\right) \tag{3-37b}$$

At $\rho = 1$, ignoring current polarity, design values for primary and secondary side auxiliary circuits $i_{px}^{pk}$ and $i_{sx}^{pk}$ are given by (3-37c).

$$i_{px}^{pk} = \gamma_r \frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s L_s} \quad , \quad i_{sx}^{pk} = \gamma_r \frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{3\rho a\omega_s L_s} \tag{3-37c}$$

It is observed that the current in (3-37c) is half the current of (3-37a) when $\gamma_r = 1$, which is predictable. As noticed from Figure 3-15, the auxiliary circuit currents are not continuous, rather of pulsating nature. Therefore, it will be considered of sufficient redundancy to rate auxiliary switching devices to the peak pulse current of (3-37c) for $\varphi = \varphi_{max}$. Comparing (3-37a) and (3-37c) when $\gamma_r \approx 1.5$ for redundancy, one concludes that the current rating of auxiliary circuit switching devices is around one-third that of power path HB cells.

### 3.3.3 Cell capacitance sizing

Auxiliary capacitance size in a Q2LC cell is subject to the ac pole current profile during the switching period $T_t$. The subgroup capacitance of the primary and secondary sides ($C_{gp}$ and $C_{gs}$, respectively) can be expressed as in (3-38);

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{N_s}{\omega_s \ell V_{dcp}} \int_{\theta_o}^{\omega_s T_t + \theta_o} \left( i_p(\theta_o) + \frac{1}{\omega_s L_s} \int_{\theta_o}^{\theta} v_{L_s}(\theta - \theta_o) d\theta \right) d\theta$$
$$C_{gp} = \rho^2 a^2 C_{gs} \tag{3-38}$$

where $\gamma$ is a factor of saf ety to account for the impact of Q2LC common-mode arm currents and the neglected series resistance ($\gamma \geq 1$) as well as a margin of redundancy in energy capacity. $\ell$ is the capacitor voltage ripple in per unit (*e.g.* $\ell = 0.2$ for 20% peak-to-peak capacitor voltage ripple).

As mentioned earlier, current profiles of segments AB and GH are important for capacitance sizing. The formulae of $v_{L_s}(\theta)$ and $i_p(\theta)$ in said segments are given in (3-39) – (3-42).

For $\varphi \leq \theta \leq \varphi + \omega_s T_t$,

$$v_{L_s}(\theta_{AB}) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3}\left((\rho+1) - \frac{2\rho}{\omega_s T_t}(\theta-\varphi)\right) \tag{3-39}$$

$$i_p(\theta_{AB}) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\begin{array}{l} -\frac{\rho}{\omega_s T_t}(\theta-\varphi)^2 + (\rho+1)(\theta - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t) + \\ 2(\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3} - \rho\varphi \end{array}\right) \tag{3-40}$$

For $\pi \le \theta \le \pi + \omega_s T_t$,

$$v_{L_s}(\theta_{GH}) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3}\left((1-\rho) - \frac{2}{\omega_s T_t}(\theta-\pi)\right) \tag{3-41}$$

$$i_p(\theta_{GH}) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\begin{array}{l} -\frac{1}{\omega_s T_t}(\theta-\pi)^2 + (1-\rho)(\theta - \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t) \\ +\rho\varphi \end{array}\right) \tag{3-42}$$

The phase current has no dc offset and consequently $i_p(\theta) = -i_p(\theta+\pi)$. Also, current polarity is irrelevant for capacitor sizing. Therefore, the currents of (3-40) and (3-42) at rated conditions are sufficient to quantify the maximum arm current flow during switching periods over the fundamental cycle.

For $\varphi > 0$, $i_p(\theta_{AB})$ is higher than $i_p(\theta_{GH})$ for $\rho > 1$ and is lower than $i_p(\theta_{GH})$ for $\rho < 1$. Equations (3-40) and (3-42) confirm this for $\omega T_t \le \varphi \le \frac{1}{3}\pi - \omega T_t$. Also, they show that $i_p(\theta_A) = i_p(\theta_H)$ and $i_p(\theta_B) = i_p(\theta_G)$ for $\rho = 1$. At rated conditions where $\varphi = \varphi_{\max}$ and for $\rho = \rho_{\max}$, $\rho_{\max} > 1$, (3-38), (3-39) and (3-40) are used to calculate the primary side capacitance requirement $C_{gp}$ at rated power, as given in (3-43).

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{N_s T_t}{3\ell\omega_s L_s}\left(\varphi_{\max} + 2(\rho_{\max}-1)\frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{\rho_{\max}}{3}\omega_s T_t\right) \tag{3-43}$$

For $\rho = \rho_{\min}$; $\rho_{\min} < 1$, (3-38), (3-41) and (3-42) are used to calculate $C_{gp}$ at rated power as in (3-44).

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{N_s T_t}{3\ell \omega_s L_s} \left( \rho_{\min} \varphi_{\max} + 2(1-\rho_{\min}) \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{3} \omega_s T_t \right) \tag{3-44}$$

Equation (3-43) gives the design value of $C_{gp}$ when the dc ratio ultimate values $\rho_{\min}$ and $\rho_{\max}$ are both above unity. Otherwise, if $\rho_{\min}$ and $\rho_{\max}$ are both designed to be less than unity, the required capacitance $C_{gp}$ is given by (3-44). If system is designed such that $\rho_{\min} \leq 1$ and $\rho_{\max} > 1$, the required capacitance size is given by (3-43) when the condition in (3-45) is true, otherwise the capacitance is designed by (3-44).

$$\rho_{\max} \geq \frac{4\pi - 3\varphi_{\max} - \omega_s T_t + \rho_{\min} \left( 3\varphi_{\max} - 2\pi \right)}{2\pi - \omega_s T_t} \tag{3-45}$$

When $\rho_{\max} = \rho_{\min} = 1$, (3-43) and (3-44) reduce to (3-46).

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{N_s T_t}{3\ell \omega_s L_s} \left( \varphi_{\max} - \frac{1}{3} \omega_s T_t \right) \tag{3-46}$$

The capacitance design using (3-43), (3-44) or (3-46) is valid for bidirectional rated power flow. The capacitance design method can be acceptably simplified by using (3-46) with the safety factor $\gamma$ scaled to account for the operating dc ratio range as well as other operation aspects.

A similar derivation of semiconductor switch ratings and capacitance requirement when $\varphi_{\max} < \omega_s T_t$ can be done. Nonetheless, calculations using the given equations at $\varphi_{\max} = \omega_s T_t$ are expected to produce practically insignificant errors.

## 3.4 Q2LC-based DAB arm energy fluctuations

To ensure proper operation of the Q2LC and hence a controlled voltage traverse between the dc rails, cell voltages must not drift away from their set points. An essential requirement is a near-zero net energy exchange (gain) by each phase leg over a fundamental cycle. If this requirement is satisfied, a sorting mechanism (similar to that of section 2.2.3.1) will be sufficient to ensure uniform distribution of

cell voltages within a predefined ripple band around a certain set point in order to produce near equal voltage steps.

Unlike conventional MMC, the Q2LC cell capacitors are inserted in the current path for brief intervals. The load current passage duration in the capacitors of a Q2LC arm in a fundamental cycle depends on the adopted switching sequence. Besides, the net energy exchange of an arm over a fundamental cycle depends inherently on loading conditions (i.e. load current during $T_t$).

At a certain steady-state loading condition (whether inductive or capacitive loading), careful inspection of the cell switching under NCS sequence in a phase leg over a fundamental cycle (Figure 3-10) shows that ac pole current flow through each arm during the transit interval in which its cells switch sequentially to on state leads to equal amounts of energy transfer in both arms. Under steady-state inductive loading, each arm gains the same amount of energy by load current flow over a fundamental cycle. Under steady-state capacitive loading, each arm would lose the same amount of stored energy by load current flow over a fundamental cycle. It can, therefore, be seen that load current flow results in energy drifts that need to be counteracted to bring the net-energy exchange in each arm to near zero. This is achieved by a common mode current flow which is triggered twice per fundamental cycle at the instant when the ac pole gets tied to either the positive or negative dc rail.

The size of arm energy excursion for a Q2LC arm when the Q2LC is used as the kernel of a three-phase DAB converter with a load angle range $\omega_s T_t \geq \varphi \geq \frac{1}{3}\pi$ (representing inductive loading as will be discussed in sections 3.5 and 5.3) assuming a NCS sequence is quantified in the following. The net energy exchange (excursion) $\Delta E_{arm}$ of an arm within one voltage transition interval $T_t$ in a Q2LC can be generically calculated as in (3-47).

$$\Delta E_{arm} = \int_{t_o}^{t_o+T_t} V_{arm}(t) i_{arm}(t) dt \tag{3-47}$$

where $V_{arm}$ and $i_{arm}$ are the voltage difference across the arm and the current through the arm. Equation (3-47) can be represented in terms of $\theta$ as in (3-48).

$$\Delta E_{arm} = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\int_{\theta_o}^{\theta_o+\omega_s T_t} V_{arm}(\theta) i_{arm}(\theta) d\theta \tag{3-48}$$

Assuming arm current is positive when it flows in the cell charging direction, and that $\theta$ = 0° at the instant when ac voltage traverse from the positive dc rail commences, (3-48) evolves to (3-49) and (3-50) for the upper and lower arms of one phase leg. Superscripts *up* and *low* refer to the upper and lower arms, respectively.

$$\Delta E_{arm}^{up} = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\int_{0}^{\omega_s T_t}\left[\frac{1}{2}V_{dcp} - \nu_p(\theta)\right] i_p(\theta) d\theta \tag{3-49}$$

$$\Delta E_{arm}^{low} = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\int_{\pi}^{\pi+\omega_s T_t}\left[\nu_p(\theta-\pi) + \frac{1}{2}V_{dcp}\right] i_p(\theta-\pi) d\theta \tag{3-50}$$

Using the properties of symmetry in (3-51) it can be observed that in steady state (3-49) and (3-50) are equal.

$$i_p(\theta-\pi) = -i_p(\theta) \quad , \quad \nu_p(\theta-\pi) = -\nu_p(\theta) \tag{3-51}$$

Also the ac pole voltage during the interval $0 \le \theta \le \omega_s T_t$ is given in (3-52). Using (3-23), (3-51), and (3-52), equations (3-49) and (3-50) reduce to (3-53).

$$\nu_p(\theta) = V_{dcp}\left(\frac{\theta}{\omega_s T_t} - \frac{1}{2}\right) \tag{3-52}$$

$$\Delta E_{arm} = \frac{V_{dcp}^2 T_t}{36\omega_s L_s}\left[6\rho\varphi - 4\pi(\rho-1) - (\rho+2)\omega_s T_t\right] \tag{3-53}$$

Evidently, (3-53) implies a non-zero energy excursion in a Q2LC arm during ac voltage transit. Nevertheless, the net energy exchange per fundamental cycle in each arm of one phase leg is kept near zero by action of the common mode current triggered when the ac pole gets tied to the opposite dc rail.

The common mode (balancing) current acting to cancel out the voltage mismatch ($V_{mis}$) between each phase leg and the dc link exhibits second order forced response dynamics with step excitation $V_{mis}$. The magnitude and polarity of $V_{mis}$ is subject to the polarity of arm energy swings, which is in turn subject to loading (whether inductive or capacitive). Phase leg passive components need to be tuned to minimize voltage and current overshoots in the phase leg upon balancing with dc link voltage as well as provide sufficient damping. Regardless of the response type, the phase leg voltage balances eventually with the dc side within settling time $\tau_s$. As long as $\tau_s < 1/2f_s$, the net energy exchange by each arm of a Q2LC over a cycle is near zero. When $\tau_s \geq 1/2f_s$, this would imply a continuous common mode current flow between the dc link and phase leg in a Q2LC, which is undesirable.

The conclusion is that Q2LC arms feature near zero net energy exchange per fundamental cycle in steady state under all types of loading (capacitive or inductive). Consequently, cell rotation using conventional sorting algorithms normally used for MMC is enough to retain cell voltages within a desired ripple band in steady state.

## 3.5 Q2LC-based DAB numerical simulation

A simulation case study will be used to assess the proposed design method for device ratings and cell capacitances. The ±30kV three-phase Q2LC described in section 3.2.6 is connected to another ±60kV three-phase Q2LC through an ac transformer to form a DAB converter as schematically presented in Figure 3-16. The ±60kV side is considered the secondary side. Both converters are connected to stiff dc sources through impedance as per Table 3-3. The ac transformation stage is modeled as three single phase linear transformers with 10% leakage inductance, 0.3% series resistance, and 1:2 primary to secondary turns ratio each. The ±60kV Q2LC model employs Infineon's IHV FZ800R33KL2C IGBT module with 3300V and 800A for the cell power path and the IHV FZ400R33KL2C IGBT module with 3300V and 400A for the auxiliary path. The modeled values of IGBT on-state and diode forward voltages are taken from datasheets. A 0.5μH stray inductance is modeled for each half-bridge cell. Sixty cells per arm are connected in series for operation at 2kV per cell for redundancy. This way, the equivalent device on-state resistance modeled per arm is 150mΩ and the arm stray inductance is 30μH (60x0.5 μH). Cells are grouped

in subgroups with $N_s$=10 (i.e. $n$ = 6). Both Q2LCs employ NCS sequence. A phase shift angle of 7.2° is modeled such that 60MW flows from primary to secondary. Both Q2LCs are connected directly to stiff dc sources where the secondary dc voltage is set to ±60.6kV to produce a dc ratio $\rho = 1.01$. Other system parameters are summarized in Table 3-3.

TABLE 3-3

PARAMETERS OF THE SIMULATED THREE-PHASE Q2LC-BASED DAB

| | Primary side | Secondary side |
|---|---|---|
| DC voltage ($V_{dc}$) | ±30kV | ±60kV |
| Arm impedance | 16.5µH/80mΩ | 30µH/150mΩ |
| Cell (subgroup) capacitance ($C_g$) | 20µF | 10µF |
| # of cells/subgroups per arm ($N_s$) | 10 | |
| Dwell time ($T_d$) | 5µs | |
| DC side inductance ($L_{dc}$) | 1mH | |
| DC side resistance ($R_{dc}$) | 0.1Ω | |
| DC link capacitor ($C_{dc}$) | 25µF | |
| Operating frequency ($f_s$) | 250 Hz | |
| Coupling transformer | 55 kV/110 kV - power: 63MVA series inductance: 10% - series resistance: 0.3% - Base impedance: 48.2Ω at the 55kV side | |

Figure 3-17 shows results obtained mainly from the primary side with 2% dc voltage ripple. Figure 3-17f shows that $\varphi > \omega_s T_t$ and $\rho > 1$, hence (3-40) is used to calculate the peak of the primary ac pole current (arm current) yielding 1080A. This is in close

agreement with the simulated value given in Figure 3-17b. Also, at the instant the phase B ac pole becomes tied to the negative dc rail through arm 4, the arm current is found to reach over 800A although (3-25) or (3-26) at $\theta = \varphi + \omega T_t$ in Table 3-2 expect an arm current value of 605A. This mismatch is due to the superimposed common-mode current component seen in Figure 3-17b. Note that the maximum arm currents of the primary and secondary converters are well below the selected device current ratings.

If the said power flow and load angle represent rated conditions ($i.e.\ \varphi_{\max} = 7.2^o, \rho_{\max} = \rho_{\min} = 1.01$), the previously calculated peak phase current can be used to design device ratings to the values detailed above, allowing a factor of safety. At the same rated conditions, the cell subgroup capacitance can be designed using (3-43). With $\gamma = 1$ and for ±10% cell voltage ripple, (3-43) produces $C_{gp}$=19μF. As seen in Figure 3-17a and 3-17d and Table 3-3, cell subgroups feature ±11.3% voltage ripple when $C_{gp}$=20μF. Again, the small mismatch is due to the common-mode currents. The cell voltage ripple is found to drop below ±10% with $C_{gp}$ = 25μF.

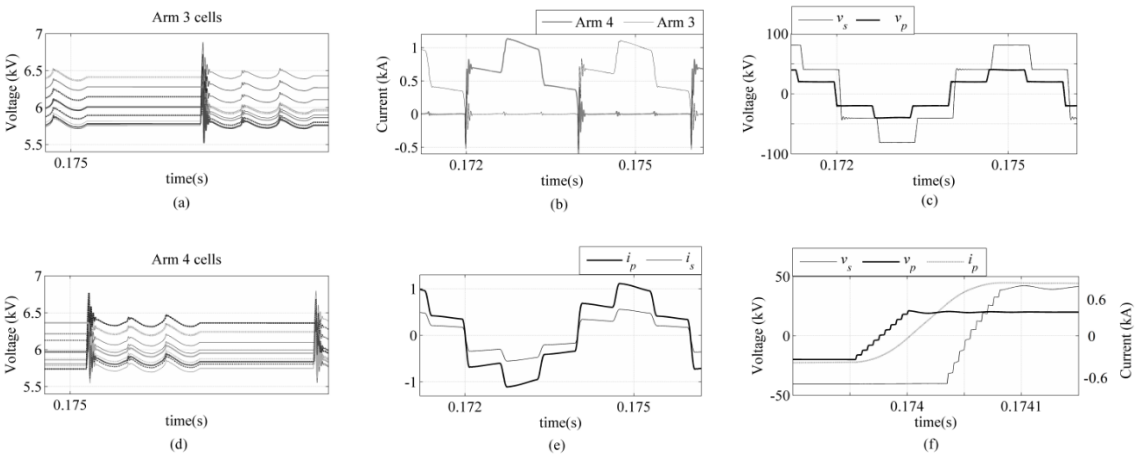



Figure 3-17 Plotted waveforms from the DAB case study; (a) arm 3 Cell subgroup voltages of primary Q2LC, (b) arm 3 and arm 4 of primary Q2LC currents (phase B), (c) the primary and secondary phase B voltages, (d) arm 4 Cell subgroup voltages of primary Q2LC (phase B), (e) the primary and secondary phase B currents, and (f) a zoomed section of subplot (c) with primary current of phase B included.

When medium voltage half-bridge cells are employed like in a cascaded two-level converter (refer to section 3.2.2), the capacitance $C_{gp}$ represents cell capacitance. Alternatively, when $C_{gp}$ is the aggregate capacitance of a subgroup of cells, the cell capacitance is $C_{cell} = nC_{gp}$. For the current example, where $n = 3$, $C_{cell} = 75\mu F$ is needed. In the secondary side, where $C_{gs}$=12µF for ±10% voltage ripple and $n$=6, $C_{cell}$ is nearly 75µF as well. For comparison, a regular MMC in 50 Hz sinusoidal mode with the same number of cells per arm will need a 7.3mF cell capacitance at the same dc voltage level assuming 80MVA apparent power capability. This estimation is based on 30 kJ/MVA cell specific energy [42]. Therefore a significant reduction of cell volume is expected.

## 3.6 Experimental validation of the Q2LC concept

Experimental validation of DAB principle has been carried out repeatedly for different applications, control algorithms, and operating modes (e.g., in [68], [67], [92], [93], [94], [95], [96], and [64]). As the considered F2F dc-dc converter with trapezoidal ac waveforms is effectively a two-level DAB when at short transition times (i.e., $T_t \rightarrow 0$), the harmonic content seen by the ac transformer is insignificantly different from the two-level DAB case. It is therefore not intended in this thesis to re-validate the operation of the DAB principle with phase shifted bridge voltages which has been undertaken in the mentioned references. Therefore, it is considered sufficient to validate the proposed operation aspects of the Q2LC, particularly:

- To confirm that proper Q2LC operation with high-slope trapezoidal ac waveforms is possible with low energy storage in the arms.
- To validate the sufficiency of the conventional sorting algorithm for cell voltage balancing without further control action.
- To validate that common-mode balancing currents are low and require no/minimal dedicated arm inductances.
- To confirm that only pulsed current flows in HB cells auxiliary IGBTs under trapezoidal operation of Q2LC.
- To reconfirm the insignificant current flow (hence low on-state loss) in antiparallel diodes of power IGBTs.

For that the single phase 1kW test rig shown in Figure 3.18 and depicted schematically in Figure 3.19 is utilized. The Q2LC operation herein with a lightly inductive load resembles the operation of Q2LC in F2F dc-dc converters for dc grid applications where low-load-angle operation is typical (i.e. utilized converters therein operate for a reasonable range of operating points at light inductive loading (refer to Chapter 5). More details on the experimental rig are presented in the Appendix. Figure 3-19 and Table 3-4 summarize the layout and parameters of the utilized test-rig. With a 300V dc source, a stepped output voltage of

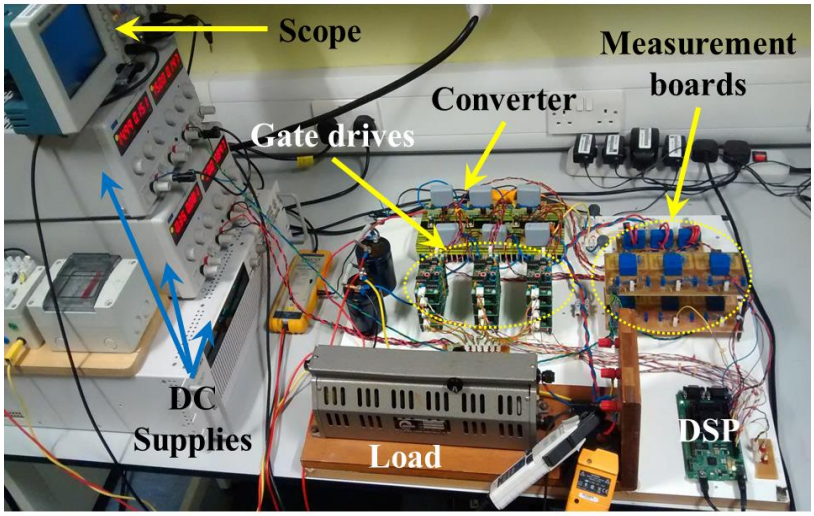



Figure 3.18 The scaled 1kW Q2LC test rig.

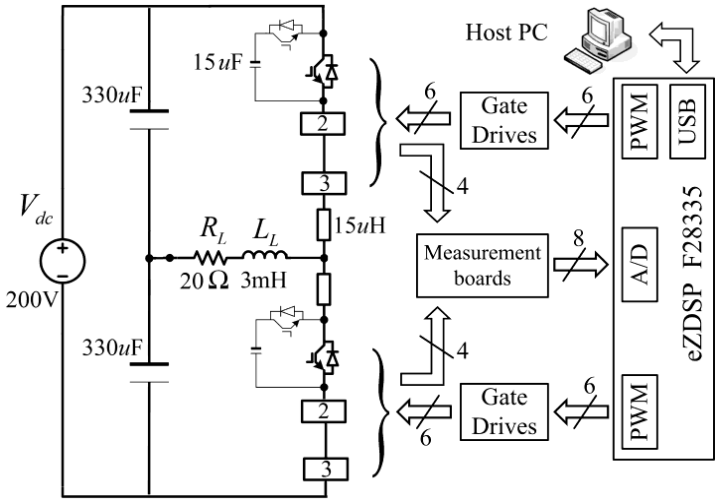



Figure 3.19 A schematic of the scaled Q2LC test rig of Figure 3.18.

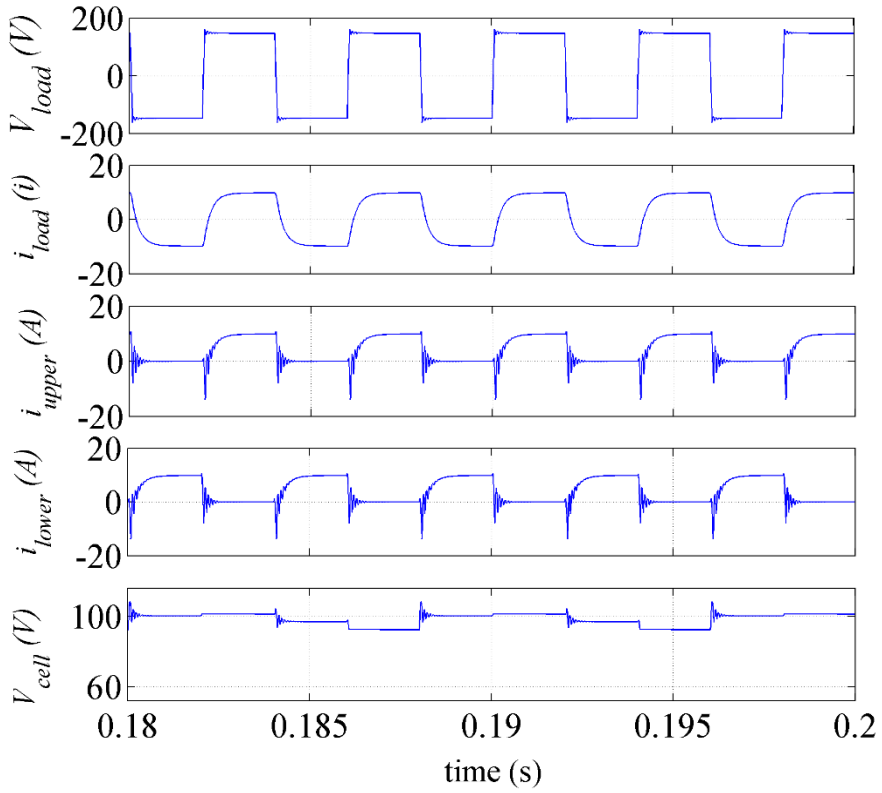



Figure 3.20 Simulation results for the test rig of Figure 3.19.

about ±150V peak drives a 20A peak-to-peak load current as shown in Figure 3.21. In Figure 3.22, the cell voltages are maintained within a 25% peak-to-peak ripple band for a 10A peak load current, with 15 µF cell capacitance, as expected by the simulated value of Figure 3.20 (bottom plot). As evident from (3-38), this ripple band can be reduced with higher capacitance for the same loading.

The load voltage transits in three uniform steps (a 4-level waveform). Common-mode inrush current peaks at around 1.4 pu of the load current and can be reduced by a suitable value of arm inductance. Circuit parasitic resistance rapidly damps common-mode oscillations which quickly disappear after the voltage transition period. As predicted in section3.2.6, the load current is decoupled from arm current oscillations. The results confirm that small cell capacitance and arm inductance is needed compared to conventional MMCs of similar power.

A power analyser connected across the load and the dc supply showed 95% efficiency. The primary source of the incurred sizable losses is the on-state voltage of low voltage IGBTs. For the employed IRG4IBC30UDPBF 17A 600V devices, this voltage constitutes a significant percentage of the device voltage rating, particularly since the IGBTs are operated at a fraction of their rated voltage and well below their current rating. In a practical MV or HVDC application, the on-state voltage/resistance of high power high voltage IGBT modules are insignificant against their rating; reducing the percentage contribution in conduction losses despite the higher number of IGBTs employed. Also, optimal conductor

TABLE 3-4

OTHER PARAMETERS OF THE SCALED LABORATORY SET-UP

| | |
|---|---|
| Dwell time ($T_d$) | 25µs |
| Operating frequency | 250 Hz |
| Switching sequence | CS |

## 3.7 Summary

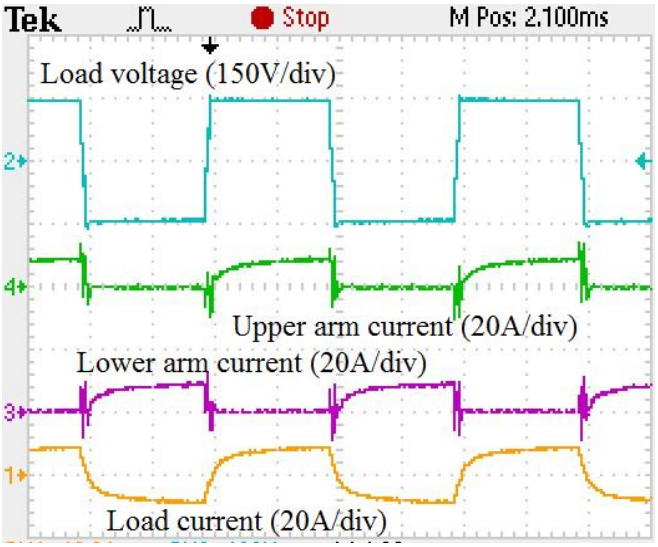
In this chapter an operation mode with trapezoidal ac waveforms for the MMC has been proposed and analyzed. Said operating mode impact on MMC cell capacitance size and arm inductance has been highlighted and validated by simulations.

A study of various tradeoffs for the choice of the trapezoidal slopes, number of levels, and the switching frequency have been studied along with the fundamental modulation index. Overall, it has been shown that trapezoidal operation results in a higher fundamental voltage relative to sinusoidal operation of the MMC. The MMC with the considered operating mode has been shown to differ from a conventional MMC in terms of switching sequences and current flows. It was therefore denoted the quasi two level converter.

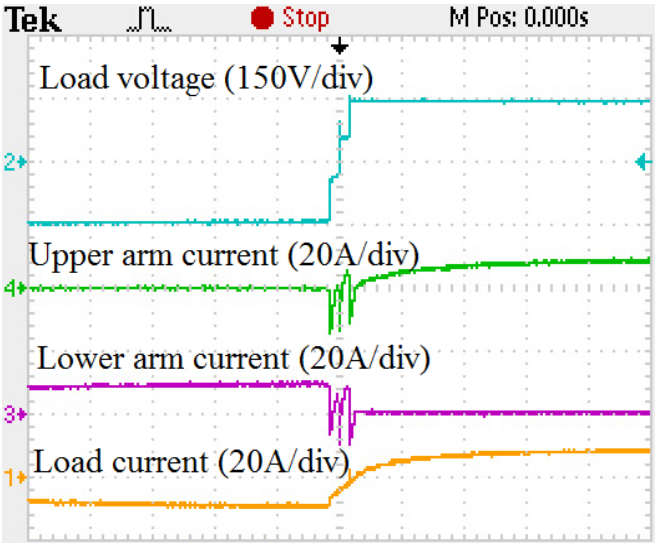
The ac waveforms with and without a dc-link midpoint ground at each Q2LC show that so-called six-step trapezoidal waveforms produced when dc-link midpoint is

floating simplify ac transformer design in a front-to-front dc-dc converter. The underlying reason is the core flux waveform which has been shown to be closer to conventional sinusoidal excitation when compared to the case with grounded dc-link midpoint. Medium frequency operation of the ac transformer at less than ten-fold the ac power frequency is proposed to increase power density without compromise of the mechanical structure ruggedness required to mount large bushings at high voltage.

Detailed design of cell capacitance and semiconductors ratings at the primary and secondary sides of a Q2LC-based front-to-front dc-dc converter has been carried out and the low energy storage and arm inductance requirements confirmed. Proof of concept experimental results were provided.

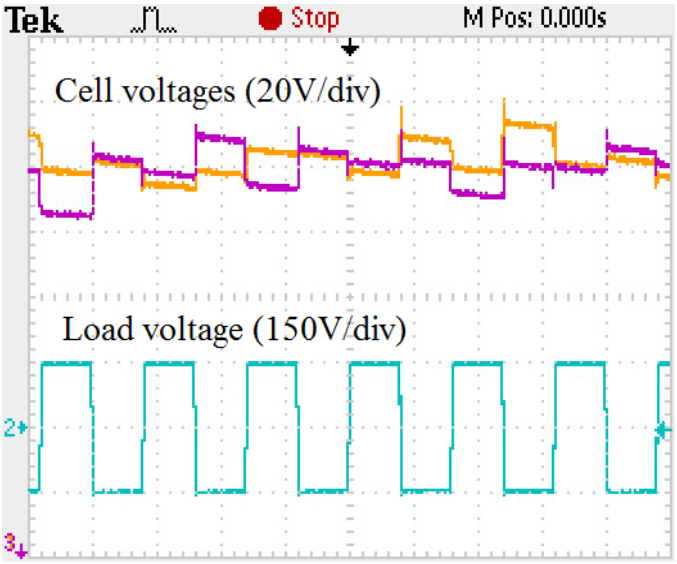



(a) Time scale 100 ms/div

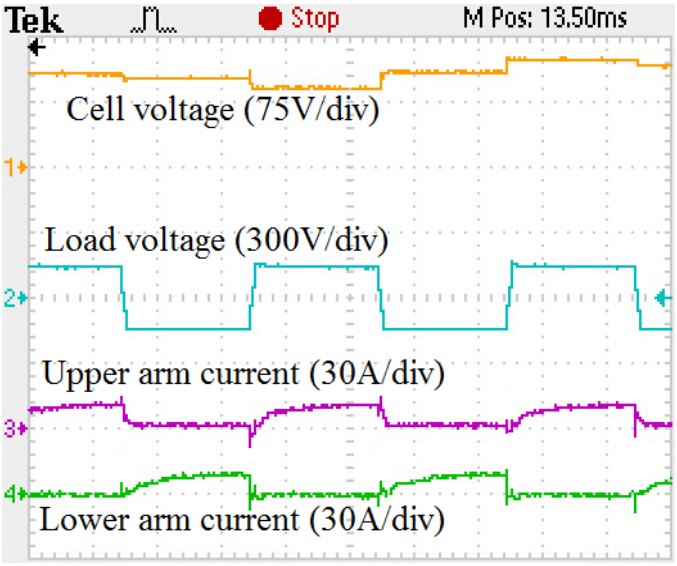



(b) Time scale 250 μs/div

Figure 3.21 Proof of concept experimental validation of the Q2LC; (a) The load voltage, load current, and upper and lower arm currents, and (b) a zoomed section of (a).




(a) Tiime scale 2.5ms/div




(b) Time scale 1ms/div

Figure 3.22 Proof of concept experimental validation of the Q2LC; (a) The load voltage and capacitor voltages in two upper arm cells, and (b) Load voltage, upper and lower arm currents, and a capacitor voltage for one upper arm cell.

# Chapter 4

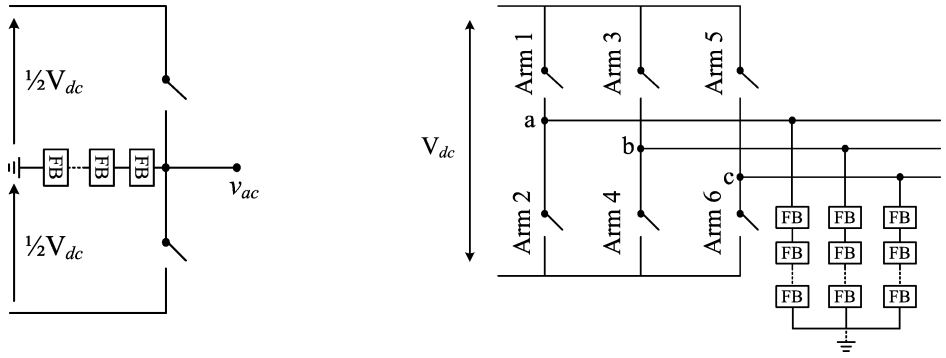
# Dual Active Bridge Structure Based on Transition Arm Converter Designs

This chapter discusses the operation of DAB dc-dc converters under the introduced trapezoidal ac voltage mode when alternative bridge designs are utilized. First, utilization of the so-called controlled transition bridge (CTB) for DAB dc-dc conversion is investigated. A new converter bridge design denoted the transition arm converter (TAC) is introduced for F2F dc-dc conversion with trapezoidal ac waveforms. Possible designs of the TAC structure will be discussed in relation to the Q2LC and CTB for F2F dc-dc converter topologies.

## 4.1 CTB-based F2F dc-dc converter

Akin to a resonant pole converter [97], the basic structure of a CTB phase leg achieves zero-voltage switching of each arm switch valve. Nevertheless, by incorporating some energy storage in the additional bipolar branch, energy could still be transferred to the load while main switch valves are off and the ac pole voltage traverse gradually between the two dominant voltage levels in a trapezoidal waveform. Figure 4-1 depicts said CTB structure [98]. It comprises bi-state switches (director switches) in the main power stage, forming a six pulse bridge, as well as three limbs of cascaded full-bridge (FB) cells (chainlinks) connected between dc ground and ac poles ‘a’, ‘b’ and ‘c’. The FB cells of each limb are used to facilitate discrete stepped transition between positive and negative dc rails and this is realized by sequential insertion of the FB cell capacitors to synthesize a trapezoidal ac waveforms at ac poles ‘a’, ‘b’ and ‘c’.

The CTB was utilized in [9] for dc/ac HVDC grid-side terminal converter stations with relatively low gradient trapezoidal waveforms. The trapezoidal modulating waveform was manipulated to generate a relatively higher quality output ac voltage in an attempt to meet grid code requirements with minimal ac filtering.




(a) (b)

Figure 4-1 Basic schematic structure of the controlled transition bridge (a) single phase leg, (b) three phase.

For dc-dc converter applications, high gradient trapezoidal operation of the CTB is advisable in order to control *dv/dt* at the ac poles with reduced energy storage requirement of FB cell capacitors, in a similar manner to the Q2LC case.

To investigate the switching sequence of a CTB, it is assumed that '+1' and '–1' designate the states in which the aggregate voltage of a CTB chainlink connected to a given ac pole equals $+½V_{dc}$ or $–½V_{dc}$, respectively, which takes place when all FB cell capacitors in said chainlink are in conduction path. The upper or lower director switch of each phase leg is turned on only when the corresponding chainlink is in state '+1' or '–1', respectively. As mentioned earlier, this ensures near zero-voltage switching of director switches and, thus, low switching losses are achieved in the six pulse bridge of a CTB. During ac pole voltage transition between $+½V_{dc}$ and $–½V_{dc}$, both director switches are off and FB cells of the respective chainlink reverse their voltage polarity sequentially to achieve a stepped ac pole voltage traverse.

Turning on upper or lower director switches (valves) of a given phase leg triggers a balancing current in the corresponding chainlink to balance its aggregate voltage with the dc voltage level of the positive or negative dc rail, respectively. Once balanced, the chainlink current drops to zero.

It may be clear from the above description of CTB operation that cascaded FB cells in each chainlink of the CTB converter need to be able to block only half the dc link voltage (½$V_{dc}$). When the number of FB cells per chainlink is $N$, the nominal voltage per FB cell is $V_{dc}/2N$. It follows that each FB cell is capable of injecting $+V_{dc}/2N$, 0V, or $-V_{dc}/2N$ in the circuit depending on its switching state. FB cells of A CTB can be grouped as described for the Q2LC case in section 3.2.2 to minimize computational effort. When only the two switching states corresponding to $+V_{dc}/2N$ and $-V_{dc}/2N$ are exploited in each FB cell, the number of levels in the ac pole voltage are $N_s+1$. The number of levels in the output voltage can be made $2N_s+1$ where each intermediary voltage step amounts to $V_{dc}/4N_s$ when each FB cell is switched in the sequence ($+V_{dc}/2N \leftrightarrow 0V \leftrightarrow -V_{dc}/2N$) during the ac pole voltage transit interval $T_t$.

### 4.1.1 Switching devices ratings

The six pulse bridge is the power path of a CTB in which load current flows for most of the fundamental cycle as long as the ac pole is tied to one of the dc rails. Thus, under same operating conditions, the current rating of director valves of a CTB is the same as in the power path devices of a Q2LC as described in (3-37a).

Likewise, as the current flow in FB chainlinks is limited to voltage transit intervals, the current rating of FB cells devices is similar to that of the auxiliary circuit devices of a Q2LC under the same operating conditions, which is given by (3-37c). Given the short span of voltage transit intervals $T_t$ for dc grid dc-dc conversion applications as discussed in section 3.2.3, chainlink current will be of pulsed nature. With reference to (3-37) at $\gamma_r = 1$, it can be noticed that the peak chainlink pulse current is about half the peak ac pole (director valve) current. Consequently, sufficient redundancy may be achieved by rating chainlink switching devices to the peak pulse current at $\varphi = \varphi_{max}$. In analogy to the case of a Q2LC (refer to section 3.3.2), the chainlink switching device current rating will be around one-third that of director valve switching devices assuming $\gamma_r \approx 1.5$.

### 4.1.2 Chainlink cells capacitance design

The same design procedure for Q2LC capacitance design can be followed in the CTB case given the similarity of current flow in CTB chainlinks and Q2LC auxiliary

circuits in steady state. The difference here is that the voltage rating of each CTB chainlink is half the voltage rating of each Q2LC arm. When the number of FB cells in a chainlink is assumed *N*, each FB cell will be of half the voltage rating of an equivalent Q2LC HB cell. The design procedure described in section 3.3.3 can be repeated to derive the sufficient FB cell capacitance. It has been shown in section 3.3.3 that design of the cell capacitance at a dc ratio $\rho = 1$ with a factor of safety $\gamma > 1$ may be sufficient for capacitance design in the considered dc grid application (where $\rho$ varies in a limited range in steady state) as described by (3-46).

Using (3-38) at $\rho = 1$, the FB cell subgroup capacitance of the primary and secondary side CTBs of a F2F dc-dc converter can be designed as in (4-1) and (5-37).

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{2N_s T_t}{3\ell \omega_s L_s}\left(\varphi_{\max} - \frac{1}{3}\omega_s T_t\right) \tag{4-1}$$

$$C_{gs} = \gamma \frac{2N_s T_t}{3\ell a^2 \omega_s L_s}\left(\varphi_{\max} - \frac{1}{3}\omega_s T_t\right) \tag{4-2}$$

It is thus expected that the CTB FB cell capacitance is double that of an equivalent Q2LC HB cell capacitance for the same ripple $\ell$ assuming the same rated values and that the number of HB cells per Q2LC arm is equal to the number of FB cells per CTB chainlink.

### 4.1.3 Chainlink energy fluctuations

As discussed for a Q2LC in section 0, CTB FB cells voltages must not drift away from their set points to achieve uniform stepped ac pole voltage traverse. A pre-requirement is that chainlink net energy fluctuations over a fundamental cycle be kept near-zero.

The dynamics governing the energy fluctuations of chain-links are different from these of Q2LC arms. Herein, the net energy excursion of each chain-link rounds to zero each half a fundamental cycle. Calculation of the net energy exchange must consider the bipolar voltage output of each chain-link. For that, the chain-link charging direction is always taken the reference current direction. Note the reference

direction reverses with chain-link voltage polarity reversal. Applying (3-48), the chainlink energy excursion by load current flow therethrough during one transition interval $T_t$ is given by (4-3).

$$\Delta E_{ch} = -\frac{1}{\omega_s}\int_0^{\omega_s T_t} v_p(\theta) i_p(\theta) d\theta \tag{4-3}$$

Under inductive loading with $\omega_s T_t \leq \varphi \leq \frac{1}{3}\pi$, and assuming $\theta = 0°$ at the instant ac pole voltage starts transition towards the positive dc rail, chain-link energy excursion during the considered voltage transition interval will be;

$$\Delta E_{ch} = -\frac{V_{dcp}^2 \rho T_t^2}{36 L_s} = -\frac{V_{dcp} V_{dcs} T_t^2}{36 a L_s} \tag{4-4}$$

where $i_p(\theta)$ and $v_p(\theta)$ are given in (3-23) and (3-52), respectively. Equation (4-4) shows that the chain-link energy gain is negative. This implies energy is exported from the chain-link to the load side (ac link transformer in a F2F converter).The exported amount of energy will be instantly recovered back from the dc side when the complementary director switch ties the respective ac pole to the positive dc rail. Likewise, during the second voltage transition interval in the cycle, simple calculations show that the same amount of chain-link energy as in (4-4) is exported to the ac side then instantly imported from the dc side at the turn on of the respective director switch.

The same energy fluctuation dynamics persist under capacitive loading except that the chainlink energy excursion polarity will reverse (i.e. chainlink undergoes stored energy loss by load current flow therethrough). Regardless of loading conditions, (4-4) indicates that chainlinks energy exchange is decoupled from the load angle $\varphi$, which is predictable for the operating conditions of dc-grid F2F converter.

In conclusion, as in a Q2LC, chainlink net energy fluctuations are near-zero and the conventional sorting algorithm of section 2.2.3.1 is sufficient for FB cells voltage balancing.

## 4.2 CTB-based F2F converter numerical simulation

When CTB is used as the kernel of the F2F dc-dc converter in the simulation scenario described in section 3.5 with $N_s = 10$, the same 3.3kV 400A IGBT modeled for auxiliary circuits of the Q2LC HB cells (IHV FZ400R33KL2C IGBT) is employed for the primary side CTB chainlink FB cells. In this case, each chainlink will need to employ 20 FB cells to realize the transit between the two dc rails (±30kV) with 1.5 kV per cell and $n = 2$. Each director switch is modeled as a series connection of the IHV FZ1500R33HL3 3.3kV/1500A IGBT modules. Chainlink FB cells could alternatively be rated at 1.7kV each with 30 cells per chainlink (i.e. $n = 3$) and 1kV per cell in steady state.

As evident in Figure 4-2, the six-pulse bridge supplies full load current, whereas the chainlinks exchange energy with the load only during the brief voltage transitions between positive and negative dc rails, featuring short-duration low current particularly at low load angles. The peak current in each chainlink occurs when its corresponding upper or lower director switch is turned on. The sample plot for chain link current in Figure 4-2 confirms that the FB cells in each chain-link of CTB converters can use switching devices with significantly lower continuous current rating relative to these of director switches.

According to Figure 4-2, the director switch currents in each phase leg are alternate and show good agreement with the primary side peak ac pole current given in (3-35) or (3-37a). Cell voltages in a sample chainlink are depicted where a voltage ripple of about ±13% is achieved with 32μF modeled cell capacitance. The traditional sorting algorithm is employed for voltage balancing. The small FB cell capacitance leads to insignificant oscillations when the chainlink is tied to either of the dc rails on turn on of respective director valves.

Generally, when comparing the CTB to the Q2LC, the loss of modularity in the former is a drawback despite the possibility of employing low-loss switching devices in director valves as claimed in [98]. Regardless of director valve devices type, these are connected in series which may still require snubber circuits despite the zero-volt switching characteristic so as to achieve static voltage sharing in the valve case of,

for instance, a dc voltage transient. Nonetheless, the required snubbers may be simple RCD unlike the case for series-connection of IGBTs where more complex snubbing – as well as gating circuits – are mandatory to achieve dynamic voltage sharing (i.e. primarily during turn on and turn off).

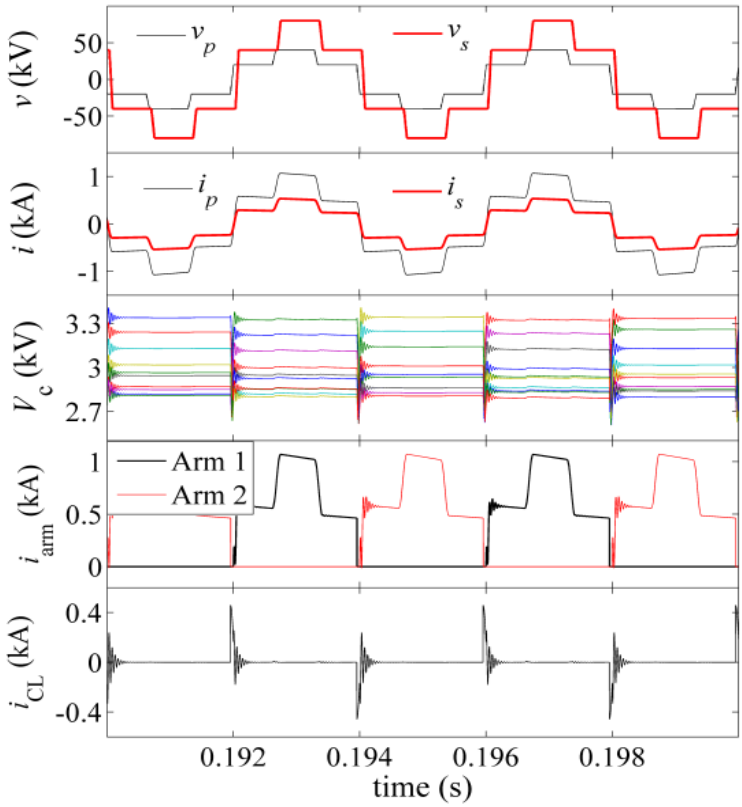



Figure 4-2 Primary side numerical simulation results of the front-to-front converter described in section 3.5.

With respect to utilization of low loss devices in the director valves, the use of force commutated devices such as the insulated gate commutated thyristor (IGCT) is theoretically possible although there is no established practice of series connecting IGCTs for high voltage. Even with zero-voltage switching of director switches, series connection of IGCTs may still be a practical challenge. Nevertheless, the use of IGCTs in CTB director valves might be possible for medium voltage dc-dc converters. This requires further detailed device-level study which is beyond the scope of this chapter albeit being currently under consideration.

Alternatively, using naturally commutated low-loss devices such as thyristors in the director valves may be more practical in terms of the established practice of series connected thyristor valves as normally employed in conventional line commutated HVDC stations. Utilizing thyristors in the director valves as depicted in Figure 4-3 would require the operating voltage rating of FB chainlinks be slightly higher than $½V_{dc}$ in order to force current commutation between director valves. To commutate load current between the director valves of one phase leg, the respective chainlink must inject a voltage $|V_{ch}| > ½V_{dc}$ at an instant $t_r$ which occurs long enough before the following designated ac pole voltage traverse interval. Thus, at $t_r$ the conducting thyristor valve becomes reverse biased. Selection of $V_{ch}$ value and the time span elapsing between $t_r$ and the following ac pole voltage traverse interval $T_t$ is dependent primarily on the commutating inductance and fundamental frequency. The minimum commutating inductance in this case will be that of snubber reactors connected in series with the director valve to limit valve *di/dt* to tolerable values.

Clearly, thyristor director valves can be rated to high voltages but they require special snubber design to limit *dv/dt* under transient conditions. Due to the relatively longer commutation time, the thyristor-based CTB may need to be operated at relatively lower fundamental frequency. Detailed study of operation and design parameters of the thyristor CTB is not within the scope of this chapter.

The rest of this chapter aims at proposing and testing alternative hybrid dc/ac converter topologies – suited for trapezoidal operation as part of F2F dc-dc converter structures – which achieve somewhat better compromises between CTB and Q2LC merits and demerits, in terms of modularity, semiconductor area, losses, etc.

## 4.3 The parallel transition arm converter (P-TAC)

The CTB design can be modified to improve converter modularity and, ultimately, to permit the use of IGCTs in director valves. The modified CTB structure will be denoted the parallel transition arm converter (P-TAC). Three possible P-TAC designs will be discussed, namely, the asymmetric P-TAC (AP-TAC), the symmetric P-TAC (SP-TAC), and the modular P-TAC (MP-TAC).

### 4.3.1 The asymmetric PTAC (AP-TAC)

This design is depicted schematically in Figure 4-4a. Here each phase leg comprises two director valves and an additional arm comprising cascaded HB cells, said arm being connected in parallel to either the upper or the lower director valve (i.e. between one dc rail and the ac pole). Said parallel arm comprising cascaded HB cells is denoted *transition arm* (TA), hence the converter name.

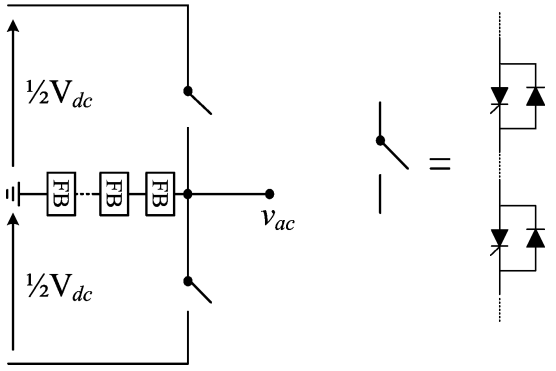
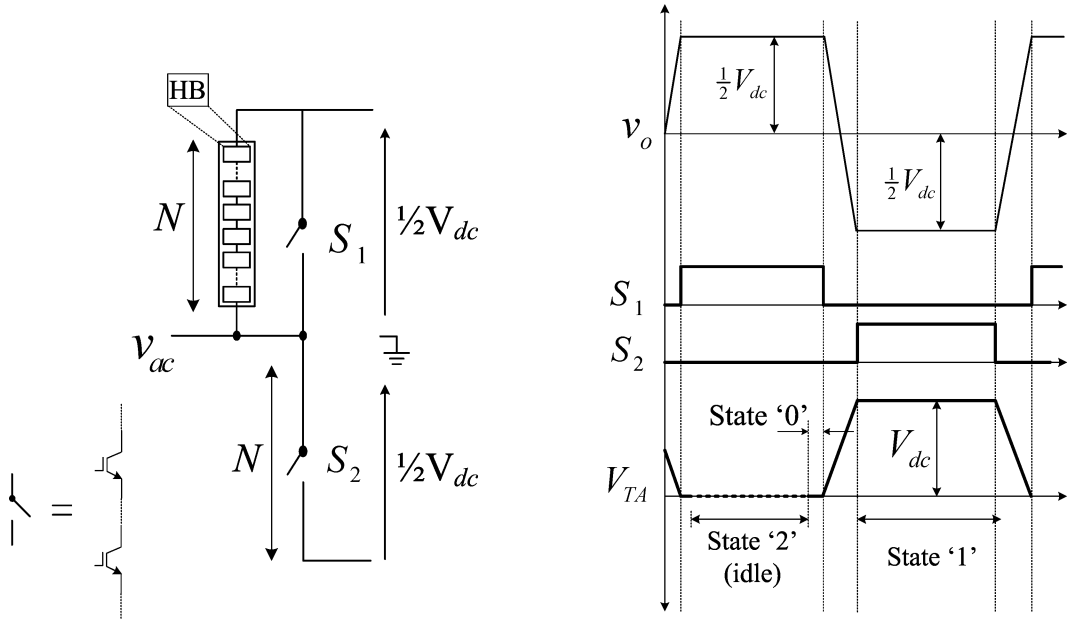



Figure 4-3 Single phase leg of a CTB with thyristor director valves.




(a) (b)

Figure 4-4 (a) One phase leg of the asymmetric parallel transition arm converter (AP-TAC) and (b) a possible switching sequence of the AP-TAC.

To investigate the operation of the AP-TAC, the switching states of a HB cell here can be defined as:

- State '1': the state in which the HB cell capacitor is in conduction path and cell voltage is $V_c$.
- State '0': the state in which the HB cell capacitor is bypassed and cell voltage is 0V.
- State '2': the state where the two power switches are off (idle state).

One suitable switching sequence $a-g$ of the AP-TAC is described below with reference to Figure 4-4b assuming the TA is parallel to the upper director valve and starting with the ac pole being tied to the positive dc rail.

*a*- When the ac pole is at the positive dc rail level, $S_1$ is on, $S_2$ is off, and the TA HB cells are kept in state '2' (idle state).

*b*- Short before the ac voltage traverse from the positive dc rail to the negative dc rail the TA HB cells switch to state '0' such that the TA shares load current with the upper director valve $S_1$.

*c*- The upper director valve $S_1$ turns off and the load current now flows through the TA cells.

*d*- The TA HB cells switch sequentially from state '0' to state '1' with dwell time $T_d$ such that the ac pole voltage matches the negative dc rail voltage.

*e*- $S_2$ is turned on to tie the ac pole to the negative dc rail. TA cells remain in state '1' as long as $S_2$ remains on.

*f*- For ac pole voltage traverse towards the positive dc rail $S_2$ turns off and the TA cells switch sequentially from state '1' to state '0'.

*g*- $S_1$ turns on and shortly afterwards the TA HB cells go idle.

From sequence $a-g$ it is evident that, likewise, director switches turn on and off at near-zero volt, which minimizes switching losses. It can also be noticed that the TA is engaged in power transfer only during the brief ac voltage traverse intervals. Thus, the cell capacitance is small. Furthermore, when $T_t << 1/f_s$ the current flowing through TA HB cells is of pulsating nature and thus, relatively lower current rating devices can be utilized in the TA akin to CTB FB chainlinks or Q2LC auxiliary circuits.

As depicted in Figure 4-4, the HB cell design for the AP-TAC requires that the anti-parallel diodes of the director valves be removed. The underlying reason relates to certain operating conditions. For instance, when capacitive loaded (or inductively loaded at large current-voltage phase shift), load current flows in the anti-parallel diodes conduction direction of director valves for significant sections of the fundamental cycle and the capability of controlled ac voltage traverse will be lost if the director valve diodes share the load current with the HB cells anti-parallel diodes. The removal of director valves diodes leads to the need for anti-parallel diodes of continuous load current rating across HB cell terminals. When director valve diodes are removed, any capacitive load current flows only in the TA HB cells. It is worth noting that the reverse voltage of discrete power switches (IGBTs) in the director valves is limited by said anti-parallel diodes across TA HB cells terminals.

As in the CTB, director switches of the AP-TAC will require simple snubbers for static voltage sharing. Despite asymmetry, the structure of the AP-TAC can be made partially modular by augmenting one director power switch to each HB cell power module. Nevertheless, the utilization of IGCTs in the director valves remains as challenging as for a CTB design as noted in section 4.2.

#### 4.3.1.1 The asymmetric P-TAC cell capacitance design

When the P-TAC is used as the kernel of the F2F dc-dc converter described in section 3.5, the primary side and secondary side subgroup capacitance $C_{gp}$ and $C_{gs}$ can be calculated using (4-5) and (4-6) for $\omega_s T_t \leq \varphi \leq \frac{1}{3}\pi$.

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{\lambda N_s}{\ell \omega_s V_{nom}} \int_{\pi}^{\pi+\omega_s T_t} i_p(\theta - \pi)\, d\theta \tag{4-5}$$

$$C_{gs} = \frac{1}{a^2} C_{gp} \tag{4-6}$$

Using (3-23) and (3-51), equations (4-5) and (4-6) evolve to;

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{\lambda V_{dcp} N_s T_t}{3\ell \omega_s L_s V_{nom}} \left( \varphi - \frac{1}{3} \omega_s T_t \right) \tag{4-7}$$

$$C_{gs} = \gamma \frac{\lambda V_{dcp} N_s T_t}{3\ell a^2 \omega_s L_s V_{nom}} \left( \varphi - \frac{1}{3} \omega_s T_t \right) \tag{4-8}$$

$V_{nom}$ is the nominal arm, transition arm, or chain-link voltage and its value depends on the converter structure. For instance, $V_{nom} = V_{dcp}$ for the AP-TAC and Q2LC cases, and $V_{nom} = ½V_{dcp}$ for the CTB case.

A constant $\lambda$ is introduced in (4-5) – (4-8) to represent the ratio between the required energy storage in each converter structure when operating under same conditions. The constant $\lambda$ equals ½ for the AP-TAC and 1 for the Q2LC and the CTB. The reason for the existence of such a ratio is that, unlike Q2LC and CTB, each AP-TAC transition arm undergoes two energy excursions of opposite polarities per fundamental cycle before its voltage balances back with the dc link (refer to section 4.1.3). Thus, cell capacitance in an AP-TAC is nearly half that of an equivalent Q2LC since each arm of a given phase leg in a Q2LC undergoes a single energy excursion – given by (3-53) – due to load current flow therethrough during only one voltage transition interval per fundamental cycle (under NCS switching sequence).

#### 4.3.1.2 The asymmetric P-TAC energy fluctuations

The net energy exchange of an AP-TAC transition arm due to ac pole current flow in HB cells capacitors over a fundamental cycle is;

$$\Delta E_{TA} = \Delta E_1 + \Delta E_2 \tag{4-9}$$

where subscript *TA* refers to transition arm, $\Delta E_1$ and $\Delta E_2$ are the energy excursions during both voltage transition intervals in a fundamental cycle. Assuming the considered TAC is utilized in the primary side of said F2F dc-dc converter of section 0, and $\theta = 0°$ at the instant the $S_2$ switches off, then;

$$\Delta E_1 = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\int_0^{\omega_s T_t}\left[\frac{1}{2}V_{dcp} - v_p(\theta)\right] i_p(\theta)d\theta \tag{4-10}$$

$$\Delta E_2 = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\int_{\pi}^{\pi+\omega_s T_t}\left[\frac{1}{2}V_{dcp} - v_p(\theta-\pi)\right] i_p(\theta-\pi)d\theta \tag{4-11}$$

where $i_p(\theta)$ and $v_p(\theta)$ are given in (3-23) and (3-52), respectively. Here, the reference current $i_p(\theta)$ direction is out of the primary side ac pole. Using the symmetry properties of (3-51), equations (4-9) – (4-11) can be simplified such that the net transition arm energy exchange $\Delta E_{TA}$ can be quantified as in (4-12).

$$\Delta E_{TA} = -\frac{2}{\omega_s}\int_0^{\omega_s T_t} v_p(\theta) i_p(\theta) d\theta = -\frac{V_{dcp}^2 \rho T_t^2}{18 L_s} \tag{4-12}$$

Equation (4-12) confirms a non-zero transition arm net energy fluctuation by ac pole current flow through HB cell capacitors over a full cycle. Over the indicated load angle ($\varphi$) range (i.e. $\omega_s T_t \geq \varphi \geq \frac{1}{3}\pi$), where the AP-TAC is inductively loaded, (4-12) shows that $\Delta E_{TA}$ is negative, implying that the transition arm energy storage is curtailed each cycle. Equation (4-12) further demonstrates that the amount of energy curtailment is decoupled from the load angle $\varphi$. This can be concluded with a careful inspection of AP-TAC switching sequence $a$ – $g$ and ac pole voltage and current waveforms during ac pole voltage transition. The non-zero value of $\Delta E_{TA}$ means that the aggregate voltage of transition arm cells becomes lower than the dc link voltage at $\theta = \pi + \omega_s T_t$, which is the instant the complementary director valve switches on. The resulting voltage imbalance between the TA and the dc link will trigger common mode current. The latter acts to charge the transition arm to the dc link voltage; thus, bringing the net transition arm energy exchange over the fundamental cycle to zero. As concluded for the Q2LC and the CTB, the near zero energy fluctuation implies that conventional sorting is sufficient for TA HB cell capacitor balancing in the AP-TAC

Simulating the AP-TAC according to the simulation set up of section 3.5, it is observed that the mentioned common mode currents are tolerable and no dedicated arm inductance is necessary.

### 4.3.2 The symmetric PTAC (SP-TAC)

The transition arm in the AP-TAC can be split in two and each half is connected in parallel to a section of each arm in the phase leg. When it is assumed that each director switch is composed of $N$ series power switches, then a transition arm of $½N$ HB cells is connected in parallel across $½N$ power switches of the director switch. In each director valve, one TA can be connected to the ac pole or to the respective dc rail. This structure is shown in Figure 4-5 and will be denoted the symmetric P-TAC (SP-TAC).

One suitable switching sequence $a-d$ of the SP-TAC is described below with reference to Figure 4-5b starting with the ac pole being tied to the positive dc rail. When the ac pole is tied to the positive dc rail, director valves $S_1$' and $S_1$ are in on state, director valves $S_2$ and $S_2$' are in off state, upper arm HB cells are in state '2' (idle state), and lower arm HB cells are in state '1'. These switching states are accordingly reversed when the ac pole is tied to the negative dc rail. During ac voltage transition from positive dominant level to negative dominant level, the following sequence takes place:

*a*- Upper arm HB cells are switched to state '0'. Then, director valve $S_1$' turns off.

*b*- Upper arm HB cells switch sequentially to state '1' with inter time step $T_d$. Then, director valve $S_2$ turns on. At this moment, all HB cells in the phase leg balance their aggregate voltage with the dc link through a common mode current.

*c*- After a brief time interval 'overlap interval', director valve $S_1$ is turned off. Then, lower arm HB cells switch sequentially to state '0' with inter time step $T_d$.

*d*- Shortly, director valve $S_2$' is switched on and lower arm HB cells are switched to state '2' (idle).

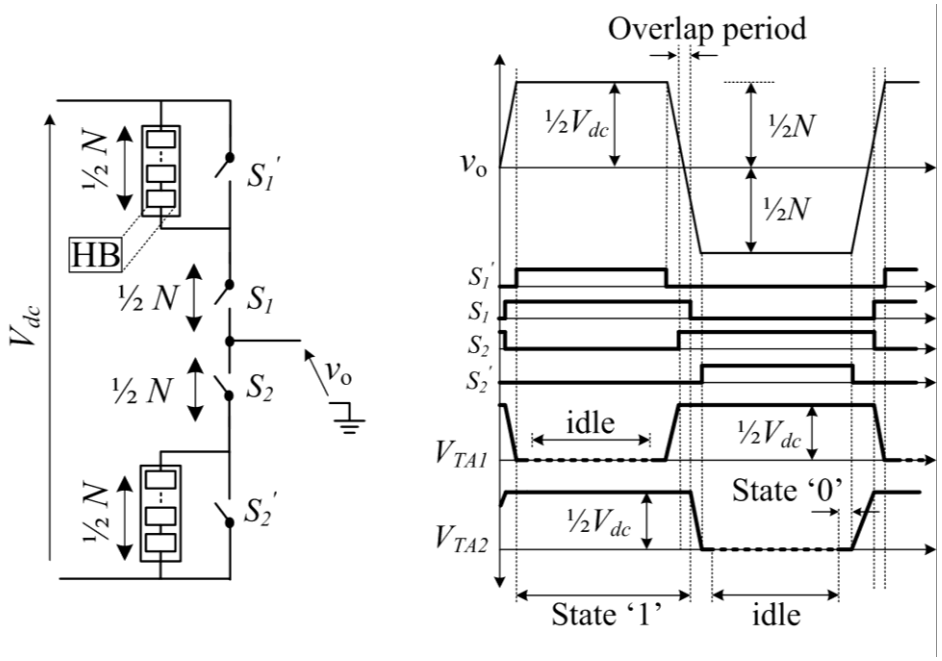



Figure 4-5 (a) One phase leg of the symmetric parallel transition arm converter (SP-TAC) and (b) a possible switching sequence of the SP-TAC.

A similar switching sequence is to be followed for ac pole voltage transition from negative dominant level to positive dominant level.

The director valves $S_1$' and $S_2$' should be formed of a series array of discrete power switches (IGBTs) without anti-parallel diodes. This is to avoid loss of controllability on ac pole voltage traverse under capacitive loading, or large-angle inductive loading conditions. For the same reason, the overlap interval which is mainly introduced to balance phase leg aggregate voltage with the dc link voltage must also extend beyond the zero-crossing instant of capacitive ac pole current. This can be elaborated by considering ac pole voltage transition from the dominant positive dc voltage under capacitive current, where the ac pole current is conducted through the anti-parallel diodes of the $S_1$ and the upper TA. In this case switching off director valve $S_1$ (step *c* of sequence *a* – *d*) does not interrupt current flow through the upper arm. Ac pole

current will fully commutate to the lower arm only at the zero-crossing. Thus, the lower TA HB cells must commence sequential switching to state '0' only after the ac pole current zero crossing to avoid HB cell overvoltage. In the envisaged application in MV and HV F2F dc-dc converters for grid applications, the load angle varies within a narrow range. Thus, if the SP-TAC is the receiving-power bridge in a bidirectional F2F dc-dc converter (i.e. ac pole current lags ac pole voltage by a large phase angle – which is also denoted 'large-angle inductive loading'), cell capacitors may not require significant oversizing to account for the extended overlapped conduction of both TAs in each phase leg. This aspect, however, requires further study and is not addressed in this chapter.

It is evident from the switching sequence $a - d$ that all director valves turn on and off at near-zero voltage, implying soft switching. Soft switching characteristics of the transition arms will be discussed in section 5.3. It can also be noticed that each TA energy storage is engaged in power transfer only during the brief ac voltage traverse intervals. Consequently, HB cell energy capacity (capacitance) is small. Furthermore, when $T_t << 1/f_s$ the current flow in each TA HB cells is of pulsating nature and thus, relatively lower current rating devices can be utilized in the HB cells except for the anti-parallel diodes conducting load current under capacitive or large-angle inductive loading. Observe that, akin to the AP-TAC, the use of IGCTs in director valves for higher efficiency is challenging.

#### 4.3.2.1 The symmetric P-TAC energy fluctuations

Based on the sequence $a - d$, each transition arm engages in load energy transfer for half the voltage transition interval $T_t$. Taking sequence $a - d$ into account, the net energy exchange of a SP-TAC transition arm (upper or lower) due to ac pole current flow in its cells over a fundamental cycle is calculated by (4-13). Observe that (4-13) applies to SP-TAC as the kernel of a F2F dc-dc converter at $\omega_s T_t \geq \varphi \geq \frac{1}{3}\pi$ and assuming $\theta = 0°$ at the instant $S_1'$ switches off. With reference to Table 3-1 and (3-51), equation (4-13) can be quantified as in (4-14).

$$\Delta E_{TA} = \frac{1}{\omega_s}\left( \begin{array}{c} \int_0^{\frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t} i_p(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}V_{dcp} - v_p(\theta)\right] d\theta + \\ \int_{\pi+\frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t}^{\pi+\omega_s T_t} \left[\frac{1}{2}V_{dcp} - v_p(\theta-\pi)\right] i_p(\theta-\pi) d\theta \end{array} \right) \tag{4-13}$$

$$C_{gs} = \gamma \frac{2N_s T_t}{3\ell a^2 \omega_s L_s}\left(\varphi_{\max} - \frac{1}{3}\omega_s T_t\right) \tag{4-14}$$

Despite that the energy fluctuation given by (4-14) is not zero, the net energy exchange for each TA in the SP-TAC over a fundamental cycle is zero due to the presence of overlap intervals during which the phase leg aggregate voltage balances with the dc link. The non-zero energy exchange of each TA implies that balancing common-mode currents are triggered during each overlap interval.

Equation (4-14) indicates that, as in the AP-TAC, the energy excursion is decoupled from the loading (angle $\varphi$) which is predictable by inspection of the switching sequence *a* – *d*.

#### 4.3.2.2 The symmetric P-TAC cell capacitance design

As described earlier, energy storage elements of each transition arm in the SP-TAC conduct load current for nearly half the voltage transition interval $T_t$, assuming the overlap interval is brief with respect to $T_t$. When the SP-TAC is utilized in a F2F dc-dc converter such as the one of section 0, the primary side and secondary side subgroup capacitance $C_{gp}$ and $C_{gs}$ can be calculated with reference to (4-5) - (4-8) at $\rho = 1$ for $\omega_s T_t \le \varphi \le \frac{1}{3}\pi$ as;

$$C_{gp} = \gamma \frac{\lambda N_s}{\ell \omega_s V_{nom}} \int_{\pi}^{\pi+\frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t} i_p\left(\theta - \pi\right) d\theta \tag{4-15}$$

$$C_{gs} = \frac{1}{a^2} C_{gp} \tag{4-16}$$

In (4-15), $V_{nom} = V_{dcp}$ and $\lambda = 1$. This value of $\lambda$ is used for redundancy. Using (4-15), the primary and secondary side TA cell subgroup capacitance can be calculated as in (4-17) and (4-18), which is roughly half that of the AP-TAC.

$$C_{gs} = \gamma \frac{N_s T_t}{6\ell \omega_s L_s}\left(\varphi_{\max} - \frac{1}{6}\omega_s T_t\right) \tag{4-17}$$

$$C_{gs} = \gamma \frac{N_s T_t}{6\ell a^2 \omega_s L_s}\left(\varphi_{\max} - \frac{1}{6}\omega_s T_t\right) \tag{4-18}$$

### 4.3.3 The modular PTAC (MP-TAC)

Although the AP-TAC and SP-TAC designs achieve a better modularity relative to the CTB, they remain of hybrid structures where director valves comprise series connection of power switches. This has been highlighted as a challenge to the utilization of low-loss force commutated devices such as the IGCT.

The MP-TAC design, although functionally equivalent to an SP-TAC, avoids the downsides of the AP-TAC and the SP-TAC by utilizing a fully modular design in which director valves can be modularized as well. Referring to the SP-TAC design shown in Figure 4-6b, each power switch *S* and *S*' of the director valves $S_1$ and $S_1$', respectively, can be augmented to a HB cell of the upper TA. Likewise, each power switch *S* and *S*' of the director valves $S_2$ and $S_2$', respectively, can be augmented to a HB cell of the lower TA.

The resulting MP-TAC submodule design is shown in Figure 4-6a in which the power switch *S'* is clamped to the cell capacitor voltage through the freewheeling diode of $T_1$ and the power switch *S* is clamped to the submodule capacitor through an additional diode. This way, no series connected power switch arrays are needed and less snubbing is required. This may relatively facilitate the utilization of IGCTs particularly with the zero-voltage switching, although other aspects need to be investigated such as IGCT gating power, gate supply isolation, and *di/dt* reactor snubbers.

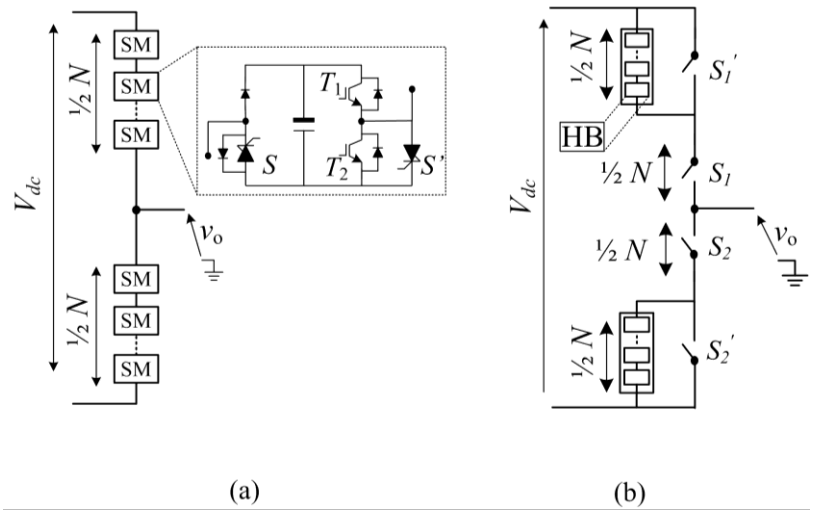



Figure 4-6 (a) One phase leg of the modular parallel TAC (MP-TAC), and (b) the equivalent SP-TAC design.

Since the MP-TAC is equivalent to an SP-TAC, the same switching sequence $a - d$ of section 4.3.2 applies for the MP-TAC. The switching states of the MP-TAC cell are depicted in Figure 4-7 where subplot (a) represents the off state in which the submodule does not conduct current as *S*, *S*', and $T_2$ are switched off. This state is utilized optionally when the load arm is conducted by the complementary arm of the phase leg. State '0' depicted in subplot (b) represents the case when the submodule conducts load current through the director switches *S* and *S*' and the IGBT $T_2$ shares the load current with *S*'. This state is used briefly right before or after the ac pole voltage transition interval $T_t$ according to sequence $a - d$. Observe that as in the AP-TAC and the SP-TAC, the anti-parallel diode of $T_2$ may instead conduct load current under capacitive loading or large-angle inductive loading for significant portion of the fundamental cycle (particularly when the ac pole voltage is at a dominant voltage level).

Subplot (c) depicts the idle state in which $T_1$ and $T_2$ are off. This state is utilized in sequence $a - d$ when the ac pole voltage is at the respective dominant level. Likewise, load current flows through director switches *S* and *S*' or through *S* and $T_2$ anti-parallel diodes under capacitive loading or large-angle inductive loading.

Subplot (d) represents submodule state ‘1’ in which the submodule capacitor is inserted in the current path. State ‘1’ is utilized during the voltage transit intervals.

As in the SP-TAC, the anti-parallel pair $T_1$ and the IGBT $T_2$ conduct load current only very briefly (current pulses) and can thus be selected of low current rating. In all switching states of Figure 4-7 the additional clamp diode does not conduct load current at any instant, it can thus be selected of low current rating with respect to all other devices in the submodule. When the director switch *S* is conducting in either direction, said clamp diode is must be able to block at least the submodule voltage. However, for *S* to contribute to dc voltage blocking when the respective arm is off, the voltage across *S* must be allowed to reach the submodule voltage. This applies double the submodule voltage across the clamp diode in the reverse direction. Thus, the clamp diode must block double the submodule voltage. Furthermore, to limit the voltage across S to the submodule voltage, the clamp diode must be able to conduct current in the reverse direction when the reverse voltage exceeds double the submodule voltage.

According to the above discussion, the clamp diode must be characterized by:

1- The reverse voltage is double the submodule (nominal) voltage.
2- The clamp diode must exhibit controlled avalanche reverse characteristics (i.e. avalanche diode)
3- Standard recovery characteristics suffice.
4- Very low current rating is required with respect of other power switches in the submodule

It follows from the above points that when the submodule voltage rating is, for instance, 3.3kV or 4.5kV, two (or more) clamp diodes may need to be series connected. The diode avalanche reverse characteristics will allow this type of connection without voltage sharing snubbers. Several manufacturers (e.g. ABB) build high voltage standard recovery diodes with avalanche reverse characteristics for rectifier applications. ABB diodes such as 5SDA 08D3205 and 5SDA 06D5007 are examples, although their current rating is significantly higher than what is required for clamping in the considered submodule.

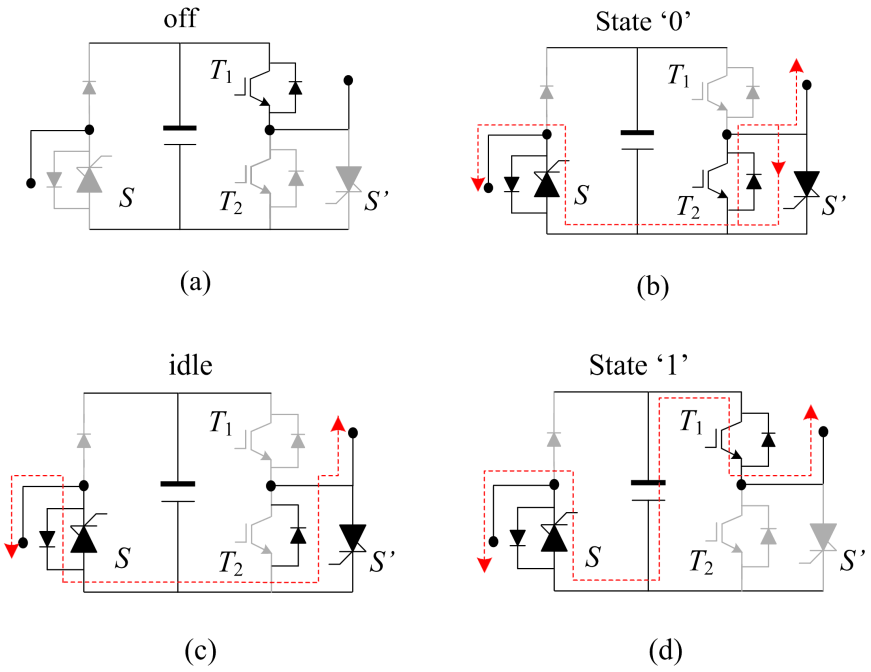



Figure 4-7 Switching states of the MP-TAC cell: (a) the off state where no current flow possible, (b) the 0V state where cell capacitor is inserted in conduction path, and (c) the 0V state in which cell capacitor is bypassed. [Grey traces denote the semiconductor device is in blocking state – Red traces represent current flow paths]

### 4.3.4 MP-TAC based F2F converter numerical simulation

Since the MP-TAC is a modular version of the SP-TAC, the TA net energy fluctuations and submodule capacitor sizing is the same as described in sections 4.3.2.1 and 4.3.2.2. Also, submodule voltage balancing is likewise possible using the conventional sorting algorithm.

Figure 4-8 depicts numerical simulation results of the MP-TAC as part of the F2F dc-dc converter simulation set up of section 3.5, where the MP-TAC is the power-sending primary side converter (i.e. inductive loading). Here, the dwell time and overlap interval are 10µs each. For expedience, director switches *S* and *S'* of each submodule are modelled as IGBTs. It is evident from Figure 4-8c, Figure 4-8d, and Figure 4-8h that the switches $T_2$ and $T_1$ experience only pulsed current flow, confirming said low current rating requirement. The ac pole current can be seen to

flow dominantly through switches *S* and *S'* whose voltages are clamped to the submodule voltage. Figure 4-8e shows the voltage across the clamp diode, which peaks at about double the submodule voltage.

When *S* and *S'* are realized as IGCTs, the MP-TAC is expected to exhibit less conduction loss relative to the Q2LC and the CTB, given the trivial conduction loss in switches $T_1$ and $T_2$. Observe that director switch *S* current, which is also the arm current, is nearly free of any significant inrush current spikes related to common-mode (balancing) current flow during the overlap interval. This again confirms the sufficiency of aggregate arm stray inductance and that no dedicated arm reactors are required, except for *di/dt* reactor snubbers utilized for IGCTs.

## 4.4 The transition arm converter (TAC)

The generic P-TAC converter can be reconfigured with the purpose of reducing the silicon area of utilized power electronics. This can be done by removing the or every director valve connected in parallel to a transition arm. The resulting structure can generically be called the transition arm converter (TAC) which can be likewise of asymmetric (ATAC), symmetric (STAC) and modular (MTAC) structure. The structure and operation of each subconverter will be investigated in the rest of this section. Study of the installed power electronics in relation to other converter types will be conducted in section 5.4.

### 4.4.1 The asymmetric transition arm converter (ATAC)

The ATAC shown in Figure 4-9 is analogous to the AP-TAC. Here one arm of each phase leg comprises a transition arm composed of cascaded HB cells. The other arm of the phase leg features an array of series connected power switches which will be denoted ‘bi-state arm’ henceforth since it has no ‘directing’ function in ATAC.

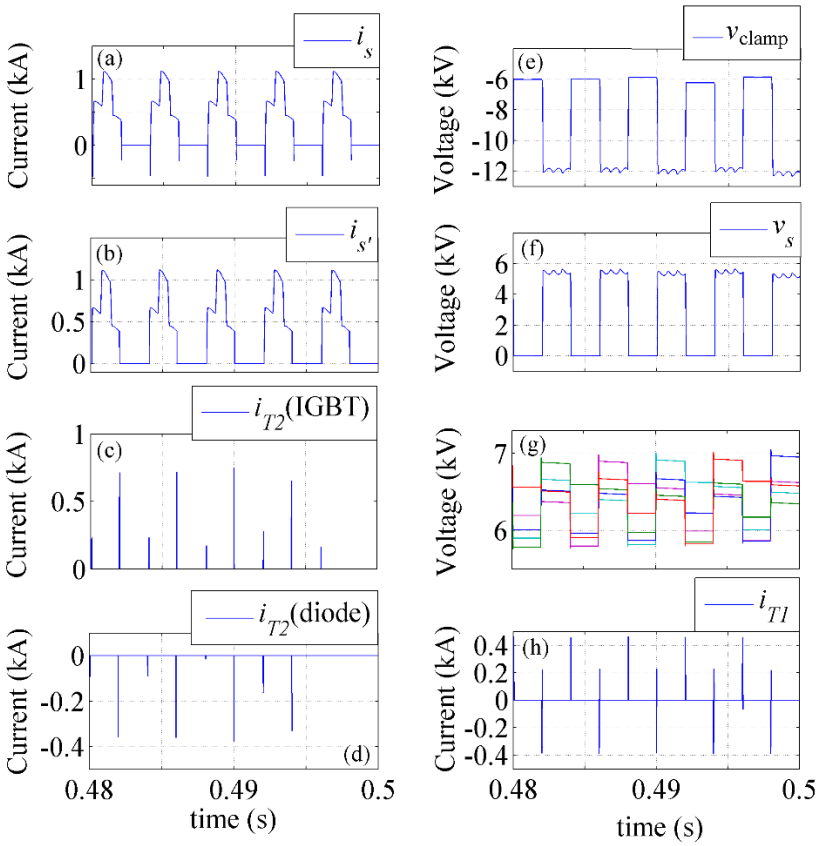



Figure 4-8 Numerical simulation results of the MP-TAC with the same F2F converter simulation setup of section 3.5: (a) upper arm current of one phase leg (which is also switch *S* current), (b) Current in the shunt switch *S'*, (c) Current in the IGBT $T_2$ of one submodule, (d) switch $T_2$ anti-parallel diode current in said submodule, (e) voltage across the clamp diode of said submodule (f) voltage across switch *S* of said submodule, (g) submodule voltages in said upper arm, and (h) current in the auxiliary switch $T_1$ of said submodule.

The switching sequence in ATAC is controlled, as exemplified in Figure 4-10, such that each bi-state arm is turned on or off only when all HB cells of the respective transition arm are in state '1'; otherwise, it must remain at off state. Operation of ATAC in this manner allows controlled gradual voltage transition across each bi-state arm. Consequently, the on or off switching of each bi-state arm can be administered when the voltage across its terminals is zero or near zero, leading to trivial switching losses in bi-state arms.

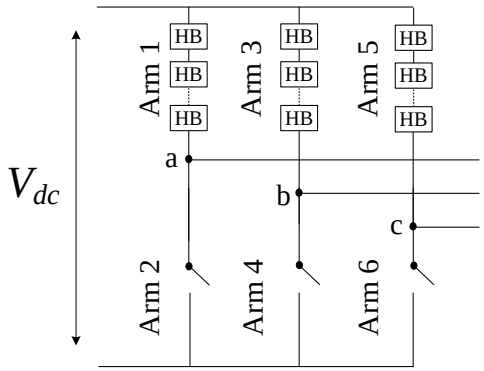



Figure 4-9 Structure of the transition arm converter.

Synthesis of a staircase approximated trapezoidal voltage waveform offers a good utilization of the ATAC structure. For a trapezoidal ac output voltage waveform having a positive dominant level and a negative dominant level, said positive or negative dominant ac voltage levels are produced at a given ac pole when the ac pole is tied to either the positive or negative dc rail ($+½V_{dc}$ and$–½V_{dc}$) respectively. With reference to Figure 4-9 and Figure 4-10, said positive dominant ac voltage level ($+½V_{dc}$) in an ac pole is produced when transition arm cells in the respective phase leg are all in state '0' and the respective bi-state arm is off. When the bi-state arm is off, full ac pole current flows in the transition arm. Said negative dominant ac voltage level ($–½V_{dc}$) is produced at said ac pole when all said transition arm cells are in state '1' and said bi-state arm is on. When the bi-state arm is on, full ac pole current flows therethrough. At ac pole voltage transition from $–½V_{dc}$ to $+½V_{dc}$, the bi-state arm turns off, then transition arm cells switch sequentially from state '1' to state '0' with a time step (dwell time) $T_d$ in a total voltage transition interval $T_t$. Likewise, ac pole voltage transition from $+½V_{dc}$ to $–½V_{dc}$ is realized by sequential switching of transition arm cells from state '0' to state'1' with a dwell time $T_d$, then the bi-state arm turns on.

Given the analogy between the ATAC and the AP-TAC, the transition arm energy storage (i.e. cell capacitor size) and TA energy excursions are the same as given in sections 4.3.1.1 and 4.3.1.2.

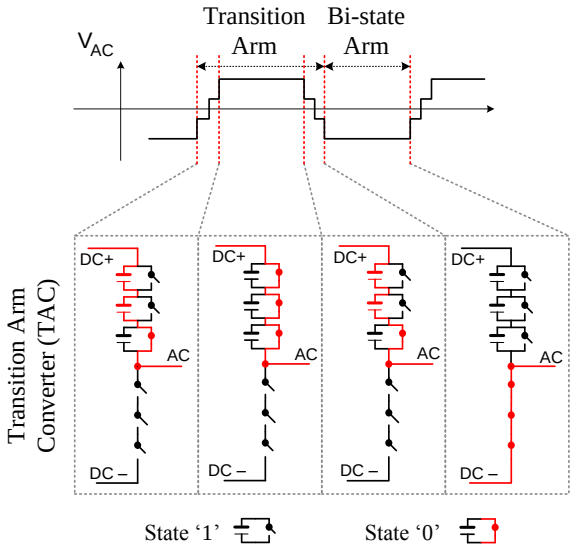



Figure 4-10 A possible TAC switching sequence.

### 4.4.2 ATAC-based F2F converter numerical simulation

The ATAC is simulated as the kernel of a F2F dc-dc converter simulation set-up of section 3.5. Main observations of said simulation scenario are summarized in Fig. 4a which shows waveforms depicted from the primary side ATAC. It can be observed that cell voltages exhibit about ±12% ripple in the viewed transition arm for the modeled cell subgroup capacitance of 8µF. The bounded voltage ripple is achieved using the traditional sorting algorithm with the transition arm current and cell voltages sampled four times per fundamental cycle – and not during voltage transition intervals – and cells are sorted for sequential switching in ascending or descending order subject to transition arm current direction.

The arm currents in the viewed ATAC phase leg can be seen to flow in one phase arm at a time except for the voltage transition intervals. Power path IGBTs of HB cells take up the whole load current for most of the fundamental cycle while auxiliary IGBTs carry discontinuous current pulses only for an interval $T_t$ during ac pole voltage transitions; that is, when cell capacitors are involved in power transfer (Figure 4-11a). Therefore, they are to be rated for low continuous current rating akin

to auxiliary path switches of the Q2LC. As soon as the bi-state arm switches on, insignificant common mode balancing current is interchanged with the dc side to balance the phase leg voltage. As observed, no dedicated arm inductance is required.

Considering the parameters of Table 3-3, (3-40) results in a peak ac pole current of about 1080A at the primary side TAC. Figure 4-11a shows that the numerically simulated value of primary side peak ac pole current is about 1130A, which is in good agreement with the value calculated by (3-40) given the assumptions made in its derivation (e.g. negligence of ac link resistance).

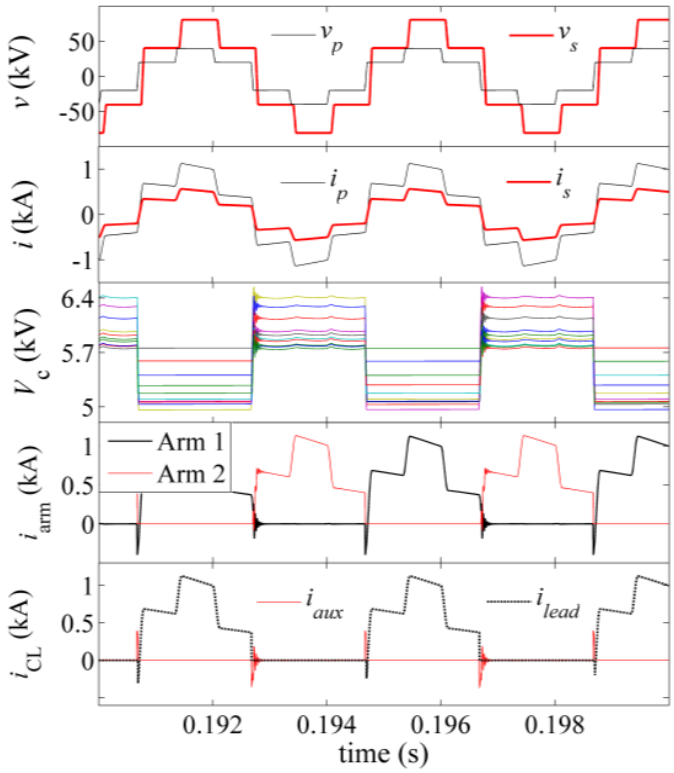



Figure 4-11 Primary side numerical simulation results of the ATAC-based front-to-front converter described in section 3.5.

### 4.4.3 The symmetric TAC (STAC) and the modular TAC (MTAC)

Despite the near-zero voltage switching of ATAC bi-state arms in a way that simplifies voltage sharing snubbers and gating circuitry, snubbers are still required for static voltage sharing under transient conditions, as in the AP-TAC, SP-TAC, and

the CTB. It follows that utilization of ICTs in bi-state arms of the ATAC is as challenging as described for the AP-TAC, SP-TAC, or the CTB. Also, it is clear that the ATAC structure lacks full modularity.

In order to improve ATAC design, the transition arm of each phase leg is split across the two arms of the phase leg, analogous to that of the SP-TAC phase leg. This symmetric TAC (STAC) structure can be modularized akin to the MP-TAC to produce the modular TAC (MTAC).

The configurations of STAC and MTAC phase legs are depicted schematically in Figure 4-13. It is observed that the MTAC is composed of cascaded identical submodules each comprising a HB subcell, a director switch *S*, and a clamping diode. As in the MP-TAC, the clamping diode must possess controlled reverse avalanche characteristics to clamp the voltage of switch *S* at the submodule capacitor voltage. Also, said clamp diode does not conduct load current at any time instant; thus, can be a low current diode. However, it must be of double the submodule voltage. Series connection of avalanche clamp diodes is possible without voltage sharing circuits. Power switches $T_2$ and *S* are of full load current rating while switch $T_1$ in the auxiliary path is of lower continuous current rating as in the ATAC or the Q2LC. Looking at the switching states of Figure 4-12, it is observed that he switch *S* in each MTAC submodule is effectively connected in series with the HB subcell and switches on and off at zero voltage while its maximum voltage is clamped to cell voltage as indicated above. These conditions may facilitate the realization of switch *S* as an IGCT for higher efficiency. Nonetheless, further studies on the impact of IGCT gating requirements on system design and operation are necessary.

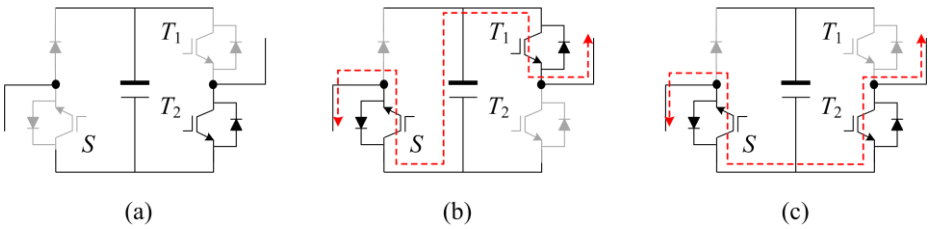



Figure 4-12 Switching states of the MTAC submodule: (a) the idle state where no current flow possible, (b) the +V state where cell capacitor is inserted in conduction path, and (c) the 0V state in which cell capacitor is bypassed. [Grey traces denote the semiconductor device is in blocking state – Red traces represent current flow paths]

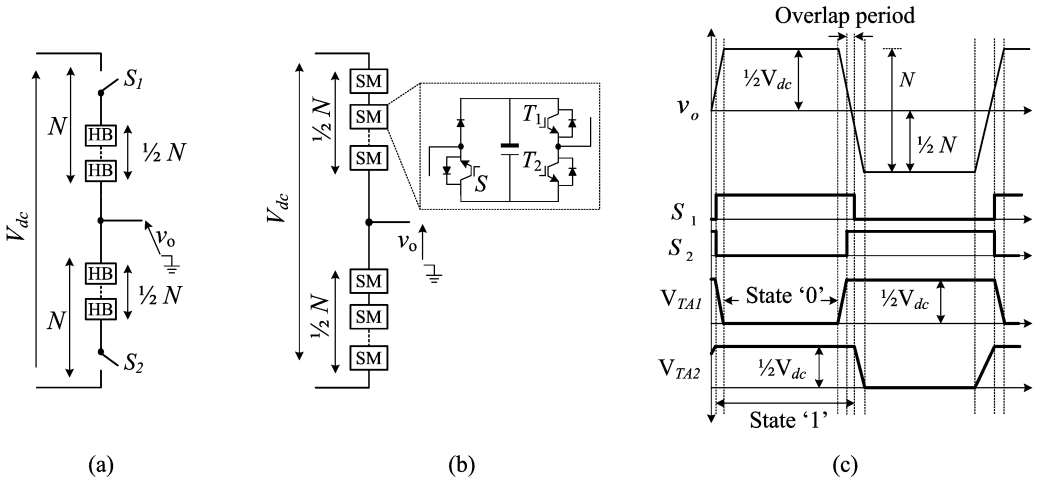



Figure 4-13 (a) Symmetric TAC (STAC) configuration (b) Modular TAC (MTAC) structure, and (c) Schematic of the switching sequence of a generic STAC/MTAC [subscripts *TA1* and *TA2* refer to the upper transition member and lower transition member, respectively]..

Unlike ATAC, each arm of an MTAC (or STAC) phase leg synthesizes a half of the ac pole trapezoidal voltage over a fundamental cycle. In doing so, the MTAC can be easily controlled under appropriate switching sequences to ensure near-zero net energy exchange for each phase leg over the fundamental cycle. One possible switching sequence is depicted graphically in Figure 4-13c and will be explained with reference to STAC structure. When the ac pole of a STAC phase leg is tied to the positive dc rail, upper arm director switch $S_1$ is on and upper arm HB cells are in state '0', while lower arm director switch $S_2$ is off and lower arm HB cells are in state '1'. Similarly, when the ac pole is tied to the negative dc rail, lower arm director switch $S_2$ is on and lower arm HB cells are in state '0', while upper arm director switch $S_1$ is off and upper arm HB cells are in state '1'. AC pole voltage transition from positive to negative dc rail is administered as follows:

- Upper arm HB cells switch sequentially to state '1' with inter time step $T_d$.
- Director switch $S_2$ is turned on and balancing common-mode current flows in the phase leg to balance its aggregate voltage with the dc link.
- Director switch $S_1$ is turned off; then lower arm HB cells switch sequentially to state '0' with inter time step $T_d$ to tie the ac pole to negative dc rail.

AC pole voltage transition from negative to positive dc rail follows the same switching concept. The time interval during which both upper and lower router switches $S_1$ and $S_2$ are on and all HB cells in the phase leg are in state '1' is denoted an 'overlap interval'. This overlap is mandatory to ensure the net energy exchange of each hybrid arm over a fundamental cycle is near zero. Observe that operation of the STAC as part of a F2F dc-dc converter with high gradient trapezoidal ac waveforms means that arm currents are also given by (3-40). Cell capacitors in each arm carry full load current for only half the voltage transition cycle $T_t$ exactly as in the MP-TAC. Therefore, the STAC requires nearly half the HB cell capacitance designed for an equivalent ATAC. Also, energy excursions of STAC arms are likewise limited and common-mode currents during the overlap interval are not significant.

### 4.4.4 MTAC-based F2F dc-dc converter numerical simulation

To validate the MTAC (or STAC) design, the same simulation set-up of section 3.5 is repeated with the MTAC employed in replacement of the Q2LC in the F2F converter. For expedience, director switches and HB cells employ the same IGBT devices as in section 3.5. Here $T_d$ = 10μs. The two arm currents and cells voltages of one phase leg are depicted in Figure 4-14. It can be observed that the capacitor voltages balance with the dc link during the 10μs-overlap interval, which is repeated each half fundamental cycle in the simulation set up (although overlap is shown once per cycle in Figure 4-13c). The balance is achieved by the conventional sorting algorithm as in the ATAC. 4-14 depicts also the voltage across the switches *S* and clamp diodes of one arm. It can be seen that the director switch voltages never exceed cell voltages. They sum up to the dc link voltage minus the sum of the cell voltages of the same arm. As expected, the clamp diodes do not conduct any forward current and they require near double the cell voltage rating.

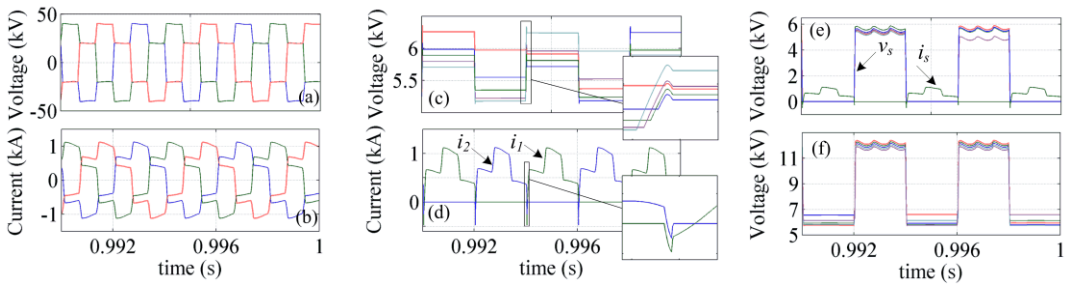



Figure 4-14 Numerical simulation results of the modular symmetric TAC (STAC) with the same F2F converter simulation setup of section 3.5: (a) primary-side three-phase ac pole-to-neutral voltages, (b) primary-side three-phase ac pole currents, (c) cell voltages of the lower arm of one phase leg, (d) arm currents of said phase leg [$i_1$: upper arm current, $i_2$: lower arm current], (e) the voltages ($v_s$) and current ($i_s$) of director switches in the lower arm of said phase leg, and (f) Reverse voltages across clamp diodes in the same arm of (e).

## 4.5 Experimental validation

The TAC concept is selected for experimental validation herein using a single phase 1-kW scaled test rig of an ATAC design. Other TAC structures are equivalent. Akin to section 3.6, the primary purpose herein is:

- To confirm that proper trapezoidal operation of TAC is possible with low energy storage in transition arms.
- To validate the sufficiency of the conventional sorting algorithm for cell voltage balancing in transition arms without a further action.
- To validate that common-mode balancing currents are low and require no/minimal dedicated arm inductances.
- To confirm the pulsed current flow in auxiliary circuits of HB cells under trapezoidal operation of TAC.
- To reconfirm the insignificant current flow (hence low on-state loss) in antiparallel diodes in bi-state and transition arms.

It is thus sufficient for the experimental proof of the above properties to utilize the single-phase-leg dc/ac transition arm converter of Figure 4-15 to synthesize trapezoidal ac waveform across the terminals of a lightly inductive passive load.

Operation herein with a lightly inductive load resembles the operation of ATAC in F2F dc-dc converters for dc grid applications where low-load-angle operation is typical (i.e. utilized converters therein operate for a reasonable range of operating points at light inductive loading (refer to Chapter 5). In Figure 4-15, said single phase single-leg ATAC comprises an upper transition arm and a lower bi-state arm. The transition arm comprises three HB cells and, thus, ATAC is controlled to generate a 4-level trapezoidal ac voltage output across a passive load. The TAC is supplied from a 300V dc supply and a 50µF split capacitor provides a midpoint acting as a virtual ground reference point for the passive load to connect to. Consequently, peak load voltage is ±150V. IRG4IBC30UDPBF 17A 600V IGBTs are employed throughout. With 600V voltage rating, only one IGBT is connected in the bi-state arm to achieve the two-state operation therein. All other parameters are depicted in Figure 4-15. Figure 4-16 provides simulation results of the considered test rig.

Gating signals generated by eZDSP F28335 control ATAC operation such that said trapezoidal waveform is generated at a fundamental frequency of 250 Hz and a 30-µs dwell time in each intermediary voltage level between the two dominant voltage levels (i.e. $T_t = 60\mu s$). More details on the experimental rig are presented in the Appendix.

A 15µF capacitor is used in each HB cell and it is evident from Figure 4-18 that this is sufficient to limit the cell voltage ripple to about ±15% around the nominal cell voltage of 100V, for about 18A peak-to-peak load current. This cell capacitance figure is significantly lower than that of an equivalent MMC of same dc voltage and loading conditions generating a sinusoidal voltage waveform across the load.

Figure 4-18 shows further that transition arm cell voltages balance with proper action of the conventional sorting algorithm which can be seen clearly in the zoomed sections Z3 and Z4. It can be seen in zoomed section Z2 of Figure 4-17 that the bi-state arm turns off following the voltage transition interval; expectedly triggering the depicted common-mode arm current pulse acting to balance transition arm voltage with the dc side. Here, the small 5µH arm inductance and the combined IGBT on-

state resistance are sufficient to limit current slew rates and avoid any oscillations. The ac-side current

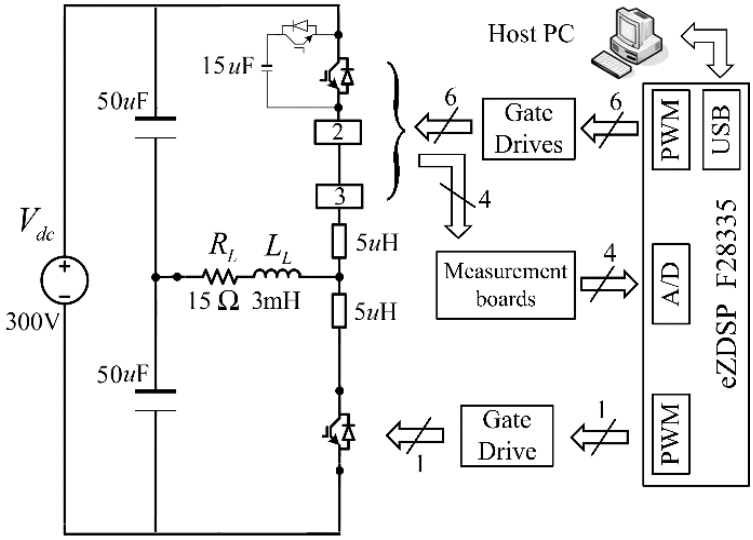
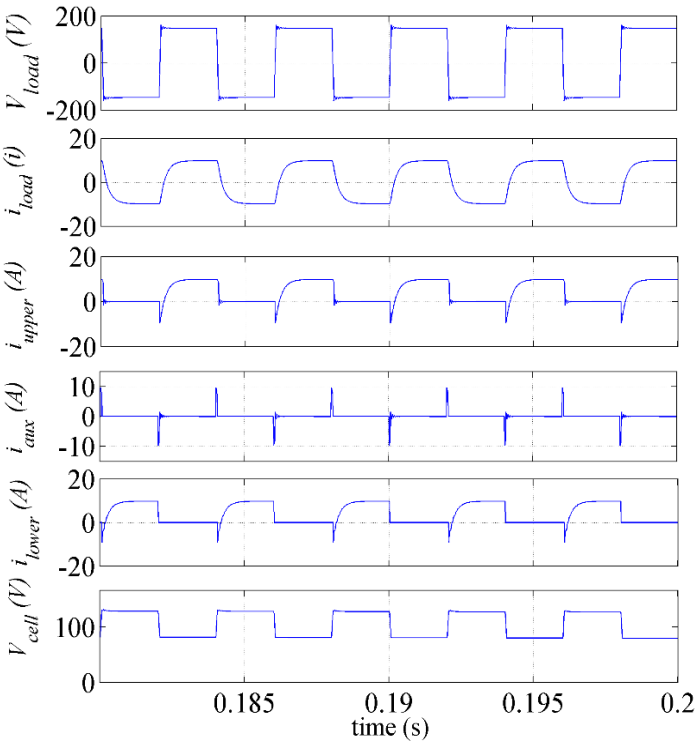


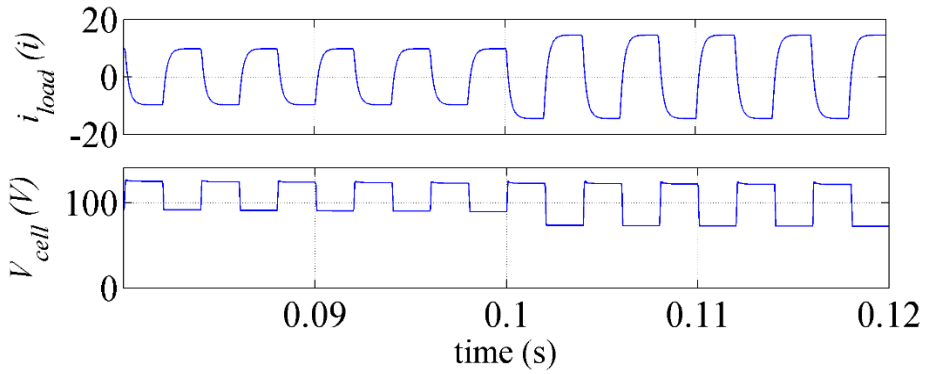

Figure 4-15 Schematic of the 1-kW single phase scaled ATAC test rig

is seen to be decoupled from such internal arm current dynamics. It can be deduced from zoomed section Z2 of Figure 4-17 that the instant of bi-state arm switching (the instant the common-mode current is triggered) corresponds to an ac pole voltage of –150V. This confirms the zero voltage switching property of the bi-state arm.

Further results collected from the test rig shows that all ATAC auxiliary path circuits endure current pulses of about 8A peak twice per cycle (Figure 4-19). This is further illustrated in section Z5 of Figure 4-19b for one cell of the transition arm. This is in line with the discussion in section 4.4.1. Such intermittent current pattern reconfirms the low semiconductor ratings required for ATAC auxiliary circuits relative to lead path and bi-state arm semiconductor switches. Notice in Figure 4-19 the brief current flow in the reverse direction in the bi-state arm as well as in the transition arm, which confirms the insignificance of anti-parallel diode on-state losses. This is particularly true under high power factor loading, which is typical for the considered dc-dc conversion application (low loading angles) as has been shown in Chapter 3.




(a)




(b)

Figure 4-16 Simulation results for the test rig of Figure 4-15, (a) From top to bottom: Load voltage, load current, transition arm current, one transition arm auxiliary IGBT current, bi-state arm current, and one transition arm cell voltage; and (b) load current and once cell voltage under 30% load rise at $t$ = 0.1s.

In Figure 4-20 load current and cell voltages are depicted for a sudden 30% step load current rise. It is observed in Figure 4-20 that transition arm capacitors remain seamlessly balanced after the step loading rise. The underlying reason is that the small energy capacity of the transition arm leads to nearly instant increase of cell voltage ripple band without energy oscillations. Also, comparing the experimented ATAC to a Q2LC at the same dc voltage and loading, the latter exhibited some 40% higher cell voltage ripple for the same cell capacitance value. This reconfirms that ATAC requires relatively lower cell capacitance; which was expected by the analysis of section 4.4.1

## 4.6 Summary

This chapter has presented and analysed several modified bridge structures for trapezoidal operation of the front-to-front dc-dc converter. It has been shown that the operation characteristics of the Q2LC could be obtained with other equivalent hybrid and modular structures. First, so-called controlled transition bridge (CTB) was studied for operation with high slope trapezoidal waveforms in a front-to-front dc-dc converter. Although the full bridge chainlinks of a CTB feature lower energy storage capacity with respect to the Q2LC, the overall installed semiconductor power is similar to an equivalent Q2LC. A further expense is the loss of modularity. Modular design can be recovered by using a cascade of HB cells in parallel to one director valve in each arm. This design is called the modular parallel transition arm converter (MP-TAC).

Another bridge design denoted the transition arm converter (TAC) is proposed where it utilizes lower energy storage and installed power electronics with respect to the Q2LC and the CTB.

Asymmetric, symmetric, and modular designs have been presented and analysed. Proof of concept experimental validation has been presented. It has been highlighted that the use of low-loss semiconductors such as thyristor and IGCTs is possible in director valves of the CTB, P-TAC, and TAC under certain conditions.

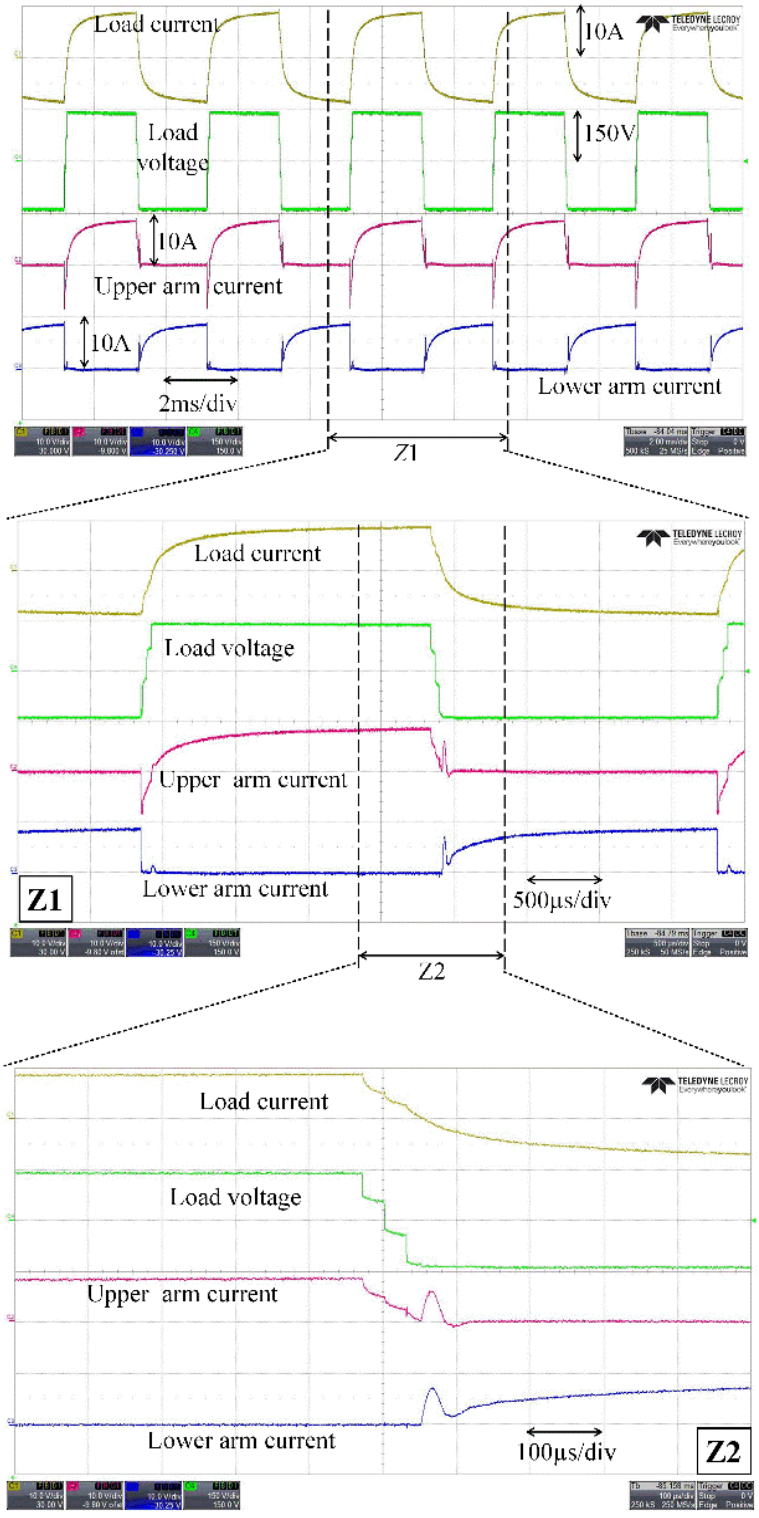



Figure 4-17 Proof of concept experimental results of the 1-kW single-phase ATAC feeding a load (voltages and currents).

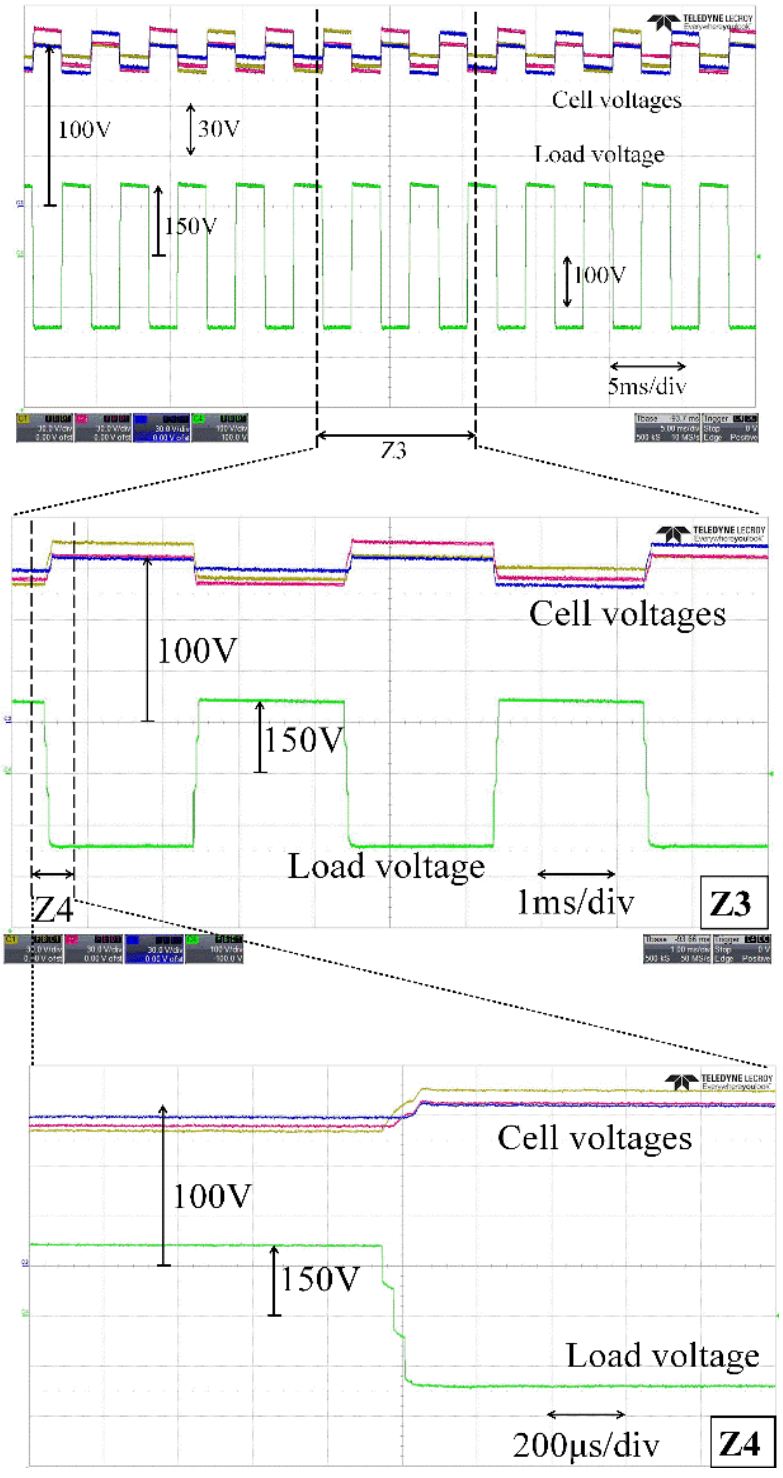
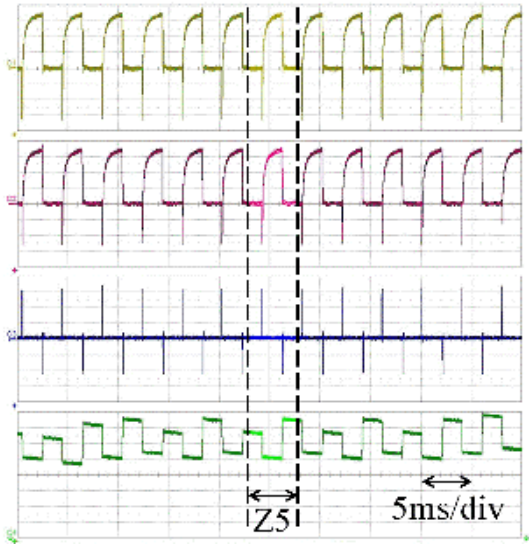
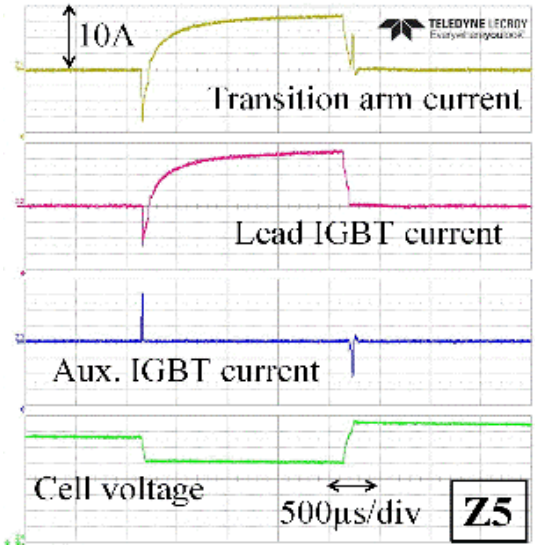



Figure 4-18 Proof of concept experimental results of the 1-kW single-phase ATAC feeding a load (cells and load voltages).

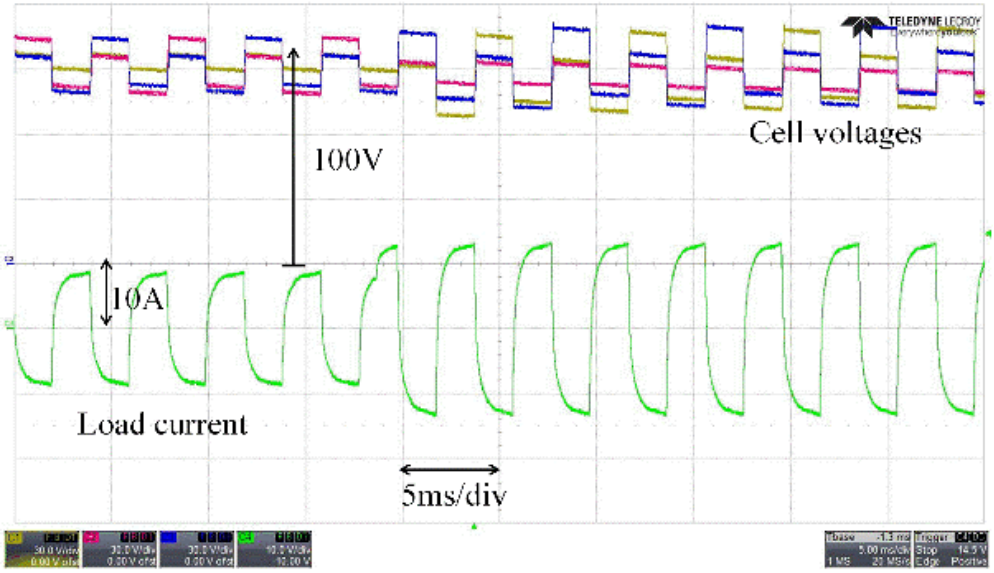



(a)




(b)

Figure 4-19 results of the 1-kW single-phase ATAC feeding a load; (a) The auxiliary IGBT current, (b) a zoomed section of (a).




(b)

Figure 4-20 load current and HB cells voltages of the 1-kW single-phase ATAC feeding a load with a 30% load step.

# Chapter 5

# Operation and Characteristics of Bridge Structures for F2F DC-DC Converters

## 5.1 DC-link filter capacitor design

It has been shown in section 3.2.3 that the trapezoidal ac pole voltage output of a small transit time (i.e., short dwell time $T_d$) of a Q2LC approaches a square wave. At $T_d = 0$, the Q2LC (or any equivalent bridge structure) operates, theoretically, in two level mode akin to traditional two level DAB. It follows that at $T_d << 1/f_s$, ac-side and dc-side waveforms of each F2F dc-dc converter bridge will be similar to these of the traditional two level DAB. This can be verified by the dc-side currents of Figure 5-1, Figure 5-2 Figure 5-3 representing the cases of two-level, ATAC, and MTAC F2F dc-dc converter designs, respectively. The results presented in said figures are based on the simulation scenarios of sections 4.4.2 and 4.4.4 using same dc link capacitance. These three bridge structures are used in this section as examples and it will be shown that results extend to all structures presented in Chapter 3Chapter 4.

It can be seen in said figures that the dc-side ripple current in an ATAC and an MTAC are nearly similar to that of an equivalent two level DAB dc-dc converter design. Said two-level DAB has been simulated according to the scenario set up in section 3.5 with the same dc link capacitance as the ATAC and MTAC cases.

As observed for the three design, the high percent amplitude of the dc current ripple is unacceptable and filtering is necessary. Even when the dc transmission line filters out the ripple current along its span, the presence of high ripple current for a significant section of the dc line violates operation standards with regards to, for instance, interference with communication links. Therefore, a dc-link filter capacitor is required in each bridge of the considered F2F dc-dc converter structures as typically utilized in traditional two level DAB.

Comparing the dc current ripple of the three bridge structures it can be seen that the discrepancy in unfiltered dc current ripple magnitudes among the three considered cases is minor – form a system design viewpoint – under the same operating conditions. This is confirmed by the dc ripple currents and dc link capacitor currents as grouped in Figure 5-4. It follows that dc filter capacitance sizes are relatively similar for the three cases. In the following analysis, dc link capacitor design is carried out with reference to the two-level case where a safety factor is used.

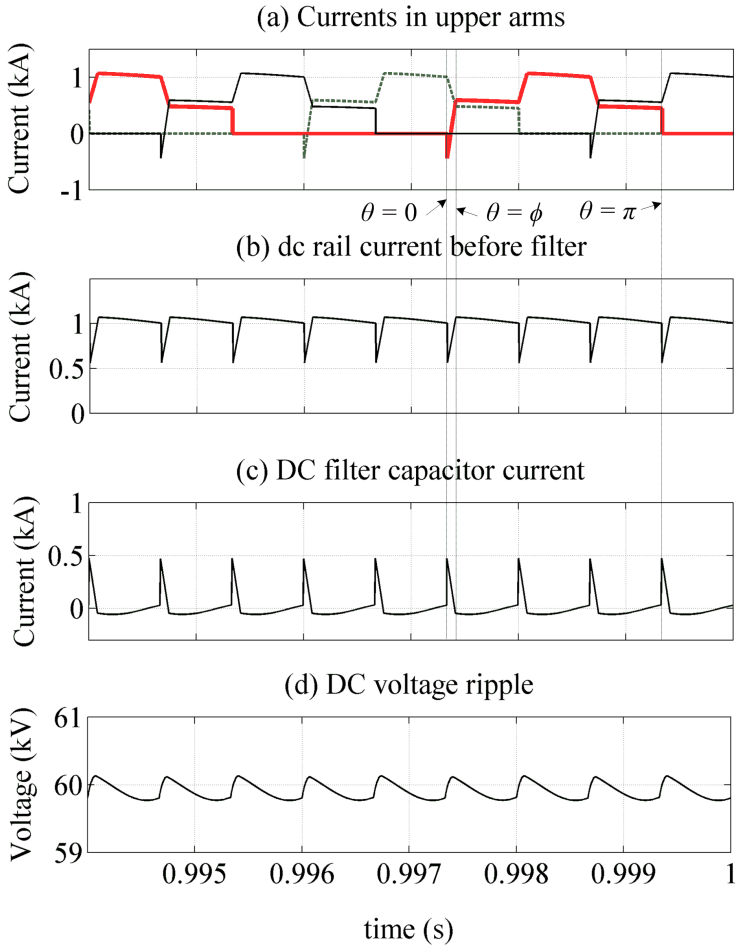



Figure 5-1 DC-side voltages and currents in the primary side of a two-level F2F dc-dc converter (a) Currents through the upper switch valves, (b) dc side current before filtering, (c) the current through the dc-link capacitor, and (d) the dc voltage ripple.

The voltages and currents of the two-level F2F dc-dc converter primary side bridge over a fundamental cycle can be obtained in the same manner as in a section 3.3.1. The dc current of Figure 5-1b can be fully described by obtaining current waveforms

in a period of $\pi/3$. The current in two segments needs to be defined, namely; $\theta = 0 \rightarrow \varphi$ and $\theta = \varphi \rightarrow \pi/3$. The highlighted half cycle of phase *a* upper arm current (red trace) is used for calculations. As depicted in Figure 5-1, at $\theta = 0$ the dc rail current flows only in one of the three upper arms. Consequently, the dc rail current right before the next switching action is $i_{dc}(\theta = 0^{-}) = i_a\,(\theta = \frac{2}{3}\pi)$. The latter is given by (5-1).

$$i_{dc}(\theta = 0^{-}) = i_a(\tfrac{2}{3}\pi) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left[(1-\rho)\frac{\pi}{3} + 2\rho\varphi\right] \tag{5-1}$$

Also, right before the upper arm of phase *a* is switched on to take up ac pole current, the current in the lower arm is equal to;

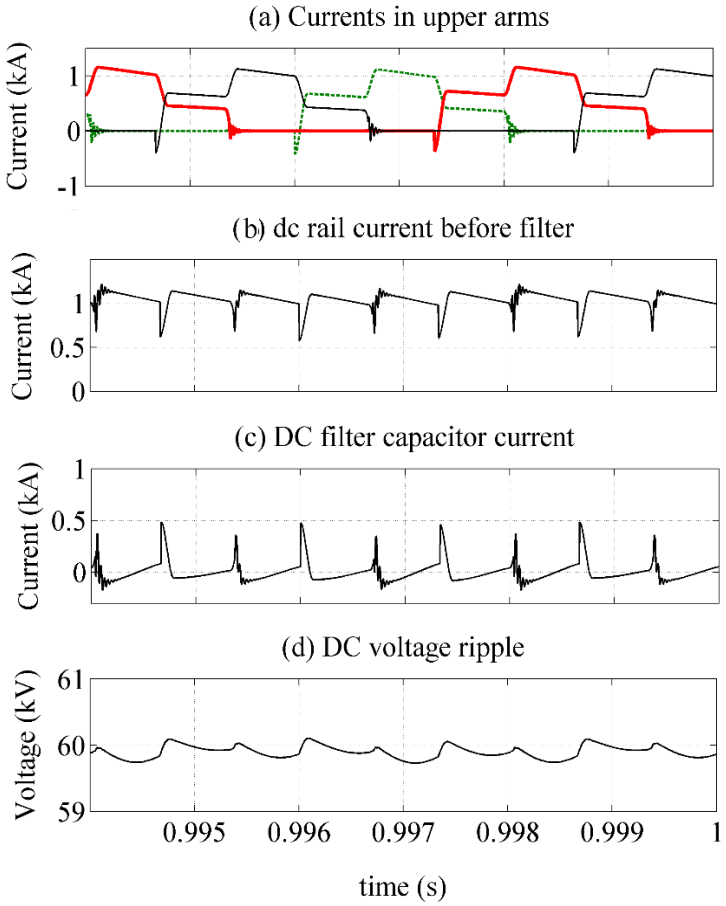



Figure 5-2 DC-side voltages and currents in the primary side of an ATAC-based F2F dc-dc converter (a) Currents through the upper switch valves, (b) dc side current before filtering, (c) the current through the dc-link capacitor, and (d) the dc voltage ripple.

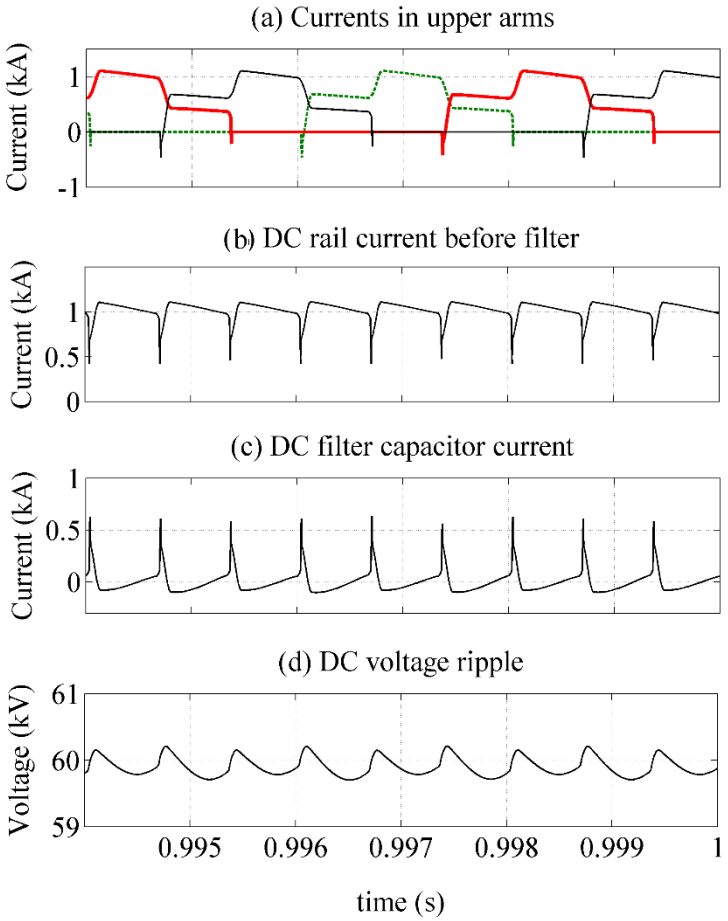



Figure 5-3 DC-side voltages and currents in the primary side of an MTAC-based F2F dc-dc converter (a) Currents through the upper switch valves, (b) dc side current before filtering, (c) the current through the dc-link capacitor, and (d) the dc voltage ripple.

$$i_a(\theta = 0^-) = -i_a(\pi) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left[2(\rho - 1)\frac{\pi}{3} - \rho\varphi\right] \tag{5-2}$$

Under inductive loading, at the upper arm switch on, the ac pole current flows in the freewheeling diode and thus the dc pole current right after switching $i_{dc}(\theta = 0^+)$ is;

$$i_{dc}(0^+) = i_{dc}(0^-) + i_a(0^-) = \frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left[(\rho - 1)\frac{\pi}{3} + \rho\varphi\right] \tag{5-3}$$

It can be shown that $i_{dc}(\varphi) = i_a(⅓\pi)$, where the latter is expressed in (5-4).

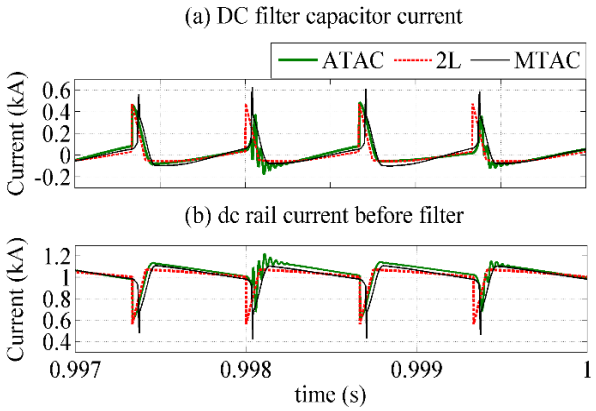



Figure 5-4 DC current through the dc rail and dc link capacitor of the primary side bridge of a F2F dc-dc converter utilizing two-level, ATAC or MTAC bridge structure.

$$i_a(\tfrac{1}{3}\pi+\varphi)=\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left[(\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3}+2\varphi\right] \tag{5-4}$$

From which the dc rail current in the interval $\theta = 0 \rightarrow \varphi$ can be obtained as in (5-5) and (5-6);

$$i_{dc}(\theta)=\left[i_{dc}(\varphi)-i_{dc}(0^+)\right]\frac{\theta}{\varphi}+i_{dc}(0^+) \tag{5-5}$$

or;

$$i_{dc}(\theta)=\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left[(2-\rho)\theta+(\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3}+\rho\varphi\right] \tag{5-6}$$

Similarly, the dc rail current when $\varphi < \theta < \pi/3$ can be calculated as in (5-7) and (5-8).

$$i_{dc}(\theta)=\left[i_{dc}(0^-)-i_{dc}(\varphi)\right]\frac{\theta-\varphi}{\frac{1}{3}\pi-\varphi}+i_{dc}(\varphi) \tag{5-7}$$

or;

$$i_{dc}(\theta)=\frac{V_{dcp}}{3\omega_s L_s}\left[2(1-\rho)\theta+(\rho-1)\frac{\pi}{3}+2\rho\varphi\right] \tag{5-8}$$

The dc rail current being fully described by (5-6) and (5-8) can be used to calculate the average power flow in the dc circuit as well as the required filter capacitor that achieves a certain percent dc voltage ripple value.

The average dc power can be calculated with reference to the primary side by averaging the current expressions of (5-6) and (5-8) over a period of $\pi/3$, then multiplying by $V_{dcp}$ as given in (5-9). Observe that (5-1) through (5-9) are valid only for $0 < \varphi < \pi/3$.

$$P_{dc} = \frac{\rho \varphi V_{dcp}^2}{\pi \omega_s L_s}\left[\frac{2\pi}{3} - \frac{1}{2}\varphi\right] \tag{5-9}$$

The design of dc link capacitor can be carried out with knowledge of capacitor current. Capacitor voltage $v_c(\theta)$ at any moment $\theta = \omega_s t$ is;

$$v_c(\theta) = v_c(0) + \frac{1}{\omega_s C_{dc}}\int_{\theta_o}^{\theta} i_c(\theta)d\theta \tag{5-10}$$

where $C_{dc}$ is dc-link capacitance. With reference to Figure 5-1, Figure 5-2 Figure 5-3 or Figure 5-4 current flow in the dc-link capacitor occurs dominantly in the interval $0 < \theta < \varphi$. Consequently, the absolute value of dc voltage ripple $\Delta v_c(\theta)$ can be calculated with reference to (5-6) as in (5-11).

$$\Delta v_c(\theta) = \frac{1}{\omega_s C_{dc}}\int_{0}^{\varphi} i_{dc}(\theta)d\theta \tag{5-11}$$

Using (5-6),

$$\Delta v_c(\theta) = \frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s^2 L_s C_{dc}}\left[(1+\frac{1}{2}\rho)\varphi + (\rho - 1)\frac{\pi}{3}\right] \tag{5-12}$$

Rearranging (5-12), the dc link capacitance can be expressed in terms of the dc voltage ripple as

$$C_{dc} = \frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s^2 L_s \Delta V_{dcp}}\left[(1+\frac{1}{2}\rho)\varphi + (\rho - 1)\frac{\pi}{3}\right] \tag{5-13}$$

$C_{dc}$ can be expressed for a certain percent dc voltage ripple $R_v = 100(\Delta V_{dcp}/V_{dcp})$ as in (5-14). A ±5% dc voltage ripple is expressed in (5-14) as $R_v = 10$.

$$C_{dc} = \frac{100\varphi}{3\omega_s^2 L_s R_v}\left[(1+\frac{1}{2}\rho)\varphi + (\rho - 1)\frac{\pi}{3}\right] \tag{5-14}$$

$C_{dc}$ can thus be designed for rated power (and at $\rho = 1$ for expedience) as;

$$C_{dc} = \varpi \frac{50\varphi_{\max}^2}{\omega_s^2 L_s R_v} \tag{5-15}$$

where $\varpi$ is a factor of safety that accounts for the range of dc ratios and ensures the dc link has sufficient energy buffering capacity. The latter may be necessary to handle power surges under fast power ramps or under faults. It is important to stress that the above design equations are valid only for $0 < \varphi < \pi/3$.

Equations (5-9) and (5-14) can be used to quantify the required dc-link capacitance in the primary bridge of the F2F dc-dc converter described in section 4.4.4. $C_{dc}$ values at different rated power values for a range of dc ratios is presented in Figure 5-5.

It can be observed from Figure 5-5 that the design dc link capacitance is expectedly larger for higher voltage ripple tolerances and rated power transfer. It is also observed that larger capacitance is required when the designed range of operating dc ratios is larger. Observe that all the values shown in Figure 5-5 do not consider energy buffering requirements as discussed earlier (i.e. $\varpi = 1$).

With reference to the system of section 4.4.4, the design dc link for the primary side at ±2% voltage ripple is 30µF. This is the value used in the simulation results presented in Figure 5-3 where the resulting dc voltage ripple is about ±1.7%. The dc ripple at the primary side bridge in the ATAC and two-level F2F dc-dc converters of Figure 5-2 and Figure 5-1 is 1.6% and 1.8%, respectively, at the same dc-link capacitance of 30µF.

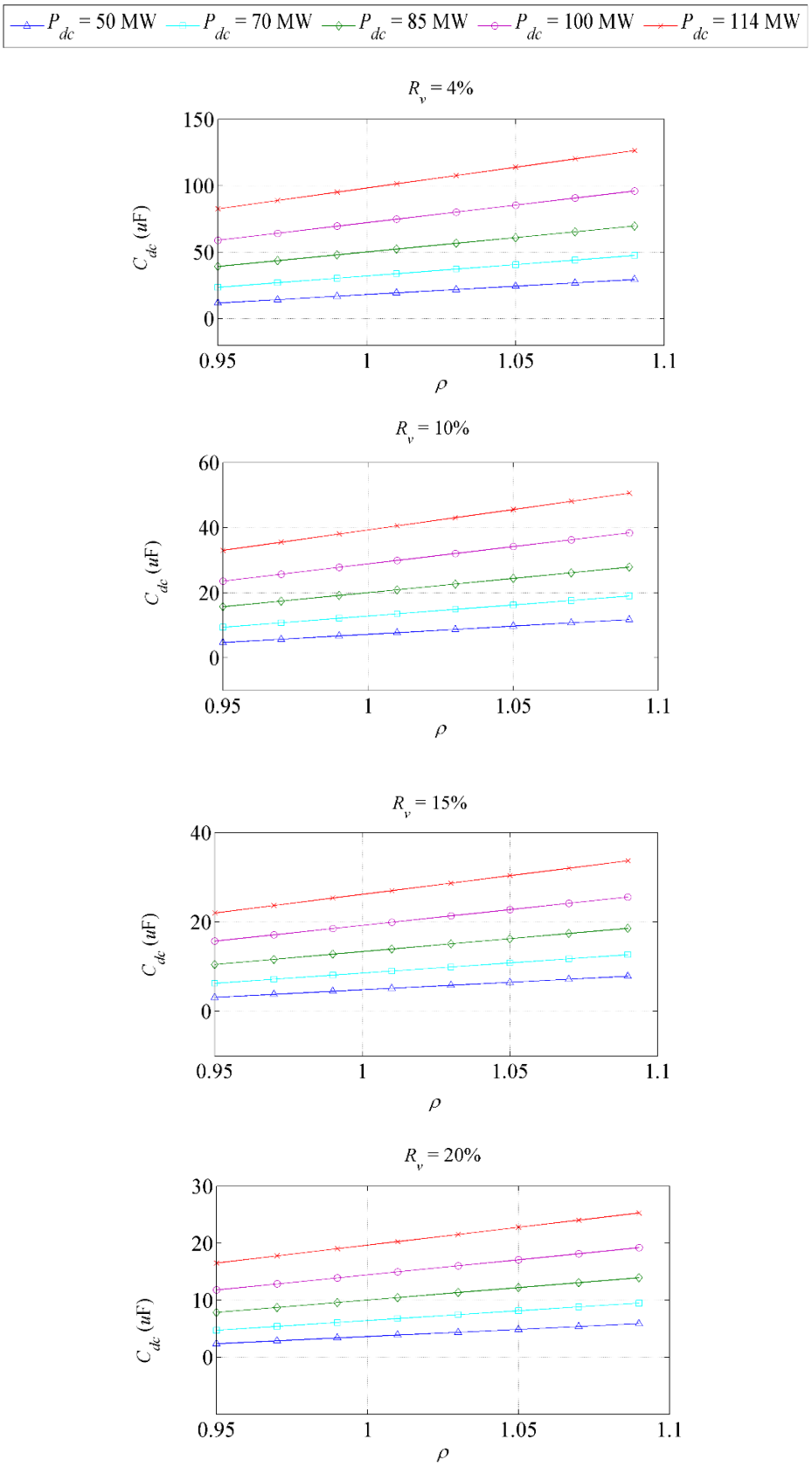



Figure 5-5 Primary side dc link capacitor size at different power ratings of the F2F dc-dc converter of section 4.4.4 for a range of dc ratios ($\rho$).

According to Figure 5-5, the required dc-link capacitance for said primary bridge of the three considered F2F dc-dc converter designs in this section (with 60MW power flow and $\rho$ = 1.01 as per sections 3.5, 4.4.2, and 4.4.4) would be around15μF for ±5% ripple, and 5μF for ±10% dc voltage ripple (with slight discrepancies between the two-level, MTAC, and ATAC cases).

Using (5-9) and (5-14) at $\varpi$ = 1, $\rho$ = 1, $\omega_s$ = 500$\pi$ rad/s, and $L_s$ = 10%, the primary side dc link capacitance for higher voltage F2F dc-dc converter designs can be calculated as per Table 5-1. It is evident that the dc-link capacitance is significantly lower than the values for the F2F dc-dc converter design of section 4.4.4. These values are also significantly smaller than dc-links of PWM two-level VSC stations of similar voltage and power ratings.

Nevertheless, the small capacitance values have little energy buffering capability and design must account for $\varpi$ > 1 to increase the energy capacity of the dc-link.

Design of dc-link capacitance in the secondary side bridge of the F2F dc-dc converter can be carried out in a similar manner. This is not carried out here since the needed oversizing to account for the energy buffering duty is more significant than the capacitor values for filtering at the primary or secondary dc-links.

Table 5-1

The required F2F primary side dc link capacitance for ±5% dc voltage ripple and 10% leakage reactance and 500 Hz in the ac link ($\varpi$ = 1)

| $V_{dcp}$ (kV) | ±200 | | | ±320 | | | ±400 | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $P_{dc}$ (MW) | 400 | 600 | 800 | 640 | 960 | 1280 | 800 | 1200 | 1600 |
| $\varphi_{max}$ | 2.4 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.8 | 2.8 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.9 |
| $L_s$ (mH) | 7 | 5 | 3.8 | 13 | 8.6 | 6.5 | 16.8 | 11.2 | 8.4 |
| $C_{dc}$ (μF) | 0.5 | 0.8 | 1.2 | 0.37 | 0.56 | 0.75 | 0.3 | 0.46 | 0.62 |

## 5.2 Modulation index control

Modulation index control in a DAB converter enhances the capability of voltage regulation and power flow control (e.g., [66], [77], and [93]). In a Q2LC, the sequential switching nature allows the fundamental voltage magnitude produced by the Q2LC be varied by a number of techniques. However, in practice, the variation range will be limited relative to a standard MMC .dc/ac converter. The main limiting factors are switching losses and harmonic content. Nevertheless, when utilized within a dc grid, the bridges of a DAB dc-dc transformer may not be required to operate at as wide range of modulation indices as a terminal dc/ac converter is expected to. Furthermore, the presence of an ac transformer stage with on-load tap changers may help reduce the modulation index control range required to account for steady state dc voltage variations. An exception to that is a faulty condition; where the non-fault-side Q2LC may have to operate in a current controlled mode to enable the healthy sections of the dc grid ride-through the fault/disturbance. Nevertheless, other means of handling dc faults which do not involve low modulation index operation are discussed later in this chapter.

For a generic Q2LC design, (3-13) implies that the fundamental voltage magnitude $v_{of}$ can be changed by varying the dwell time $T_d$. As has been shown in Figure 3-8, this change is limited except for higher values of $N_s$ and $f_s$. However, further reduction of $v_{of}$ can be produced by sequencing some of the cells per arm at a dwell time $T_{dm}$ higher than $T_d$ (Figure 5-6a). Equations (3-16) and (3-17) can be applied to each set of cells having the same dwell time then summing to produce the fundamental output voltage and harmonic magnitudes. Clearly, the multi-slope waveform requires sizing the capacitance of all cells to the highest dwell time. Double or triple slope waveform can be produced to extend the control range and eliminate high order harmonics; however; on the expense of larger cell capacitors. ‘Slope modulation’ may be considered the primary modulation index control technique. Additional auxiliary techniques may be employed in conjunction with slope modulation for a wider control range, if needed.

A number of auxiliary techniques will be briefly analysed. These are denoted 'inter-switching modulation', 'clamp modulation', and the conventional 'phase shift modulation'. Figure 5-6b and Figure 5-6c display the modulated Q2LC output voltage (with $m < 1$) for two modulation techniques. Note that only auxiliary techniques – not the slope modulation – are regarded to act upon the value of $m_c$ in (3-13).

For expedience, the Q2LC will be used henceforth in this section to describe said auxiliary techniques although these can be utilized equally for any of the bridge configurations of Chapter 3 and Chapter 4.

### 5.2.1 Inter-switching modulation

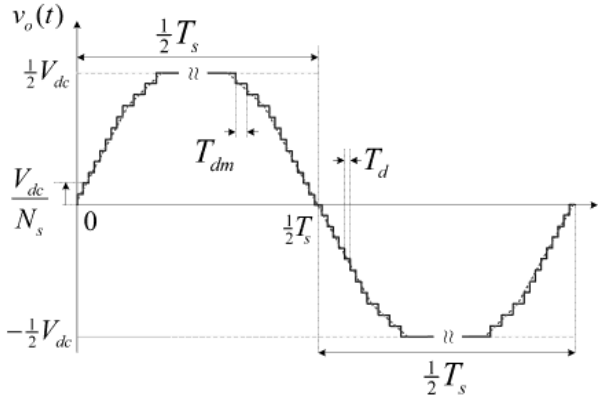
In the inter-switching modulation (Figure 5-6b), a controlled stepped dip is symmetrically introduced into the output voltage. The dip magnitude and time span are controlled to achieve the required modulation index. The dip magnitude is $N_m V_{dc}/N_s$ where $N_m$ is the number of dip steps ($N_m \leq ½N_s$). The dip time is $2N_m T_{dd}$ where $T_{dd}$ is the step dwell time. Using (3-16) and (3-17), the pu magnitude of the $k^{th}$ odd harmonic component of the inter-switching modulated output voltage $v_{o(k)}$ is given in (5-16). Equation (5-16) is valid for single-leg, H-bridge and three-phase Q2LC topologies.

$$V_{o(k)}^{pu} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{N_s}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)(\eta - \chi) & N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ \frac{2}{N_s}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)(\lambda - \chi) & N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{cases} \tag{5-16}$$

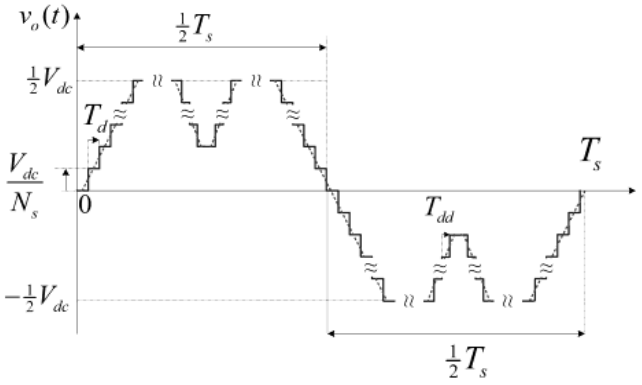
where

$$\chi = \sum_{i}^{N_m - 1} \sin\left(kT_{dd}\omega_s\left(N_m - i\right)\right) \tag{5-17}$$

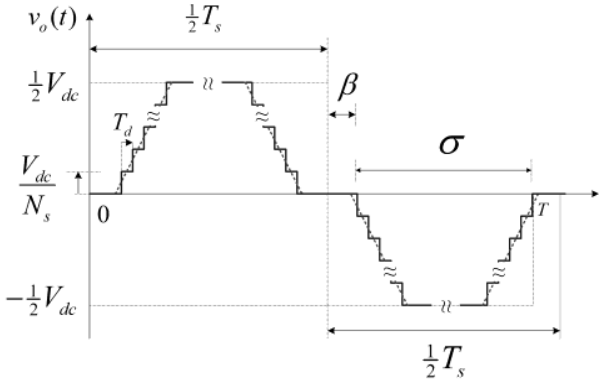
The base value for each harmonic pu magnitude is $2V_{dc}/k\pi$ ($4V_{dc}/k\pi$ for the single phase H-bridge) where $k$ is the harmonic order ($k \in 2Z^*+1$). To achieve a certain value of $m_c$, the following condition must apply to (5-16):




(a)




(b)




(c)

Figure 5-6 Modulated Q2LC ac pole-to-ground voltage. (a) Multi-slope trapezoid, (b) inter-switching modulation, and (c) phase-shift modulation

$$\chi\big|_{k=1} = \begin{cases} (1-m_c)\,\eta\big|_{k=1} & N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ (1-m_c)\,\lambda\big|_{k=1} & N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{cases} \tag{5-18}$$

The condition in (5-18) can be realized by controllers. For example, with one of the two parameters $N_m$ and $T_{dd}$ held constant, a control loop can vary the other parameter within a programmed range in order to follow the $m_c$ command. Once the first control parameter reaches its limit with a non-zero $m_c$ error, a second control loop is activated to vary the other parameter until the mc command is satisfied (i.e., a zero $m_c$ error is produced). The $m_c$ command itself is the output of a current control loop.

### 5.2.2 Clamp modulation

The clamp modulation method is similar to conventional MMC modulation index control [40], where the output voltage peaks at $\pm m_c V_{op}$ where $V_{op} = ½V_{dc}$ for a single-leg or a three-phase Q2LC and $V_{op} = V_{dc}$ for an H-bridge Q2LC. For the latter structure, number of cells per arm in on state required to achieve a certain $m_c$ is given by (5-19) over a cycle. In (5-19), $\|x\|$ is the value of $x$ rounded to the nearest integer. From (5-19) in conjunction with (3-3) one can note that at least one cell per arm must remain in on-state such that $m_c < 1$. This implies that load current flows continuously through the inserted capacitor(s); thus a large cell capacitance is needed to retain acceptable voltage ripple. The required capacitance increase may be significant even if the inserted cells per arm are cycled during operation. Furthermore, the values the modulation index can take are discrete, thus reducing controllability.

$$N_{Yon}(t) = \begin{cases} \|N_s(1-m_c)\| + \sum_{i}^{\|N_s(2m_c-1)-1\|} u(t-iT_d), & 0 \le t < \|N_s(2m_c-1)-1\|T_d \\ \|m_c N_s\| & \|N_s(2m_c-1)-1\|T_d \le t < ½T_s \\ \|m_c N_s\| - \sum_{i}^{\|N_s(2m_c-1)-1\|} u(t-[½T_s+iT_d]), & ½T_s \le t < ½T_s + \|N_s(2m_c-1)-1\|T_d \\ \|N_s(1-m_c)\|, & ½T_s + \|N_s(2m_c-1)-1\|T_d + \le t < T_s \end{cases} \tag{5-19}$$

### 5.2.3 Phase shift modulation

In phase-shift modulation (Figure 5-6c), a phase shift $\beta > T_t$ is inserted between the switching functions $N_{Yon}(t)$ of the two legs of the single phase H-bridge Q2LC such that they are no longer complementary. This introduces zero-volt intervals in each output voltage half cycle [77]. Zero-volt intervals can be inserted in the ac pole voltage of single-leg or multi-phase Q2LCs by splitting the transit period $T_t$ into two halves with a time delay angle $2\beta$. This way ac pole voltage transits to zero in $1/2T_t$, where it remains for an angle $2\ \beta$ (without transition of cells states), then transits to the other dc rail voltage in $1/2T_t$. However, the range of $\beta$ will be narrower than in an H-bridge converter to avoid significant increase of cell capacitance. Using (3-16) and (3-17), for a phase shift of $\beta = ½\ (\pi - \sigma)$, $v_{o(k)}{}^{pu}$ can be expressed as in (5-20) and (5-21), which holds for single-leg, H-bridge and multi-phase Q2LC designs.

$$v_{o(k)}^{pu} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2}{N_s}\sin\left(\dfrac{k\pi}{2}\right)\varsigma & N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ \dfrac{2}{N_s}\sin\left(\dfrac{k\pi}{2}\right)\psi & N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{cases} \tag{5-20}$$

where;

$$\begin{aligned} \varsigma &= \sum_{i \in 2Z^* + 1}^{N_s - 1} \sin\left(½k\left[\sigma - iT_d\omega_s\right]\right) \\ \psi &= \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{i \in 2Z^+}^{N_s - 1} \sin\left(½k\left[\sigma - iT_d\omega_s\right]\right) \end{aligned} \tag{5-21}$$

The reader may refer to section 3.2.3 for a better link between $\eta$ and $\varsigma$. Using (3-16), (3-17), (5-20), and (5-21), the phase shift angle required to produce a certain value of $m_c$ must satisfy the condition in (5-22).

$$\eta\big|_{k=1} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{m_c}\varsigma\big|_{k=1} & N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ \dfrac{1}{m_c}\psi\big|_{k=1} & N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{cases} \tag{5-22}$$

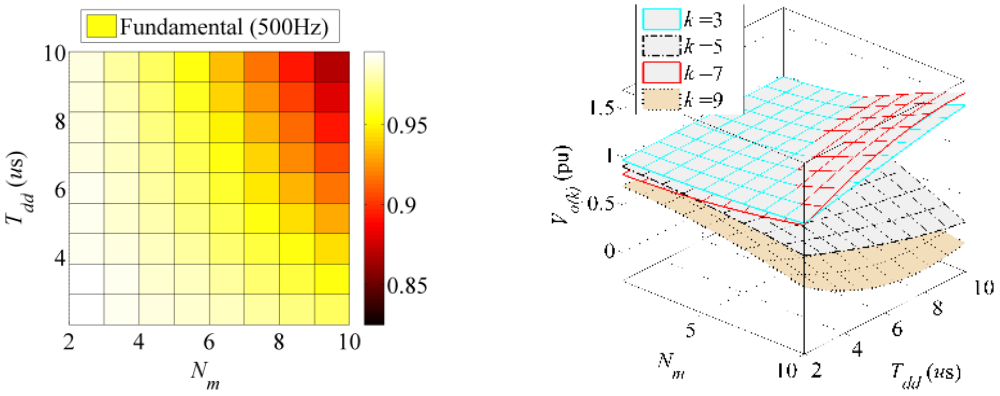
$v_{o(k)}{}^{pu}$ is graphed in Figure 5-7 for inter-switching modulation and phase-shift modulation. Both graphs are developed with a Q2LC design where $T_d$ = 5μs, $N_s$ = 20 and $\omega_s$ = 1000π rad/s. These values result in a 1.5% drop in fundamental output voltage with no further modulation technique applied (*i.e.* $m_c$ = 1). For this design, inter-switching modulation employed with $T_{dd}$ = 10μs and $N_m$ = ½$N_s$ = 10 achieves a fundamental modulation index of about $m_c$ = 0.7. Increasing $T_{dd}$ generates further reductions, but at the expense of larger cell capacitances and switching losses. A study of the output waveform harmonic content (particularly low order harmonics) is important for power flow and transformer loss analyses. As seen in Figure 5-7 , the 3rd and 7th harmonic voltages may rise above 1 pu over some range; whereas the 5th and 9th remain below their base values over the shown range.

As introduced previously, the base value of each harmonic voltage is its corresponding value in a square wave of the same frequency and magnitude. In Figure 5-2b, the fundamental voltage decreases while increasing $\beta$. The same occurs to the 3rd harmonic which reverses polarity for $\beta > 26°$. Other main harmonic components are less than their base values over the considered range. At $\beta$ = 0 (*i.e.* no phase-shift modulation), the per unit values of harmonic voltages are also below 1 pu due to the trapezoidal shape.

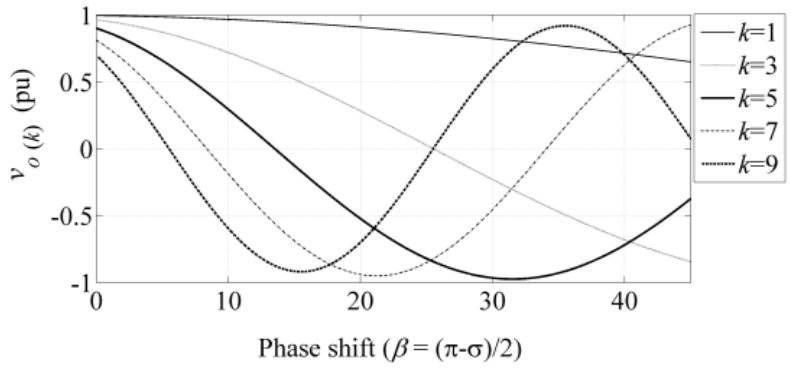
Theoretically, all three auxiliary modulation techniques can concurrently control the output voltage in conjunction with slope modulation. Practically, in terms of cell capacitance requirement, inter-switching, and phase-shift modulation techniques may be favoured over clamp modulation. In view of operation constraints, a combination of phase shifting and inter-switching techniques will provide further flexibility for optimizing both transformer losses and the zero-voltage switching range. When inter-switching and phase-shift modulation techniques are merged, (5-16) – (5-18) evolve to (5-23) and (5-24), respectively.

$$v_{o(k)}^{pu} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{N_s}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)(\varsigma - \chi) & N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ \frac{2}{N_s}\sin\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)(\psi - \chi) & N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{cases} \tag{5-23}$$

$$\chi\big|_{k=1} = \begin{cases} (1-m_c)\varsigma\big|_{k=1} & N_s \in 2Z^+ \\ (1-m_c)\psi\big|_{k=1} & N_s \in 2Z^+ + 1 \end{cases} \tag{5-24}$$




(a)




(b)

Figure 5-7 Magnitudes of harmonic components of the Q2LC output voltage at $T_d$ = 5μs, $N_s$ = 20, and $f_s$ = 500 Hz, with (a) inter-switching modulation, and (b) Phase-shift modulation.

Equations (5-23) and (5-24) offer at least five degrees of freedom for output voltage modulation design, namely; $N_s$, $N_m$, $T_d$, $T_{dd}$ and σ. An extra degree of freedom is implicitly present due to the variable dwell time of the slope modulation mode. Direct design constraints are cell capacitance size, switching losses, and ac transformer design and losses.

## 5.3 Soft switching characteristics

Soft switching characteristics of two-level DAB converter bridges have been brieflz discussed in section 2.3. Referring to section 2.3, the soft switching properties of quasi-two level bridges (i.e., the Q2LC, CTB, PTAC, and TAC bridges) can be investigated. For expedience, the Q2LC case will be studied and then distinction to PTAC and TAC bridges cases will be highlighted.

With three states, a total of six different state transitions between on, off and idle can take place in the half-bridge cell of an Q2LC. During state transition, the voltage and current of each IGBT/diode pair in the cell depends on the direction of current flow through the cell terminals. The cell terminal current is considered positive if it flows so as to charge the capacitor. Figure 5-8 shows all possible cell state transitions of a half-bridge cell. Recalling from section 2.1, an IGBT is soft switched when it turns on or off while its antiparallel diode conducts current.

With positive terminal current (Figure 5-8a), a cell state transition from off to on forces the main IGBT *S* to interrupt current flow (hard turn-off). The current forces the diode *D'* to conduct. Thus the auxiliary IGBT *S'* turns on after the dead time $T_{DB}$ with its antiparallel diode conducting (soft turn-on). For the same terminal current direction, when the cell state changes from on to off, *S'* undergoes soft turn-off while *S* is hard-switched. Once *S* turns on, *D'* becomes reverse-biased and a short reverse recovery time is necessary. Therefore *D'* must be a fast-recovery diode.

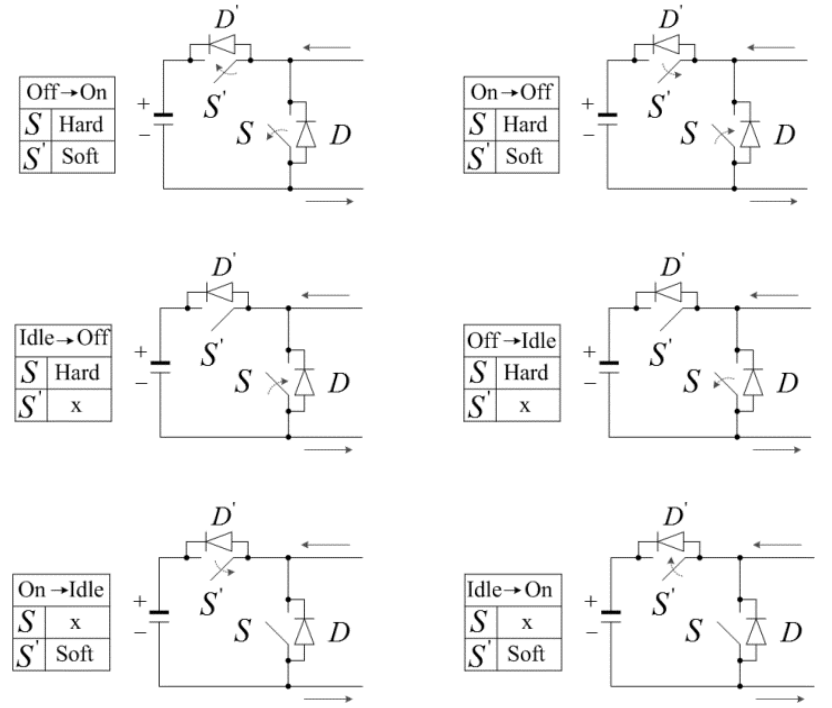
When the cell switches between on and off states under negative current, *S* turns on and off under zero voltage and current while *S'* is hard-switched. When *S'* turns on, *D* becomes reverse biased and must be a fast recovery device. When a cell transits between on and idle states, only the auxiliary IGBT *S'* is involved, and is hard-switched under negative current and soft-switched with positive current, as shown in Figure 5-8. Similarly, when switching between idle and off states, only the main IGBT *S* is involved, and it undergoes soft-switching under negative current and hard-switching with positive current. Fast-recovery characteristics are required for both antiparallel diodes (*D'* for transit from idle to off state with positive current and *D* for transit from idle to on with negative current).

As briefed in section 2.3, the soft turn-on capability is of pivotal importance for switching loss curtailment [99]. Hard turn-off losses can be reduced using passive lossless snubbers (capacitive snubbers), although it is favourable to avoid any form of discrete snubbing in order to reduce complexity and costs. Therefore, an augmented soft-turn off feature is undoubtedly an advantage to the Q2LC design. Observe that a lossless capacitive snubber can be used rather than an RC or RCD snubber only when device soft-turn on is ensured.

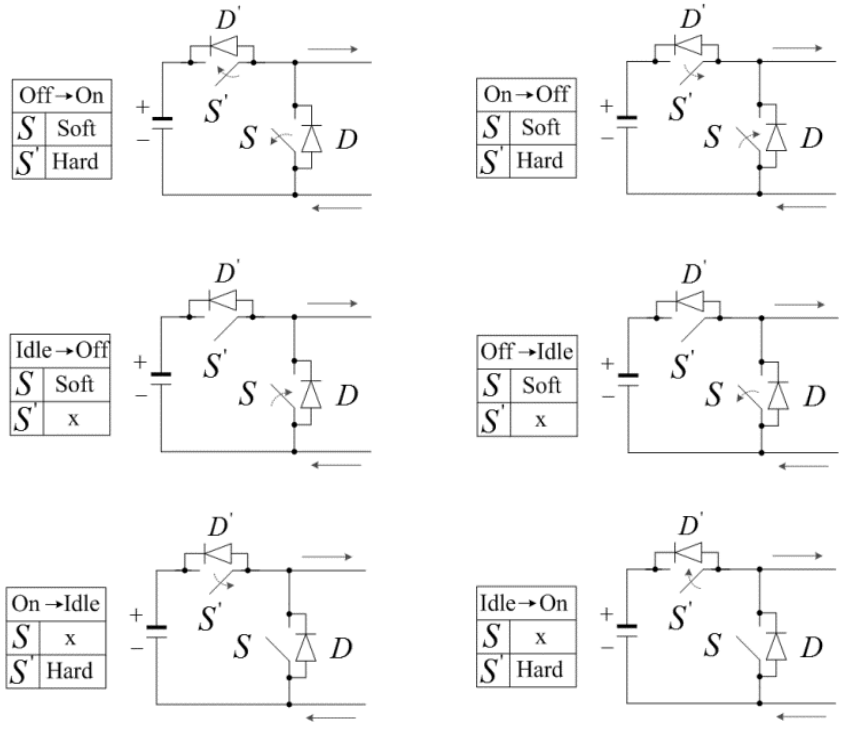
In a Q2LC phase leg, the switching-off arm – in which cells states transit sequentially from off to on – experiences positive current flow when the ac pole current zero-crossing instant lags that of the ac pole voltage by an angle $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$ , implying inductive loading. Conversely, it experiences negative current flow when the ac pole current zero crossing instant leads that of the ac pole voltage by an angle $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$, implying capacitive loading. Consequently, inductive loading will cause all auxiliary IGBTs of the switching-off arms to turn-on with zero voltage and current in a lossless manner. With capacitive loading, these IGBTs will hard turn-on, increasing switching losses.

The switching losses of the switching-on arm(s) – in which cells switch sequentially to the off state – depend on the switching sequence. With the CS sequence, the switching-on arm has all cells switching sequentially from on to off state. This state transition takes place with some current flow in the arm. In case of inductive loading with $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$, this current flow is in the discharging direction of cells capacitors. Thus the power path IGBTs of the switching-on arms experience soft turn-on, while the auxiliary IGBTs have a lossy turn-off, as displayed in Figure 5-8. The direction of current flow in the switching-on arm(s) will be positive for capacitive loading with $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$, resulting in hard turn-on of the main path IGBTs and soft turn-off of the auxiliary IGBTs.

With the NCS sequence, current flows in the IGBT/diode pairs of the switching-on arm(s) only when the last cell (cell subgroup) transits from the idle to off state. This way, soft turn-on is ensured for at least $N_s - 1$ power path IGBTs in each switching-on arm regardless of the loading conditions. Note that transition of cells states from on to idle in the same arm – a period $T_i$ before the output voltage transition – occurs




(a)




(b)

Figure 5-8 All possible state transitions of a half-bridge Q2LC cell with (a) Positive (charging) current, and (b) Negative (discharging) current.

at zero current with all the load current flowing in the other arm of the phase leg. In Figure 5-8, the state transitions from off to idle and from idle to on are irrelevant to Q2LCs and other equivalent configurations employed in DAB applications and operating under the presented switching sequences.

Table 5-2 summarizes the switching characteristics explained above, with the improvements offered by NCS over CS shaded in grey. As Table 5-2 confirms, NCS sequence will generate lower switching losses under capacitive loading than with the CS sequence. Furthermore, the turn-off losses of the auxiliary IGBTs of the switching-on arm(s) under inductive loading are not present with the NCS sequence. A further study is needed to quantify the significance of the switching loss curtailment brought by NCS sequence with regard to the extra common-mode oscillation and capacitor voltage ripple it triggers as compared to the CS sequence.

So far, one can conclude that regardless of the switching pattern, inductive loading is favoured for an Q2LC in terms of switching losses. This characteristic is used to define the soft-switching region for a Q2LC-based DAB. It will be illustrated with the aid of the space vector representation of the fundamental components of ac quantities, referred to primary (see Figure 5-9). Both Q2LCs will operate with $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$ (i.e., soft switched) as long as the ac current space vector lies within the shaded area representing an angular span of $\varphi - \omega_s T_t$. It follows that for both Q2LCs of a F2F dc-dc converter to operate soft switched, $\varphi \geq \omega_s T_t$ is an essential operation constraint. Additionally, the dc ratio for soft switching of both converters must lie within the boundary defined by (5-25) and (5-26);

$$\rho_h = \frac{4\pi - 3\omega_s T_t}{4\pi + 3\omega_s T_t - 6\varphi} \tag{5-25}$$

$$\rho_l = \frac{1}{\rho_h} \tag{5-26}$$

where $\rho_h$ and $\rho_l$ are the highest and lowest values of the dc ratio, respectively, which ensure soft-switched primary and secondary Q2LCs. Equations (5-25) and (5-26) can be derived by setting $i_p(\theta = \omega_s T_t) = 0$ and $i_p(\theta = \varphi) = 0$. The soft switching boundary defined above is graphed in Figure 5-9b and Figure 5-9c for different values of load angle, dwell time, and fundamental frequency. The area bounded by each curve represents the soft switching region for the respective operating conditions.

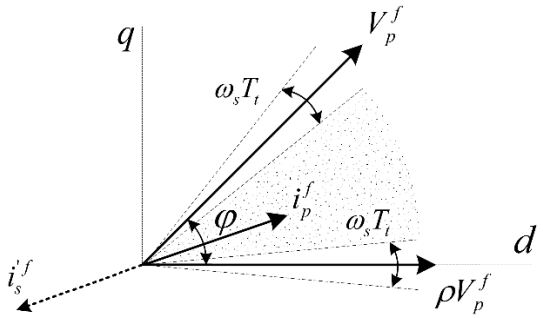
TABLE 5-2

COMPARISON OF SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS UNDER DIFFERENT SWITCHING SEQUENCES [↓ = OFF , ↑ = ON ]

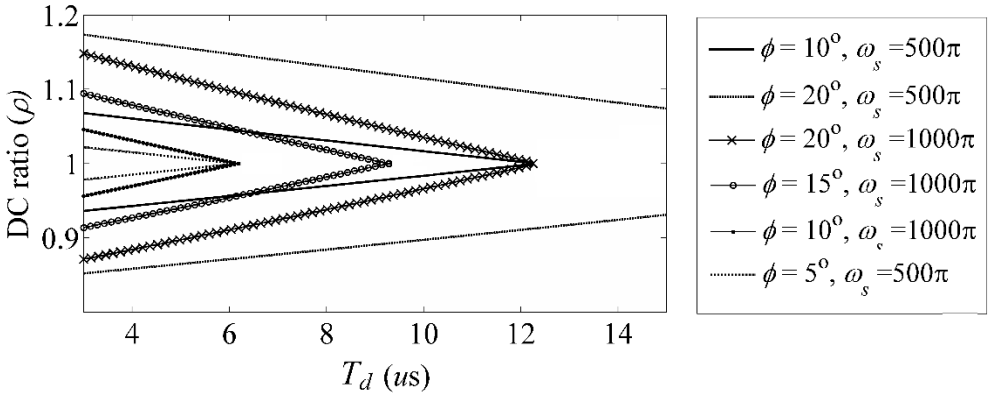
| Loading | | Inductive $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$ | | Capacitive $\upsilon \geq \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$ | | Inductive $\upsilon < \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$ | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Switching sequence | | CS (SCS) | NCS (SNCS) | CS (SCS) | NCS (SNCS) | CS (SCS) | | NCS (NSCS) | |
| | | | | | | Before $i_{load}$ zero crossing | After $i_{load}$ zero crossing | Before $i_{load}$ zero crossing | After $i_{load}$ zero crossing |
| Switching off arms (cells switching to on state) | Main IGBTs | Hard↓ | Hard↓ | Soft↓ | Soft↓ | Similar to CS (SCS) with inductive loading | Similar to CS (SCS) with capacitive loading | Similar to NCS (SNCS) with inductive loading | Similar to NCS (SNCS) with capacitive loading |
| | Aux. IGBTs | Soft↑ | Soft↑ | Hard↑ | Hard↑ | | | | |
| Switching on arms (cells switching to off state) | Main IGBTs | Soft↑ | Soft↑ | Hard↑ | Soft↑[2] | | | | |
| | Aux. IGBTs | Hard↓[1] | No switching | Soft↓ | No switching | | | | |

[1] Except first cell to switch, when dc side voltage is stable and with low ripple.

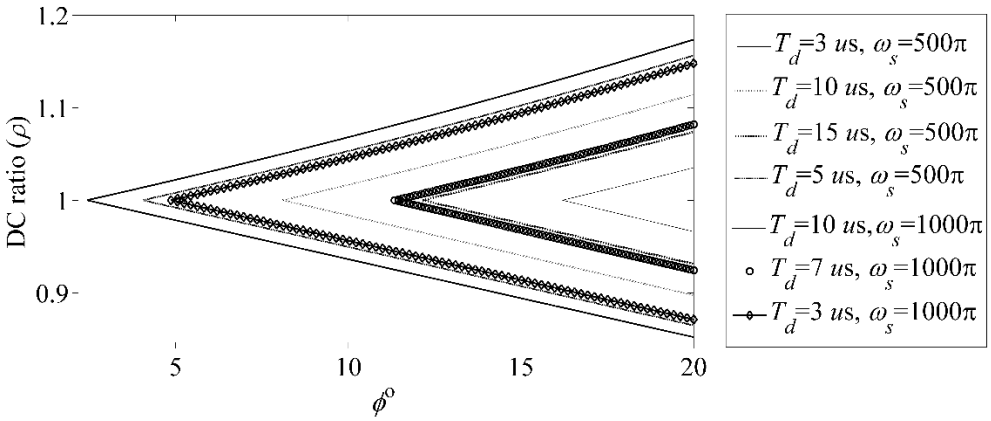
[2] Except last cell to switch.




(a)




(b)




(c)

Figure 5-9 (a) Phasor diagram representing ac voltages and currents of a Q2LC-based DAB. [Superscript *f* denotes fundamental component], (b) equation (25) plotted against dwell time, and (c) equation (25) plotted against load angle.

Alternatively, if the ac current vector lies within the angle $\omega_s T_t$ surrounding the voltage space vector of either bridge (see Figure 5-9a), this bridge will operate in

partial soft-switching, with one or more cells per arm switching under capacitive loading (*i.e.* $\upsilon < \frac{1}{2}\omega_s T_t$). In Figure 5-9, an extended region including the partial soft switching areas (an angle $\varphi + \omega_s T_t$) can also be defined. In this region a slightly higher range of dc ratio than that plotted in Figure 5-9b and Figure 5-9c is possible. This region is bounded by $\varphi + \omega_s T_t$, $i_p(0) = 0$, and $i_p(\theta = \varphi + \omega_s T_t) = 0$, yielding the dc ratio boundary values given by (5-27) and (5-28).

$$\rho_h = \frac{4\pi - 3\omega_s T_t}{4\pi - 3\omega_s T_t - 6\varphi} \tag{5-27}$$

$$\rho_l = \frac{1}{\rho_h} \tag{5-28}$$

## 5.4 Semiconductor effort (Total VA rating) and energy storage capacity

The installed apparent power in each of the converter types of Chapter 3 and Chapter 4, also known as the semiconductor effort, can be calculated with satisfactory approximation given device voltages and current ratings $V_d$ and $I_d$, respectively. $V_d$ is equal to nominal cell voltage ($V_{dc}/N$). For instance, the semiconductor effort of one IGBT/diode pair module is $V_d I_d$. The purpose here is to provide a figure of merit with respect to the relative semiconductor area installed in each type of converter, rather than quantify the precise amount/number of power electronics components installed in each type of converter with consideration of reliability and redundancy.

Note that in Chapter 3 and Chapter 4 auxiliary/chain-link devices have been rated to $\frac{1}{3}I_d$ (for instance, the auxiliary IGBTs of the Q2LC). Also the semiconductor area of clamp diodes of the MP-TAC and the MTAC are neglected since they conduct only small residual currents to achieve the clamping function; thus they require trivial current rating with respect to other devices in the MTAC/MP-TAC submodule. Nevertheless, it may be the case that the minimum current rating of off-the-shelf high voltage avalanche diodes is several hundreds of amperes. Although this would be an over design as for said clamping function, it may be practically unavoidable. The

current analysis, however, reflect only the theoretical figure of merit with respect to relative semiconductor effort of each converter type.

Table 5-3 summarizes the semiconductor effort of each converter relative to the standard three phase two-level converter of same voltage and power rating. It is evident that TAC configurations offer the lowest semiconductor effort with respect to the equivalent standard two-level converter.

With reference to Table 5-3, the semiconductor effort of the considered F2F dc-dc converter configurations can be calculated. This will be $14NV_dI_d$ for a TAC-based F2F converter, $16NV_dI_d$ when CTB-based/Q2LC-based/P-TAC-based F2F converter. The semiconductor effort figure will be $15NV_dI_d$ when one side is a TAC and the other is CTB/Q2LC/P-TAC. These values are independent of the ac transformer turns ratio since the primary and secondary VI product is constant.

TABLE 5-3

SEMICONDUCTOR EFFORT (TOTAL VA RATING) OF THE THREE TYPES OF CONVERTERS AND THE TWO-LEVEL COUNTERPART

| Converter | Semiconductor effort | Modulation |
|---|---|---|
| Two-level | $6NV_dI_d$ | Square |
| Q2LC | $6NV_dI_d + 6NV_d \times \frac{1}{3}I_d = 8NV_dI_d$ | Trapezoidal |
| CTB | $6NV_dI_d + 3\times4\times N\times\frac{1}{2}V_d\times\frac{1}{3}I_d = 8NV_dI_d$ | Trapezoidal |
| P-TAC (AP-TAC/SP-TAC/MP-TAC) | $6NV_dI_d + 3\times2\times N\times V_d\times\frac{1}{3}I_d = 8NV_dI_d$ | Trapezoidal |
| TAC (ATAC/ STAC/ MTAC) | $6NV_dI_d + 3\times N\times V_d\times\frac{1}{3}I_d = 7NV_dI_d$ | Trapezoidal |

The above figures confirm a significant semiconductor effort advantage for the considered F2F dc-dc converter configurations with trapezoidal operation relative to the MMC-based F2F connection with sinusoidal operation. An approximation of the latter's semiconductor effort can amount to $12NV_dI_d$ per dc/ac converter (i.e. $24NV_dI_d$ in total) assuming half-bridge cells are employed. This approximated figure ignores circulating arm currents in each MMC and the ratio between fundamental components of trapezoidal and sinusoidal ac voltage waveforms when synthesized from the same dc-side voltage. One can conclude that an MMC-based F2F dc-dc converter is significantly more demanding, semiconductor-wise, than trapezoidal-operated F2F dc-dc converter counterparts, which promises a considerable reduction of power electronics cost.

The installed energy storage capacity in each converter can be quantified using (3-38). It can be observed from (4-7) and (4-8) that ATAC subgroup capacitance is half that of the Q2LC, which is in turn half that of the CTB according to section 4.1.2. It has also been shown in Chapter 4 that AP-TAC subgroup capacitance is the same as an equivalent ATAC. It has also been shown that the subgroup capacitance requirement in the SP-TAC, MP-TAC, STAC, and MTAC is roughly half that of the ATAC.

The relative installed energy storage in each of the above converters can be calculated as in Table 5-4. The total energy storage in each converter, however, must account for other factors. For instance, cell capacitance may be slightly oversized to allow delivery of gating power for cell devices, or to contribute to energy buffering during transient operation particularly dc voltage swells resulting from ac voltage dips or faults.

From Tables 5-3 and 5-4, one can conclude that the relative semiconductor effort and installed storage capacity may give TAC structures, particularly the STAC and MTAC, a capital cost advantage over the other counterparts for the considered dc grid application.

TABLE 5-4
RELATIVE ENERGY STORAGE IN THE CONSIDERED CONVERTERS WHEN EMPLOYED IN A F2F DC-DC CONVERTER UNDER THE SAME OPERATING CONDITIONS

| Three-phase converter | Required energy storage | % |
|---|---|---|
| Q2LC | $3C_g(V_{dc})^2/N_s$ | 100 |
| CTB | $0.75C_g(V_{dc})^2/N_s$ | 25 |
| AP-TAC/ATAC | $0.75C_g(V_{dc})^2/N_s$ | 25 |
| SP-TAC/ MP-TAC/ STAC/ MTAC | $0.375C_g(V_{dc})^2/N_s$ | 12.5 |

## 5.5 Conduction losses

For $\varphi \geq \omega_s T_t$ both converters of a F2F dc-dc converter are inductively loaded and, consequently, all HB and FB cell power switches will exhibit soft turn on and hard turn off, as detailed in section 5.3. This property holds for all the considered converter types. Turn-off switching losses can be significantly curtailed by lossless capacitive snubbers [72]. Hence, the converters will be considered offering negligible overall switching losses, given also the zero-voltage switching property of bi-state arms and director valves, where present.

The conduction power loss in a solid-state switching device is;

$$P_{loss} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} i_d(t)\left[V_o + R_{on} i_d(t)\right]dt = V_o I_{d,av} + R_{on} I_{d,rms}^2 \qquad (5\text{-}29)$$

Where $i_d(t)$, $R_{on}$, and $V_o$ are the device current, on-state resistance, and the threshold voltage, respectively. Subscripts *av* and *rms* refer to average and RMS values, respectively. Equation (5-37) can be used to obtain the antiparallel-diode conduction loss as well. Due to the pulsed current in auxiliary circuits of the TAC/Q2LC HB

cells and in CTB chain-links, the average and RMS auxiliary current values over the fundamental cycle are trivial, and the overall converter conduction losses will be dominated by the on-state losses in cells power-path switches, bi state arms, or director valves. Also, it can be observed that in a F2F dc-dc converter, current flow in antiparallel-diodes of the power feeding (sending) bridge (i.e. primary side converter in Figure 3.16) takes place mainly during the voltage transition interval, leading to negligible average and RMS diode currents; hence, negligible antiparallel-diode conduction loss in cells power-path switches, bi state arms, or director valves. The above assumptions can be used to compare semiconductor losses among the considered converter types.

The average and RMS values of arm/director valve current can be developed with good approximation using (3-37a) at $\gamma_r = 1$ and $\rho = 1$ while neglecting the parabolic sections of arm current profile. Based on this, the primary side RMS arm current in the F2F dc-dc converter of Figure 3-16 is calculated as in (5-30)

$$i_p^{RMS} = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_0^{\pi/3} \left( \frac{1}{2} i_p^{pk} \right)^2 dt + \int_{\pi/3}^{2\pi/3} \left( i_p^{pk} \right)^2 dt + \int_{2\pi/3}^{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{2} i_p^{pk} \right)^2 dt \right) \right)^{1/2} \tag{5-30}$$

Reducing (5-30) and using (3-37a), the RMS arm current in the primary and secondary bridges is;

$$i_p^{RMS} = \frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s L_s} \quad , \quad i_s^{RMS} = \frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{3\rho a\omega_s L_s} \tag{5-31}$$

In a similar fashion, the average arm current of primary and secondary bridges can be calculated as given in (5-32

$$i_p^{AVG} = \frac{2V_{dcp}\varphi}{9\omega_s L_s} \quad , \quad i_s^{AVG} = \frac{2V_{dcp}\varphi}{9\rho a\omega_s L_s} \tag{5-32}$$

The approximate conduction loss in the primary side can thus be developed using (5-37) – (5-32) as in (5-33) for the primary side bridge being CTB, TAC, P-TAC or Q2LC.

$$P_{loss,p} = \frac{2NV_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B}\frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{\omega_s L_s}\right) \tag{5-33}$$

A and B are given in Table 5-5 for different bridge structures. In Table 5-3, superscripts denote device type.

TABLE 5-5

PARAMETERS A AND B OF EQUATION (5-33) FOR DIFFERENT BRIDGES

| | CTB, ATAC, Q2LC | STAC/MTAC | MP-TAC |
|---|---|---|---|
| A | $2V_o^{IGBT}$ | $V_o^{IGBT} + V_o^{IGCT}$ | $2V_o^{IGCT}$ |
| B | $R_{on}^{IGBT}$ | $\frac{1}{2}(R_{on}^{IGBT} + R_{on}^{IGCT})$ | $R_{on}^{IGCT}$ |

It follows from (5-33) that the secondary bridge conduction losses are as given in (5-34).

$$P_{loss,s} = \frac{2NV_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s \rho a L_s}\left(\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B}\frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{\rho a \omega_s L_s}\right) \tag{5-34}$$

Using (5-33) and (5-34) at $\rho = 1$, the total conduction losses of a F2F dc-dc converter is;

$$P_{loss} = \frac{2NV_{dcp}\varphi}{3\omega_s a L_s}\left((a+1)\mathrm{A} + (1+\frac{1}{a^2})\mathrm{B}\frac{V_{dcp}\varphi}{\omega_s L_s}\right) \tag{5-35}$$

Equation (5-33) – (5-35) will be used to clarify the relative conduction losses among the considered bridge structures under the same operating conditions. Clearly, when the same IGBT devices are used in the three converter types, the conduction losses expressed by (5-33) – (5-35) are equal under the same operating conditions.

Table 5-6 presents a generic comparison between the considered converter structures of Chapter 3 and Chapter 4. It can be seen that while full modularity is ensured in Q2LC, MP-TAC, and MTAC, the MP-TAC may offer the lowest conduction losses should low-loss devices be employed. When IGBTs are utilized in all cells, director

valves or bi-state arms, there is no relative efficiency advantage among the considered converter structures.

TABLE 5-6
COMPARISON BETWEEN THE THREE CONVERTERS (PER UNIT VALUES NORMALIZED TO THE Q2LC)

| | Nº of levels | Semiconductor effort (pu) | Nº of capacitors (pu) | Capacitor voltage (pu) | Cell capacitance (pu) | Energy storage (pu) | Conduction loss (pu) | Conduction loss (pu) [IGCTs] | Modularity |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Q2LC | *N*+1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | modular |
| CTB | | 1 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 2 | 0.25 | 1 | 1 | hybrid |
| AP-TAC | | 1 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.5 | 0.25 | 1 | 1 | hybrid |
| SP-TAC | | 1 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.25 | 0.125 | 1 | 1 | hybrid |
| MP-TAC | | 1 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.25 | 0.125 | 1 | ≈0.75 | modular |
| ATAC | | 7/8 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.5 | 0.25 | 1 | 1 | hybrid |
| STAC | | 7/8 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.25 | 0.125 | 1 | 1 | hybrid |
| MTAC | | 7/8 | 0.5 | 1 | 0.25 | 0.125 | 1 | ≈0.85 | modular |

It is evident that TAC structures offer about 12.5% reduction in overall semiconductor effort with respect to an equivalent Q2LC, CTB or P-TAC. The MTAC may further offer a reduction in conduction losses as well should low-loss devices be used. With respect to energy storage capacity, Table 5-6 shows that symmetric TAC structures (MTAC/STAC) require the least relative energy storage capacity necessary for proper steady-state operation.

## 5.6 DC fault blocking capability of F2F dc-dc converters

### 5.6.1 Steady-state controllers

In simplifying the following analysis, the phase angle between the fundamental voltage space vectors of both bridges of a F2F dc-dc converter is the only degree of freedom considered for power flow control (no voltage magnitude modulation has been incorporated at this stage). Regardless of the internal structure of each bridge, bidirectional power flow control can be achieved by setting the voltage phase angle of one bridge as the reference (i.e., zero angle) and the control acts upon the phase angle of the other bridge to control the power flow through the F2F converter. The former bridge is denoted as the 'reference bridge' and the latter the '*voltage/power control bridge*', depending on what parameter it controls.

In a power control mode [see Figure 5-10(a)], the power reference $P_{dc}^*$ is compared to the measured power and the error signal is fed to a PI controller. The PI output is forwarded to a fast current controller which produces the required phase angle (δ) and voltage modulation index (m). Fast current control is important for a fine-tuned transient operation and to compensate for any asymmetry in transformer parameters. Since the current section is concerned mainly with dc fault blocking, details of the current controller are irrelevant and the discrete transfer function of the fast current control block is set to C(z) = 1 and the modulation index is fixed to $m = 1$. Also, ac transformer asymmetry is neglected. In the dc-voltage control mode, the outer power control loop is replaced with a voltage control loop, as in Figure 5-10(b), where the dc voltage reference $V_{dc}^*$ is produced by a droop controller or commanded by the operator (the output of a load flow scenario). In both control modes (the dc voltage

or active power), reactive power required by the ac transformer is shared between both converters, depending on δ and *m*.

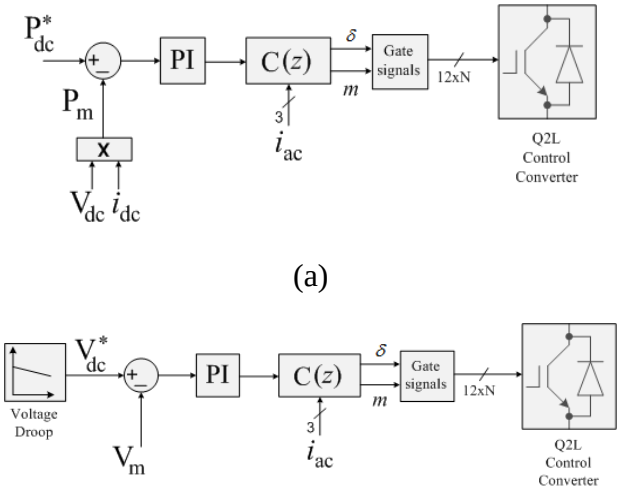



Figure 5-10 Generic control algorithm for the control converter of the F2F dc-dc converter. (a) Power flow control. (b) DC voltage control.

### 5.6.2 Operation under a dc fault

Regardless of the internal structure of each bridge, the configuration of the F2F dc-dc converter offers inherent dc fault isolation capability such that no dc circuit breaker will be needed at the dc node connecting the two HVDC lines. Consider the case of a multi-terminal HVDC grid within which two lines are connected using the considered dc-dc converter. A dc fault at one of the lines establishes a condition where the ac voltage of the bridge connected to the faulted line becomes higher than the dc voltage. The employed half-bridge chopper cells have no blocking capability; therefore, current will be fed to the fault through the dc-dc converter.

#### 5.6.2.1 Pole-to-ground dc fault

When said dc fault is a pole-to-ground fault, the dc voltage plummets to about ½$V_{dc}$ very quickly after fault inception. The imbalance between the ac link voltage and the dc link voltage forces the forward conduction of bypass diodes of HB cells in the

fault-side bridge and current rushes into the dc circuit in an uncontrolled rectification operation. This fault current quickly charges the capacitance-to-ground of the healthy pole up to $V_{dc}$ where control can be regained on the F2F dc-dc converter operation. The amount of fault energy flowing through the fault side bridge to charge the healthy pole depends primarily on line type and length. This energy will be higher for a dc cable than for an overhead line, since the charging capacitance of the former is higher than that of the latter. After this brief transient, the faulted dc line reaches a new steady state point where the full dc voltage is applied on the healthy pole, which leads in turn to continuous dc bias of $½V_{dc}$ on the fault-side ac transformer windings. This stress on the ac transformer and cable insulation continues until the fault is cleared or the dc circuit is disconnected.

#### 5.6.2.2 Pole-to-pole dc fault

Under a pole-to-pole dc fault, the faulted dc line capacitance discharges quickly and the dc voltage collapses. Likewise, control over the fault-side bridge is lost and uncontrolled rectifier operation commences where a destructive amount of current flows into the faulted dc circuit. As the latter's capacitance is bypassed by the fault, fault current must be externally suppressed for the fault to be cleared (in case of a temporary fault) or for the circuit to be de-energized for cable maintenance.

The uncontrolled flow of high fault current through the fault-side bridge under a pole-to-pole fault could be avoided if the dc-dc converter is able to sense the high current and act accordingly. Sensing of the fault current can be simply achieved using the installed arm current sensors necessary for the cell voltage balancing within the bridges. Once a pole-to-pole fault condition is sensed and a decision is made to interrupt the fault, one of three actions could be taken:

1- Control of the non-fault-side bridge alters or halts the switching pattern such that its ac-side output voltage is zero. This could be modulation index control or a command for all upper or lower arms to conduct concurrently.
2- All cells of both bridges are switched to the idle state.
3- The non-fault-side bridge reduces its modulation index, in an ac current control mode, manipulating its output ac voltage space vector such that the

current conducted through the fault-side converter free-wheeling diodes does not exceed a predefined limit.

As a result of either protective action, the fault is deprived of energy in feed from the dc-dc converter end quickly (the ac transformer stores trivial energy and thus resembles a weak ac link). For the non-faulted line connected to the other side of the dc-dc converter, the dc fault appears as an ac fault (low or zero ac voltage) where dc voltage stability becomes the primary issue, handled by voltage regulator terminals within the grid.

The ability of the non-fault-side converter to operate in current control mode, if needed, is supported by the flexibility of modulation index manipulation offered by the considered bridge configurations, as presented in section 5.2. In the second protection method, it is not a fault isolation requirement that that fault-side converter cells go idle. Actually, the energy infeed into the fault from the dc-dc converter end will be stopped by having only the non-fault-side converter idle. However, the fault-side converter going idle retains cell voltages, which may assist a smoother restoration of the faulted line once fault is cleared, as well as prevents cell capacitors from discharging into the fault, although their discharge will not feed a harmful amount of energy to the fault.

Clearly the fault isolation capability of the dc-dc converter offers no protection to the converter node at the other terminal of the faulted dc line. Additional protective action is needed (e.g. using dc circuit breaker DCCB). Once the fault is cleared, the line can be energized via the other terminal converter node. In the dc-dc converter, if the fault side bridge had the cell capacitors discharged into the fault, line restoration entails recharging them. However, due to the small capacitance size, this does not pose a burden on the system and will be seen by the other terminal converter node as an integral part of the distributed line capacitance.

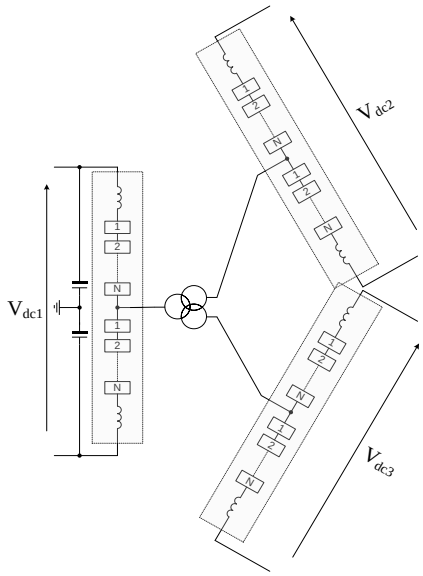



Figure 5-11 Three terminal F2F dc-dc converter.

When three HVDC lines at different voltage levels are to be connected using the 3-terminal dc-dc converter of Figure 5-11 , a dc fault in one of the lines will result in power flow interruption, or disturbance at best, in the other two healthy lines. That is, any of the above said protective actions taken by the dc-dc converter will involve the two non-fault-side bridges either going idle or restricting power flow in an ac current control mode. This way, the dc-dc converter is protected from damage, but the three lines involved will suffer either power flow disruption or interruption.

Therefore, either each of the bridges must offer dc fault blocking itself (e.g. by employing blocking cells such as the full-bridge cell [100]) or another way of connecting the three bridges, probably in combination with DCCBs, among the three lines is needed such that any line will be isolated using the protective action (method 1, 2 or 3) while power flow over the other two lines uninterrupted. This will be mandatory for system reliability by ensuring uninterrupted operation.

One way of realizing such connection is so called *ring dc node* which will be treated separately in section 5.7.

### 5.6.3 Three terminal HVdc test system

Figure 5- shows an HVdc test network which is used to assess the steady-state control and dc fault operation of the considered F2F dc-dc converter. In this three

terminal illustrative network, a main high voltage dc line $B_1$-$B_2$ of ±600kV is connected at point $B_3$ to a ±320kV DC line through a F2F dc-dc converter. Terminal grid side converter stations $VSC_1$, $VSC_2$ and $VSC_3$ are modeled as half-bridge modular multilevel converters, with all their basic controllers incorporated in Figure 2.12. The MMC average models highlighted in section 2.2.3.2 are used for stations $VSC_1$, $VSC_2$ and $VSC_3$.

For the ±600kV dc line, $VSC_2$ is configured to regulate the voltage at $B_2$, while $VSC_1$ controls active power and ac voltage at busbar $B_1$; therefore $VSC_2$ is rated at 1600MVA, higher than $VSC_1$. For the ±320kV line, $VSC_3$ controls active power flow and ac voltage magnitude at $B_4$, whereas dc voltage control is administered by the dc-dc converter control bridge $VSC_5$. The other bridge $VSC_4$ is the reference bridge. To ensure that the harmonic requirements are met at $B_1$, $B_2$ and $B_4$, converter terminals $VSC_1$, $VSC_2$ and $VSC_3$ are operated in typical multilevel mode. Each bridge of the F2F dc-dc converter station has a 20μF split capacitor connected across the DC rails. In this example, two-step trapezoidal ac voltages are produced in the dc-dc converter ac stage. Six-step trapezoidal waveforms could alternatively be utilized without affecting the conclusions of the performed simulation scenario. System parameters are shown in Figure 5-. Said test system is modelled in Matlab/Simulink®.

#### 5.6.3.1 System control in steady state

The simulation scenario is where power flows in the lines are 425 MW over line $B_3$-$B_4$, 715MW over line $B_1$-$B_3$, and 1140MW over line $B_3$-$B_2$, with directions shown in Figure 5-. In steady-state, the simulated grid has stable line voltages and steady power flows between all busbars. At $t$ = 1.7s, $VSC_3$ curtails the power injected to the grid at point $B_4$ down to 355MW within 0.4s. Figure 5- shows the dc grid response to the power reference change at $VSC_3$. The dc voltage controllers quickly regulate the dc voltage at each line with brief 0.03% and 0.025% dips in the ±320kV and ±600kV dc voltages lines, respectively. The created power imbalance is taken up smoothly and the grid returns quickly to steady state operation at a new operating point. In Figure 5-(b), both voltages are measured near the F2F dc-dc converter station dc terminals.

A simulated fault scenario is when the test three-terminal dc grid of Figure 5- encounters a pole-to-pole fault at $t$ =1.5s in line $B_3$-$B_4$ at a distance of 3 km from the dc-dc converter station. Each grid side converter station is equipped with ac circuit breakers which are modeled to open the circuit at the first ac current zero crossing after the dc side current exceeds 1.2pu and the dc voltage drops below 0.7pu, both with reference to station's nominal dc current and voltage ratings. The slow mechanical time constant of an ac circuit breaker is considered, with a 40ms delay in tripping action modeled for every ac circuit breaker. Each grid side converter blocks its switches when said dc current and voltage tolerances are exceeded. Although in a real system more sophisticated fault detection and protection discrimination algorithms would be utilized, these will not be considered for the grid side converter stations in the test HVdc system model for expedience. For the dc-dc converter, 500μs detection and protection discrimination delay will be accounted for in the model.

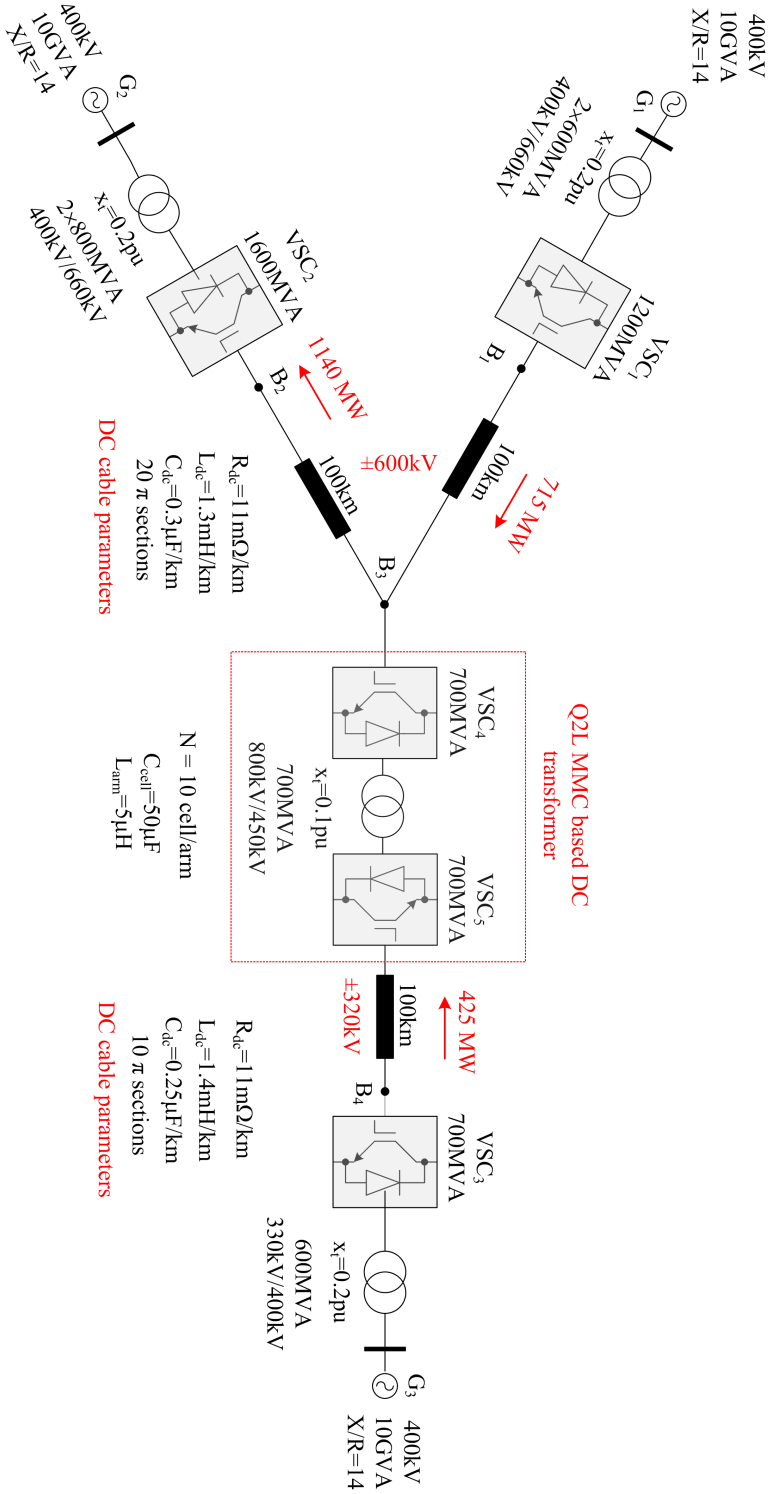


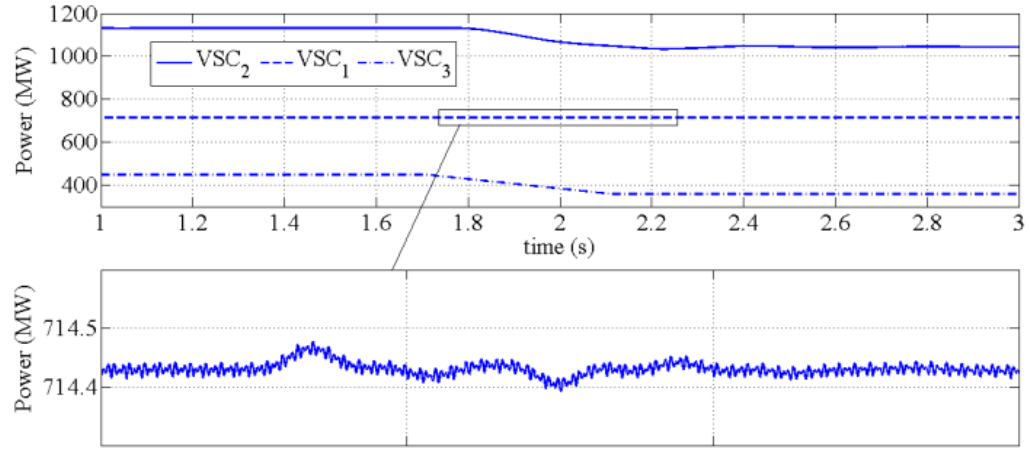

Figure 5-12 Three terminal HVdc test system.

The dc-dc converter is equipped with an ac circuit breaker at the low voltage side of the ac coupling transformer for backup, as well as an off-load isolation switch at each dc side, connected between the each dc rail and the respective pole cable.

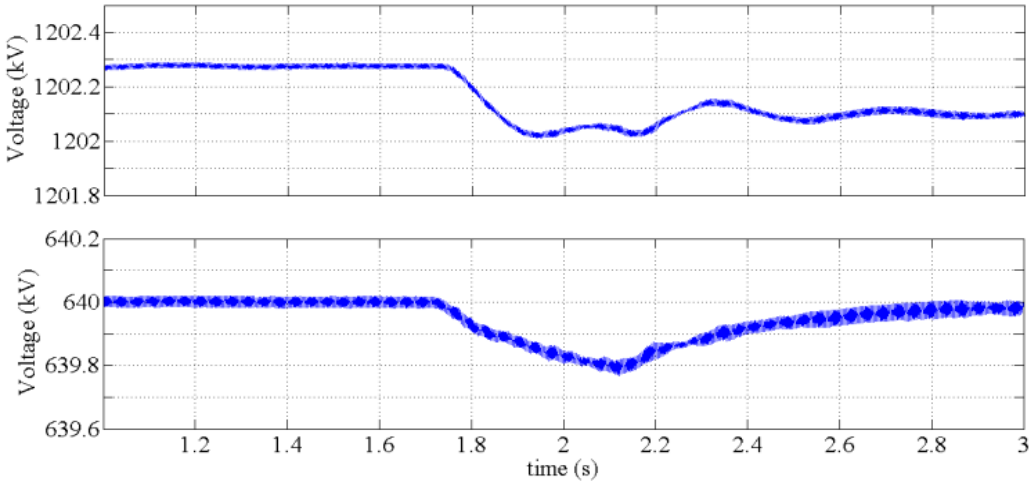
Data collected from two simulation runs are plotted in Figure 5-. In the first run, dc-dc converter bridges continue operation under fault without blocking their IGBTs. In this case, the fault protection, as far as the dc-dc converter is concerned, is the sole responsibility of its 40ms-delayed ac circuit breaker. The ac breaker is triggered when the ac current is higher than 1.2pu and the dc voltage drops below 0.7pu. In the second simulation case, both dc-dc converter bridges block their IGBTs when the dc current and voltage go beyond the indicated thresholds.

When the dc-dc converters are not blocked, the fault current leaps to 18kA in 4ms, as measured from the dc-dc converter end. Concurrently, line $B_3$-$B_4$ voltage drops to zero within about 2ms, as seen from dc-dc converter end. Both dc voltage and fault current encounter oscillations due to the distributed impedance of the line.

All cell capacitors of the control converter (fault-side converter) discharge their energy into the fault, as does the low voltage side dc-link split capacitor. At the other end of line $B_3$-$B_4$, grid side converter station $VSC_3$ encounters high fault currents both in the ac and dc sides. Although all IGBTs of $VSC_3$ were immediately blocked, dc fault current of 16kA freewheels in the cell diodes until its ac circuit breaker interrupts all ac phase currents in about 42ms. During this time the grid side converters at both ends of line $B_1$-$B_2$ do not encounter any high currents. The dc line voltage undergoes a shallow dip mainly due to the sudden interruption of power in-feed from line $B_3$-$B_4$. The dc voltage regulator at $VSC_2$ rapidly restores the dc voltage, resulting in power oscillations at $VSC_2$ (Figure 5-(a)), whereas the power flow remains near steady at $VSC_1$.




(a)




(b)

Figure 5-13 Performance of the test system of Figure 5- with a 16% drop in the power flow through the ±320 kV line. (a) Power flows in the grid. (b) DC line voltages at both F2F dc-dc converter sides (pole-to-pole).

The reason that line $B_1$-$B_2$ is affected most by the power imbalance triggered by the fault, is the presence of the dc-dc converter. The reference converter, which is energized by the voltage of line $B_1$-$B_2$, remains in operation despite the fault, applying voltage to the ac transformer windings. Being counteracted by zero voltage output from the control converter, the reference converter drives high currents in the windings of the ac transformer (Figure 5-(c)), which are rectified in the control converter to feed the fault. These currents are 90° phase shifted with respect to the reference converter output voltage, as observed in Figure 5-(c). This implies that the

power fed to the fault by the dc-dc converter is purely reactive, which agrees with the fact that no active power can be fed to a line at zero-voltage (line $B_3$-$B_4$). Within 40ms, the high currents in the dc-dc converter are interrupted by its ac circuit breaker and the dc fault current decays to zero.

In Figure 5-(c), low-side winding phase voltage does not actually return to its pre-fault level when the ac circuit breaker trips, it is rather the voltage induced by current flowing in the high voltage windings. The net result is that the fault is confined within the downstream line ($B_3$-$B_4$) and the upstream line is only affected by the power imbalance and, to a lesser extent, by the circulating reactive power. However, without blocking the dc-dc converter bridges the latter is exposed to destructive currents. A current controller acting on the reference converter must be included to limit these currents; otherwise the second protection scenario, where all IGBTs are blocked, becomes the only practical fault protection scheme.

When IGBTs of the dc-dc converter bridges are blocked 500μs after the 1.2pu dc current and 0.7pu dc voltage thresholds are surpassed, energy supply is cut from the dc-dc converter line end. Hence, the fault current contribution from this end decays quickly to zero and currents in both transformer sides diminish, as seen in Figure 5-(b). Figure 5-(d) represent the fault current in this case at the dc-dc converter end for different fault distances. It is seen that the current does not exceed about 3pu before decaying quickly to zero once the non-fault-side bridge IGBTs are blocked.

At the other end of the line, $VSC_3$ undergoes the same high currents like the previous case and is tripped out by its ac circuit breaker. The power oscillations triggered in the system by the contingency are of lower magnitude and the system migrates relatively faster to the new power balance point, as can be seen in Figure 5-(a).

It is clear that when dc-dc converter bridges are blocked, a smoother fault-ride through is achieved by the protected line (line B1-B2 in this case). Note that the dc-dc converter effectively impedes fault propagation from one side to another, but it has no role in protecting $VSC_3$. Additional protecting devices are required for $VSC_3$ to ride-through the dc fault.

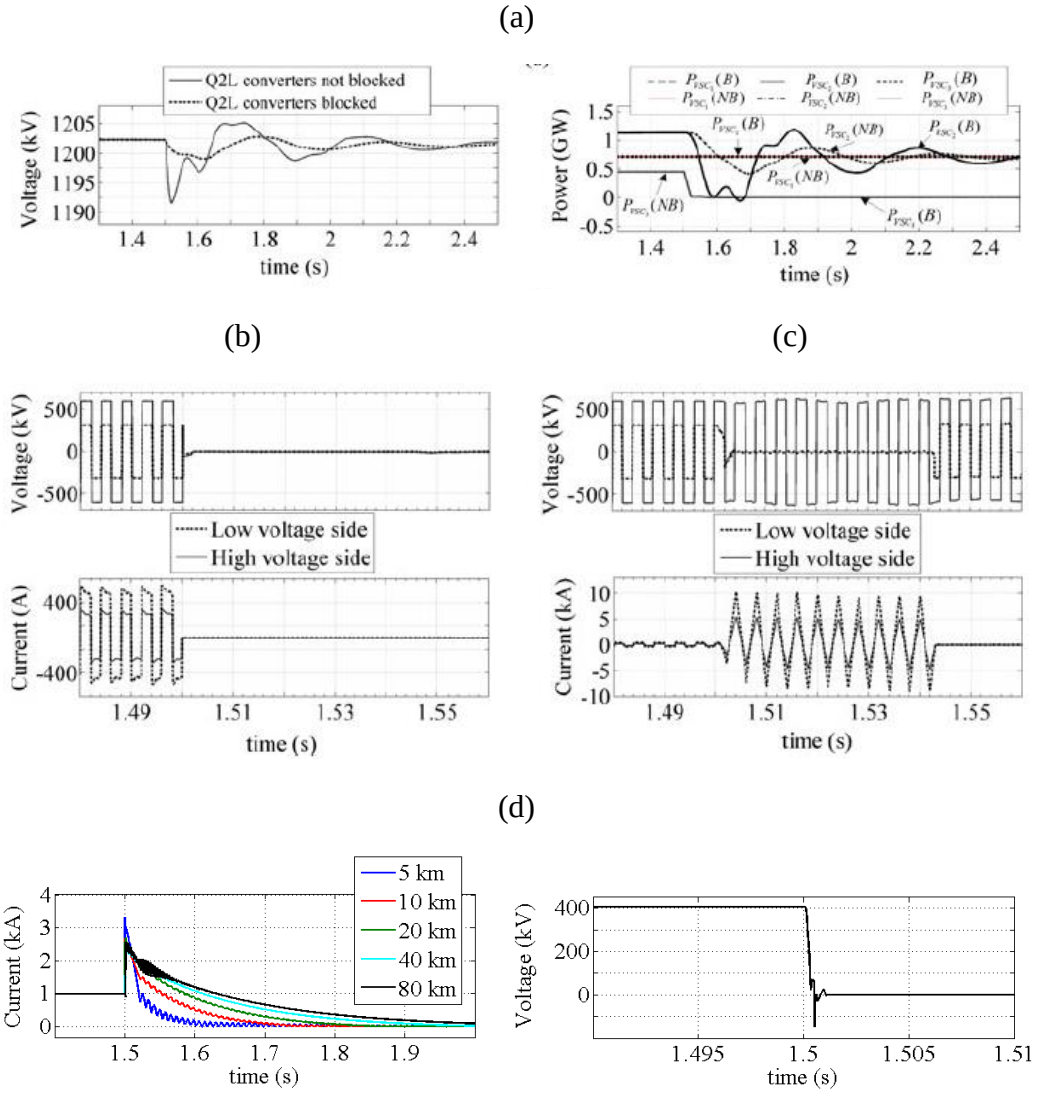



Figure 5-14 System response to a fault in line B3− B4 at t = 1.5 s. [B: Q2L converters blocked, NB: Q2L converters not blocked]. (a) Line B1−B2 dc voltage (pole-to-pole) and power flows in the system [B: Q2L converters blocked, NB: Q2L converters not blocked]. (b) DC transformer voltages and currents when both Q2L converters are blocked. (c) DC transformer voltages and currents when both Q2L converters are not blocked. (d) DC voltage and fault current in the faulted line (seen from the transformer end)

## 5.7 Fault-tolerant voltage matching of multiple HVDC lines

As briefly discussed in section 5.6.2, whenever a pole-to-pole dc fault occurs at one of the lines connected by a three- or multi-port F2F converter (such as the one of Figure 5-11 power flow between the other healthy lines will be interrupted since all non-fault side bridges have to be blocked or operate in current control mode.

This, however, can be avoided when so called ring dc node concept is adopted. The following subsections will expand on this concept. First the concept will be introduced using dc nodes not involving dc-dc conversion (i.e., no voltage matching) and then will be expanded to voltage matching dc nodes involving dc-dc conversion, where possible dc-dc converter configurations will be presented.

A node in a dc network is formed when two or more dc lines are connected at a common point. This definition of a 'node' is distinguished here from a 'terminal node' representing a terminal dc/ac conversion station. For a node, a dc fault at any of the connected line sections will result in voltage collapse at the node. Due to the small dc time constant, this collapse will propagate quickly to other healthy sections. Rapid fault isolation devices are therefore mandatory. When all connected lines to a node operate at the same dc voltage, such devices will be dc circuit breakers (DCCBs) of suitable technology capable of achieving best compromise between capital cost, losses and quick action.

Although mechanical breakers require nearly no running cost (that is, trivial losses) they are too slow for the task, as introduced in Chapter 1. Consequently, alternative technologies including solid-state DCCBs and hybrid DCCBs are extensively investigated. It has been also highlighted that solid-state DCCBs promise quickest opening times, where the fault current breaking action of utilized force commutated device strings is only limited by detection time, gating delays, and protection coordination algorithms. Nevertheless, with solid-state DCCBs employed at nodes, it is mandatory to minimize the characteristic on-state losses. It is also important to achieve sufficient redundancy so as not to compromise protection levels when, for instance, a DCCB is out of service for regular maintenance or is faulted. This is

addressed and elaborated in the following subsections with regard to potential topologies for dc fault protection and dc voltage matching at dc nodes.

### 5.7.1 Star versus ring dc nodes

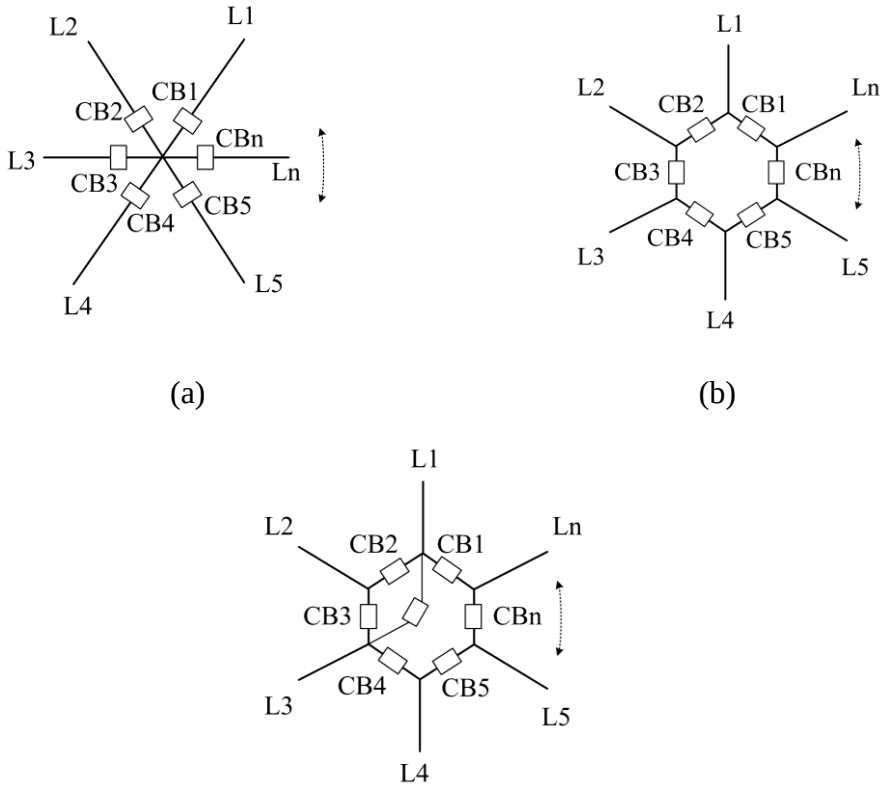



Figure 5-15 Star and ring node arrangements: (a) star, (b) ring, and (c) extended ring.

Normally, dc lines are connected at a node in a star arrangement (Figure 5-(a)). Hence, system reliability requires a DCCB be installed at the node-end of each dc line such that dc voltage collapse remains confined to the faulted section and, hence, power flow is not interrupted in healthy sections. If one DCCB is bypassed due to malfunction or for regular servicing, temporary loss of protection at one section will result in total power flow interruption through the node, should a fault occur in the unprotected line, in order to avoid voltage collapse propagation. When other nodes

(if any) are incapable of providing backup protection, bypassing a DCCB for service or malfunction is thus a risky practice with respect to system stability. The alternative, however, would be to disconnect the section being serviced from the network, which may be unacceptable should it be a dense power corridor.

When a ring node configuration is adopted (Figure 5-(b)), there exist more degrees of tolerance to the absence of one DCCB. For instance, when CB1 in Figure 5-(b) is disconnected for servicing or internal fault, the power flow in the adjacent dc lines routes naturally through other DCCBs and the power flow thus need not be interrupted, although, it may need to be curtailed subject to design and ratings. Despite the loss of a DCCB (CB1), protection retains the same level of selectivity for faults in all lines (including line L1) except when line L2 becomes faulted. A fault in L2 with CB1 inoperable will result in loss of lines L1 and L2. This situation can; however, be rectified with the addition of a diagonal connected DCCB between L1 and another line within the ring (Figure 5-16(c)). In such a case, only line L1 remains unaffected when CB1 is disconnected and L2 faulted. Nevertheless, ensuring such a high level of selectivity for all lines requires extra DCCBs, which constitutes an economic burden.

If, alternatively, CB1 is bypassed (not disconnected) for servicing, a fault at line L1 or Ln will result in both lines isolated, with other lines unaffected. For faults at any other line, the node protection exhibits the same high selectivity as when CB1 is in operation.

Overall, it can be concluded that the ring topology is more tolerant to the absence of one DCCB than a star node. The star and ring dc nodes are in essence analogous to radial and ring feeders in medium voltage ac distribution networks. While the isolation of a faulted feeder in a radial arrangement implies loss of power supply for all downstream loads, a ring feeder arrangement increases security of supply by ensuring continuous infeed to all loads even with an isolated feeder section.

### 5.7.2 Improved Efficiency with Solid State DCCBs

A clear merit of a ring node is that current moving between two lines splits in two parallel paths. For instance, when in Figure 5-17(b) dc current flows from L1 to L3,

the two parallel paths will be CB2-CB3 and CB1-CBn-CB5-CB4. In a star node, dc current from L1 to L3 flows in full through CB1 and CB3 being in series. This way, ring nodes exhibit lower conduction losses, which is important when solid-state based DCCBs are employed.

To quantify the efficiency improvement, calculations will be presented for a three-branch node connecting three dc lines. Star and ring arrangements are shown in Figure 5-16 . It will be assumed that three identical DCCBs are employed.

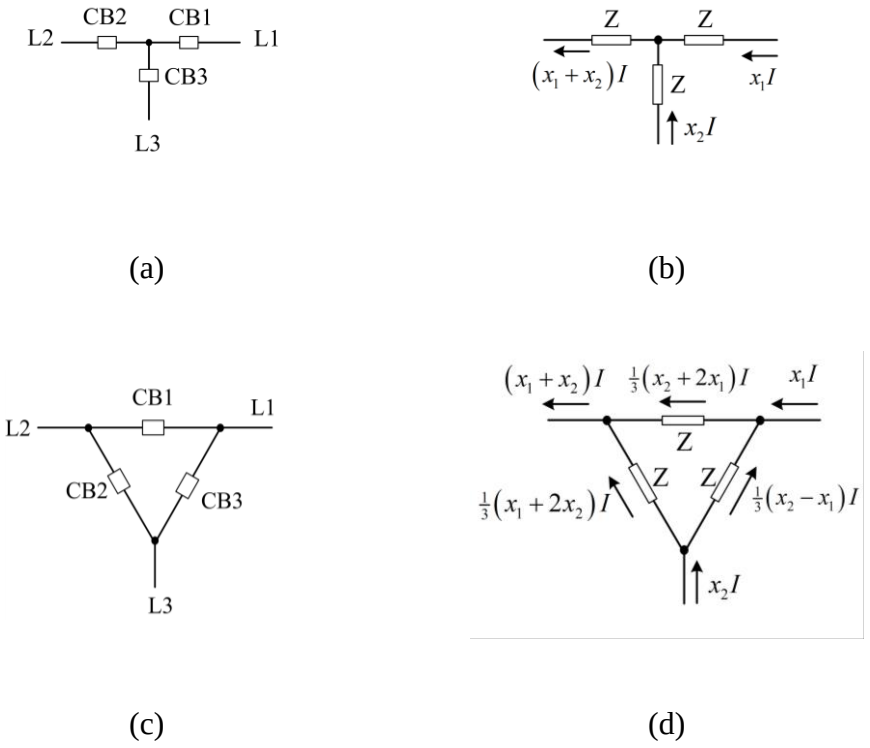



Figure 5-16 Star and ring configurations for a three-branch node: (a) star node, (b) equivalent circuit of star node, (c) ring node, and (d) equivalent circuit of ring node.

Simple calculations with the above reasoning result in total power losses in each arrangement as in (5-36) and (5-37).

$$P_{lossY} = 2I^2Z\left(x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_1x_2\right) \tag{5-36}$$

$$P_{loss\Delta} = \frac{2}{3} I^2 Z \left( x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_1 x_2 \right) \quad (5\text{-}37)$$

Evidently, irrespective of the power flow scenario through the node, the ring node exhibits one-third of the conduction losses in an equivalent star node.

### 5.7.3 Lower DCCB stress under fault

In a star node, when a fault occurs in one dc line, say line L1 in the example of Figure 5-(a), the fault current developing through CB1 prior breaking is the sum of fault current contributions of all other dc lines. For instance, in a star node connecting three lines, a short circuit in one dc line would mean that the short circuit current through the respective DCCB at the moment of breaking is double the short circuit current injected by each line, assuming identical lines.

In ring node topology, while the short-circuit current injected into the node when one line is faulted is the same as in the case of an equivalent star node (i.e. the same short-circuit level), the inherent property of current flow in parallel paths therein reduces the required current breaking capacity of utilized DCCBs.

For the ring node of Figure 5-16 utilizing identical DCCBs and connecting three lines of similar parameters (considered identical for the sake of this example), simple calculations show that each DCCB would require to be rated to break the fault current injected by one healthy line only. For instance, if line L1 is faulted, the short circuit current injected by the other two lines will divide through the node such that current components flowing through CB2 cancel out while current flow in CB1 is equal to the current flow in CB3, each equal to the short circuit current injected by one healthy line (L2 or L3). Obviously, current distribution will follow a different scenario should CB1, CB2, and CB3 exhibit different impedance values (voltage drop). However, the required short circuit current breaking capacity of each DCCB will remain less than that in an equivalent star node.

Reduction of the short circuit current breaking capacity may have a significant impact on size and cost of the current breaking member of the utilized DCCBs regardless of whether this member is in the main dc current path as in solid-state

DCCBs or in an auxiliary path as in hybrid DCCBs. Furthermore, the energy capacity of clamping varistor banks is also reduced.

### 5.7.4 Voltage matching dc node topologies

The ring dc node concept will be expanded here to nodes with voltage matching connecting three dc lines. Such a node can be formed by taping a dc line of a certain dc voltage off a main dc line of another dc voltage level. It can be also formed by connecting three dc lines at different dc voltages. Possible star and ring arrangements for both cases with a symmetric monopole arrangement are shown in Figure 5-2 and Figure 5-3, respectively.

Importantly, when voltage matching is needed, the reduced branch currents featured in a ring node reflect not only on the conduction losses within each dc-dc converter (running cost), but also on the current rating of employed solid-state devices in each dc-dc converter (capital cost). However, as shown in Figure 5-2 and Figure 5-3, the number of dc-dc converters needed for a ring node is higher than that for an equivalent star node.

The aggregate impact of both factors on a node's total installed semiconductor power, losses, energy storage elements, and magnetic circuits (if used) is subject to the utilized dc-dc converter structures. In all cases, a ring arrangement at the voltage-matching node still provides enhanced reliability relative to a star arrangement in the case of an internal fault or malfunction of one of the involved dc-dc converters.

The power flow and dc voltage control capabilities of dc-dc converters imply control capability over their equivalent impedance. In a ring dc node, this can be utilized to optimize power flows within the node or otherwise dictate certain power flow scenarios.

#### 5.7.4.1 Possible dc-dc converter topologies for multi-port nodes

Theoretically, F2F dc-dc converter topologies could be utilized to produce sinusoidal excitation for the ac link [84] [81] in front-to-front dc-dc converter designs. Alternatively, the Q2LC, PTAC, or the TAC could be used to provide six-step trapezoidal excitation for the ac link, forming a front to front dc-dc converter of less footprint and less installed semiconductor power as indicated in previous chapters.

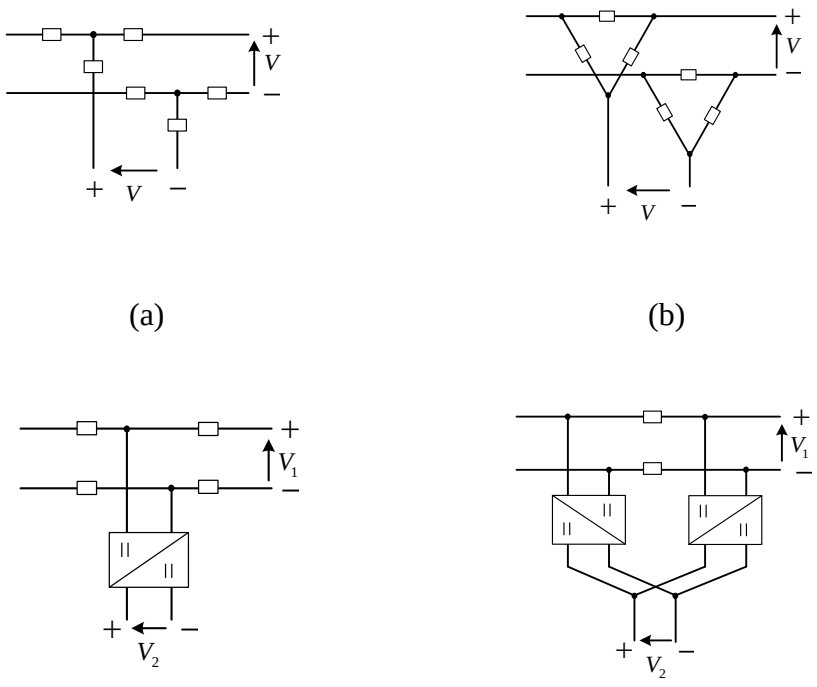



Figure 5-2 Symmetric monopole three branch node: (a) star, (b) ring, (c) star with one line at a different dc voltage, and (d) ring with one line at a different dc voltage.

Nevertheless, for multi-port dc-dc conversion at a ring dc node, the isolated multi-port converter is a choice of high cost, large overall footprint, and low power density. The use of a kernel non-isolated dc-dc converter topology is highly likely to achieve a better compromise as long as it is not mandatory to obtain galvanic isolation at the considered dc node. The generic structure of a class of non-isolated dc-dc converters was described in Figure 2.26.

With respect to dc fault management/isolation in a ring dc node, extra semiconductors are required to achieve efficient dc fault blocking between the high voltage and low voltage sides in various non-isolated dc-dc converter topologies. In topologies utilizing a filter circuit (e.g. MMC-DC and HCDC), the presence and amount of extra semiconductors depends on whether the mentioned filter circuit is passive or active. For instance, in the MMC-DC which utilizes passive filters to block ac currents within the converter from the dc side, the outer cell chains placed between a low voltage dc

pole and a respective high voltage dc pole at the negative or positive dc voltage sides (assuming the symmetric monopolar arrangement of Figure 2.28) must be able to produce reverse blocking voltage of a magnitude which depends on the particular conversion (transformation) ratio in order to block a pole-to-pole dc fault at the high voltage side. Likewise, the mentioned outer chains must be able to block the full voltage of the high voltage side when a pole-to-pole dc fault occurs at the low voltage side. This implies that, subject to the conversion ratio, at least a part of the outer chains need to be formed of cascaded full bridge cells or any other cell configuration capable of providing reverse blocking.

When a pole-to-pole dc fault occurs at the low voltage side of a HCDC converter (the design of Figure 2.26), fault propagation from the high voltage side may be blocked by blocking all switches in each six pulse bridge and shorting out all full bridge and/or half bridge cells in filter chains (i.e. each full bridge and/or half bridge cell resembles a short circuit). When a pole-to-pole dc fault occurs at the high voltage side, fault current will flow through the anti-parallel diodes in the outer arms of each six pulse bridge (the arms connected between a high voltage dc pole and a respective low voltage dc pole) unless each active filter chain is controlled to produce a voltage $½V_L$ such that the voltage level of each phase leg midpoint in each six pulse bridge is equal or below the respective high voltage dc pole so as to reverse bias the conducting anti-parallel diodes.

It thus can be seen that the HCDC shows promise in terms of power density and fault blocking for the current application. The higher power density is particularly due to the absence of large magnetic components. Further in depth studies of an HCDC-based ring voltage-matching dc node is required and it is beyond the scope of this thesis.

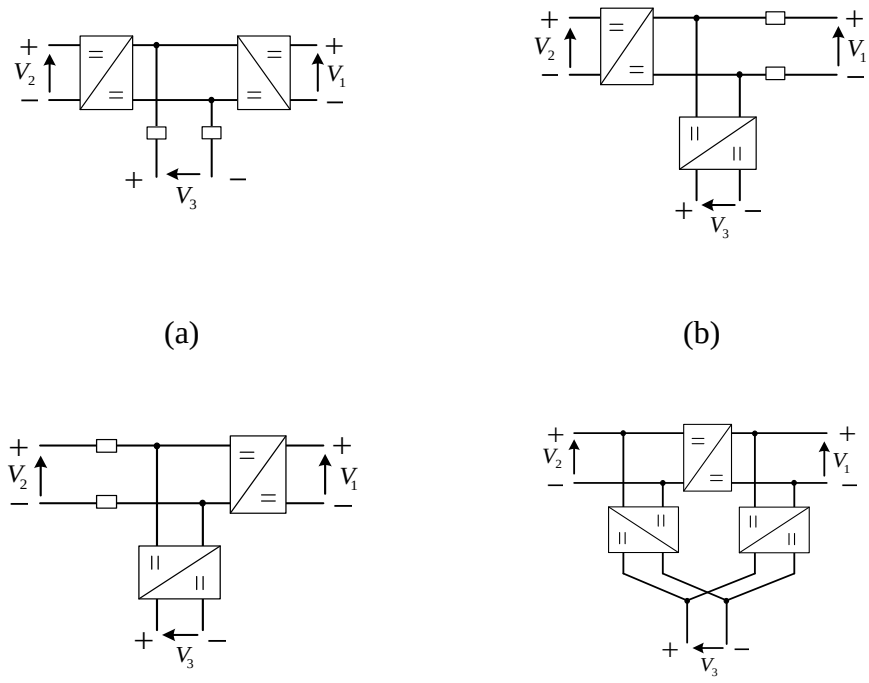



Figure 5-3 Symmetric monopole three-branch voltage matching node [three lines at different dc voltages]: (a), (b), and (c) are variations of the star arrangement, and (d) is the equivalent ring arrangement.

## 5.8 Summary

In this chapter the dc-side filtering requirements were quantified for the considered bridge designs. It was shown that dc-link capacitance needed to undertake 'filtering duty' at either the primary or the secondary sides of a front-to-front dc-dc converter is smaller than the value needed for sufficient energy buffering at the dc side. Oversizing cell capacitances may introduce a significant improvement of the dc-link energy buffer capacity since cells do not engage in the power transfer for most of the fundamental cycle.

Soft switching ranges have been quantified for the considered bridge designs with a detailed study on the Q2LC case undertaken as an example. A number of modulation index control methods were analysed. It was concluded that the considered converters do not exhibit as smooth modulation index control as conventional MMC

under transients. This may impact black start capabilities of front-to-front dc-dc converters employing trapezoidal waveforms, although a further study is needed for better evaluation of this statement.

This chapter has presented comparisons between the bridge designs proposed in Chapter 3 and Chapter 4 in terms of installed semiconductor power, conduction losses and energy storage. DC fault blocking capability of the front-to-front dc-dc converter has been studied where three methods have been identified for pole-to-pole dc fault isolation in a symmetric monopolar arrangement (or pole-to-ground in asymmetric monopolar or bipolar arrangement). A detailed simulation scenario has presented the behaviour of a three-terminal HVDC system under a dc fault when the front-to-front dc-dc converter isolates the dc fault.

Finally, ring dc node configurations suitable for connecting multiple dc lines of similar or different voltage levels has been presented and the use of isolated and non-isolated dc-dc converter topologies in such dc nodes has been assessed.

# Chapter 6

# A non-Isolated Nested DC-DC Converter with Trapezoidal Modulation

In this chapter, the utilization of the dc/ac bridge structures developed in previous chapters for trapezoidal operation in a non-isolated dc-dc converter structure will be studied. Said design is derived from the so-called HVDC auto-transformer of section 2.4.1. For brevity this chapter will focus on the utilization of PTAC and TAC bridge configurations

## 6.1 The Nested DC-DC Converter

It was seen that galvanic isolation and dc fault blocking are two outstanding features of the F2F dc-dc converter topology. Despite the significant F2F station footprint reduction made possible by PTAC and TAC bridges, as discussed in Chapter 4, the total dc-dc converter station semiconductor effort, being composed of two dc/ac bridges, remains higher than that of a standard grid-side dc/ac MMC station, even when TAC is the kernel of said F2F dc-dc converter station.

One way of reducing the installed converter power in a dc-dc converter station is by 'nesting' the low-voltage-side converter into the high-voltage-side converter. This configuration may be denoted the 'nested dc converter (NDC)'. The NDC can be seen to belong to the same converter family described in section 2.4; for instance, the so-called DC-MMC of [87] and the so-called HVDC auto transformer of [82] and [83]. Nevertheless, the NDC operation is distinct from said concepts in terms of design and operation when trapezoidal ac waveforms are produced. Therefore, the NDC will be detailed henceforth with minimum reference to the DC-MMC or any said similar dc-dc converter operating principles.

Referring to Figure 6-1, a symmetrical monopolar arrangement of a generic NDC is configured such that the low voltage dc poles split the high-voltage-side converter

into three sections. Each section can be reconfigured to an independent dc/ac converter bridge. The respective dc link of each of the upper and lower bridges is formed by a low voltage dc pole and a high voltage dc pole. The dc link of the middle bridge is formed by the two low voltage dc poles. In the symmetric monopolar NDC, the middle dc/ac bridge represents the NDC low-voltage-side converter. Phase legs of each said bridge are tapped off their midpoints to provide ac poles. For expedience, the nested low-voltage-side bridge will be denoted ‘the common bridge’, while the upper and lower bridges will be denoted the ‘positive bridge’ and ‘negative bridge’, respectively.

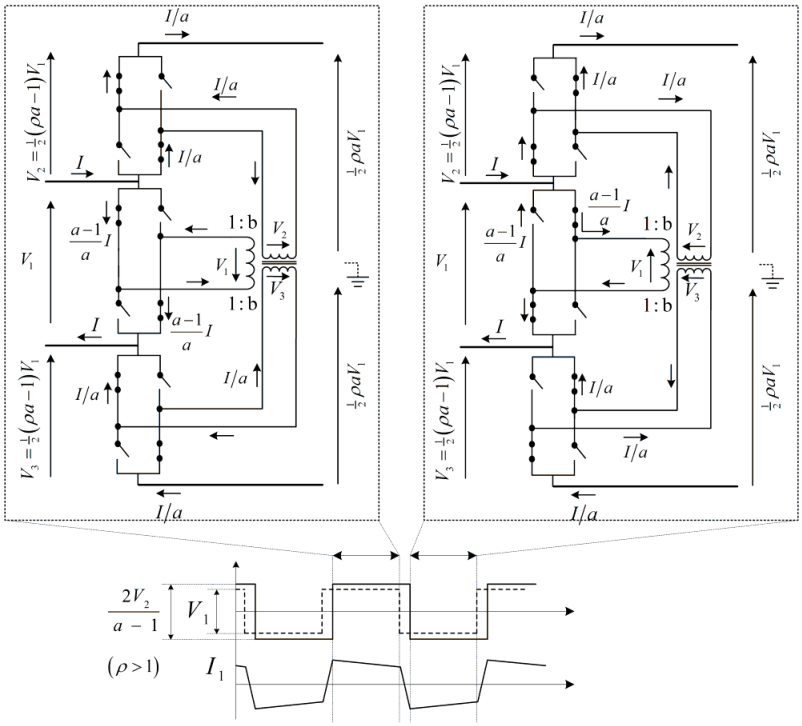



Figure 6-1 Structure and internal voltages and branch currents of the single phase of the nested dc-dc converter structure in 2-level mode [Note: b = ½(a – 1)]

In a symmetric monopolar NDC, the three bridges are controlled to switch independently, each converting its dc-link voltage into medium frequency (<500 Hz)

trapezoidal ac voltage waveform at each ac pole. Said trapezoidal voltage waveforms are applied across the windings of a three winding ac coupling transformer. Despite that the ac link here comprises an ac transformer; there exists no galvanic isolation, which is compromised in the NDC for other salient features as will be demonstrated later on.

Power flows from one bridge to the other within the NDC when a potential difference is established across the leakage inductance of respective windings. For power to flow between the dc sides, the positive and negative bridges should ideally exchange no power by synthesizing ac voltage space vectors of equal amplitudes and phase angle (i.e. having synchronized switching sequences). Simultaneously, the common bridge must synthesize an ac voltage space vector of a relative phase angle ($\varphi$) with respect to the voltages of the positive and negative bridges. The amount and polarity of dc power flow therethrough is controlled by the resulting vectorial relation between the ac voltages, akin to a F2F dc-dc converter configuration.

Basic characteristics of the symmetric monopolar NDC structure can be viewed using the single phase configuration of Figure 6-1 where two-level (square-wave) operation is adopted rather than trapezoidal operation to facilitate the illustration of basic operation. Observe that two-level operation of the three bridges within a NDC is not suitable in replacement of trapezoidal operation for dc-dc conversion at MV and HVDC levels. The ac transformer turns ratio is 1: $b$, where b = ½($a$ – 1) between each set of windings coupling the common bridge to either the positive or negative bridge, and $a$ being the nominal ratio between low and high dc voltages (dc elevation ratio). Observe that the ac transformer turns ratio between the two windings coupling the positive bridge to the negative bridge is 1:1.

It is observed from Figure 6-1 that the dc current $I$ of each low voltage dc pole splits between the two bridges connected thereto, which is the common bridge and either the positive or negative bridge. Therefore, the power processed by the common bridge and, hence, the three winding ac transformer is only a fraction of the full dc power flow between the two dc circuits. Using the common bridge voltage and current expressions as depicted in Figure 6-1, the ac-link power flow $P_{ac}$ can be developed as in (6-1).

$$P_{ac} = (1 - \frac{1}{a}) I V_1 = (1 - \frac{1}{a}) P_{dc} \quad (6\text{-}1)$$

where $P_{dc}$ is the dc power flow between the two dc circuits. For instance, if the high dc voltage is twice the low dc voltage, the ac transformer will need to process only half the dc power according to (6-1). The underlying reason is that half the low voltage dc rail current ($I/a = ½I$ ) continually flows through the galvanic path formed by the ac transformer respective secondary winding and the arms of the respective positive or negative bridge arms. Observe that, at all values of $a$, each of the secondary windings of the ac coupling transformer processes half the ac link power.

It should be noted that there is no extra dc stresses on switching devices/cells of any NDC bridges relative to dc stresses in a F2F dc-dc converter since, structure-wise, the NDC converter resembles the high-voltage-side converter of a F2F dc-dc converter in which the low-voltage-side converter is nested.

The NDC converter may preferably operate in three phase or multi-phase configuration with trapezoidal ac voltage waveforms synthesized by its bridges. Generally, the three bridges of an NDC can be of different internal structures (e.g. TAC, CTB, PTAC, or a Q2LC). However, said bridges must synthesize the same type of ac voltage waveform. Since the NDC is basically a reconfigured F2F dc-dc converter and adopts the same power flow control concept, trapezoidal operation of the NDC bridges provides, likewise, significant energy storage and footprint reductions as well as power electronics loss curtailment compared to the case with sinusoidal ac waveforms. In this regard, considered TAC structures offer an advantage when utilized as NDC bridges. Figure 6-2 depicts example configurations of TAC-based and PTAC-based NDC structures.

It is important to note that, due to the mentioned similarities between an NDC and an equivalent F2F dc-dc converter; when TAC, PTAC, CTB or Q2LC structures are employed as NDC bridges, they retain the same operation characteristics exhibited when employed in a F2F dc-dc converter, as detailed in Chapter 3,Chapter 4, andChapter 5. Said operation characteristics include soft switching and zero-voltage

switching of bi-state arms and director valves. Importantly, due to the nesting of the low-voltage-side converter into the high-voltage-side converter, the overall installed semiconductor power in a NDC is considerably less than that of an equivalent F2F dc-dc converter. Likewise, due to relatively lower internal ac currents, NDC semiconductor losses and energy storage requirements are relatively reduced.

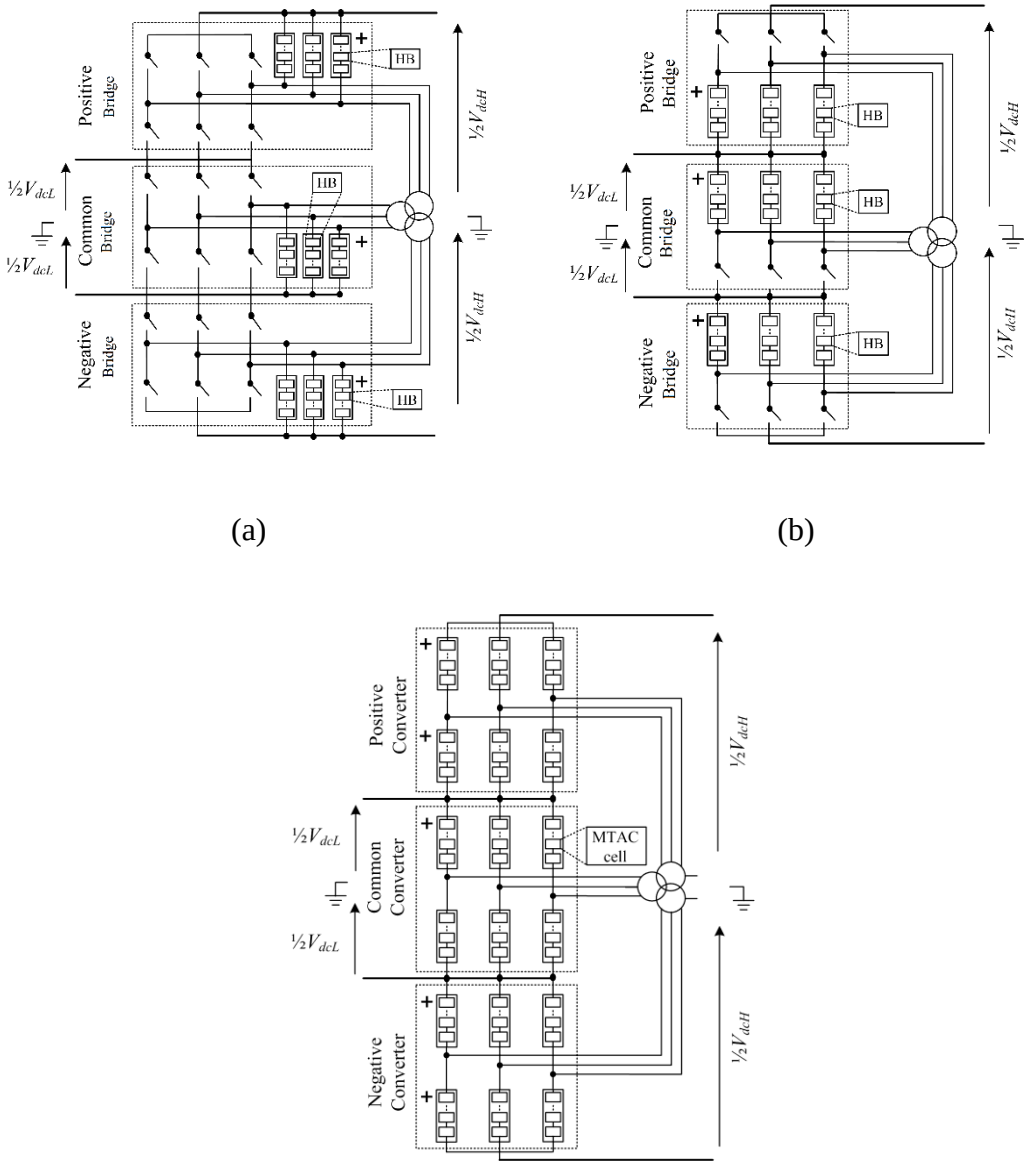



Figure 6-2 Possible structures of the nested dc-dc converter (b) PTAC-based NDC, (b) ATAC-based NDC, and (c) MTAC-based NDC.

An asymmetric NDC structure can be readily built as in Figure 6-3. For a certain elevation ratio ($a$), an asymmetric NDC emerges, theoretically, when the low-voltage dc poles, and the common bridge, are relocated upwards or downwards along the NDC phase legs. A *fully* asymmetric monopolar NDC structure can be developed when one of the low voltage dc poles is at the same potential as a high voltage dc pole of the same polarity. As a consequence, the positive and negative bridges will merge into what can be termed the 'complementary bridge'. Figure 6-3 depicts some resulting asymmetric NDC structure (subplots b, c, and d) and presents bridges voltages and currents for an illustrative case in which two-level ac voltages are synthesized by each bridge for simplicity (Figure 6-3c). Observe that the two winding ac transformer of the asymmetric NDC will be of the same power rating as the three-winding ac transformer of the symmetric NDC. Generally, two asymmetric NDC converters may be combined in a bipolar NDC configuration for the connection of bipolar dc lines.

The asymmetric NDC configuration may visually be viewed as the dc version of an ac autotransformer – as suggested in [82]– where an asymmetric structure using standard MMC with sinusoidal ac waveforms was analysed. However, there exist fundamental distinctions between the operating and design principles of an ac autotransformer and the asymmetric NDC converter. Contrary to an ac autotransformer, the dc power in an NDC is exchanged between the dc circuits only through the ac transformer windings. In other words, the switching sequences in NDC bridges do not provide a direct current path between the respective dc poles of both dc circuits through converter legs. Furthermore, shortcomings of the ac auto-transformer at transformation ratios higher than two are not present in a NDC since the latter is built up of many independent components and modules with flexibility to dimension each group of components separately to avoid poor utilization. Therefore, the author of this thesis believes the NDC concept should not be confused with the ac autotransformer.

Symmetric or asymmetric, the silicon area, ac transformer size curtailment, and lower semiconductor losses are outstanding merits of the NDC converter over an equivalent F2F dc-dc converter although a full figure of silicon area reduction cannot

be obtained before viewing the requirements for dc fault handling. DC fault handling in the NDC follows a similar fault blocking concept to the one introduced in [87], albeit with different type of components. On the down side, galvanic isolation is sacrificed in an NDC and the ac transformer insulation must be designed to accommodate dc voltage offset.

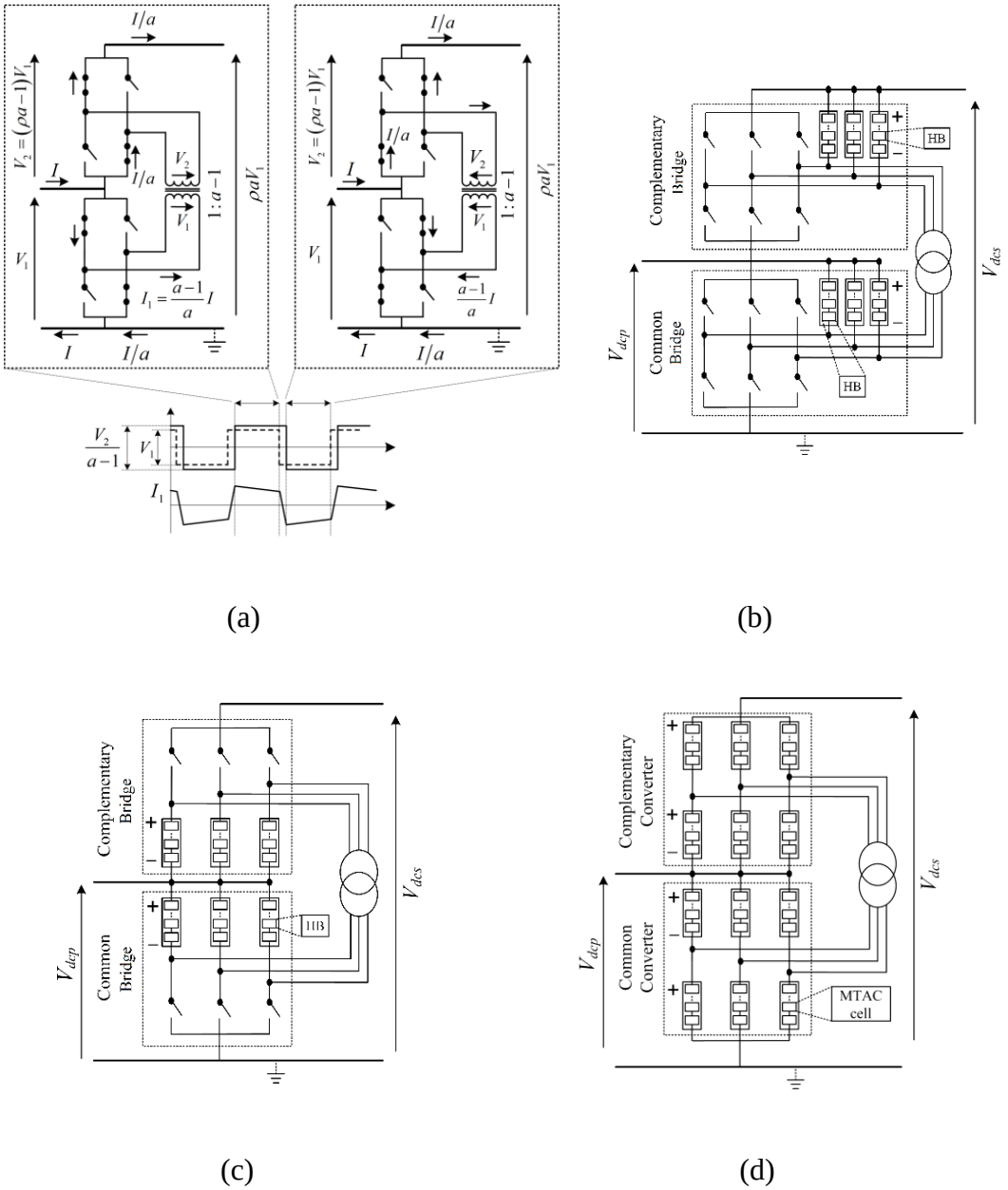



Figure 6-3 The asymmetric nested dc-dc converter; (a) Internal voltages and branch currents of the single phase structure in 2-level mode, (b) TAC-based structure, (c) PTAC-based structure, and (d) MTAC-based structure.

## 6.2 Numerical simulation of MTAC-based asymmetric NDC

The asymmetric NDC of Figure 6-3d is simulated according to the simulation arrangement of section 3.5 although here the power flow direction is from the ±60kV side to the ±30kV side. For voltage conversion between ±30kV and ±60kV using an NDC, the required ac transformer turns ratio is 1:1 and it transmits half the NDC power.

Consequently, a 32-MVA 55kV/55kV ac transformer is utilized in this simulation case study. The leakage inductance and series resistance are modelled 10% and 0.3%, respectively (base impedance is: 94.5Ω. Both common converter and complementary converter are modelled in detail. Infineon's IHV FZ800R33KL2C 3.3kV-800A IGBT modules are utilized in the power paths of both bridges and their parameters are modelled as per datasheet.

Figure 6-4 depicts the simulation results in which it can be seen that the trapezoidal ac pole-to-ground voltage in the upper arm has a 60kV dc offset (Figure 6-4e and Figure 6-4f). Nevertheless Figure 6-4a shows that this dc offset is not present to the ac transformer windings. Although the offset cancels out as seen by ac transformer windings, transformer insulation must be derated to handle this dc stress.

It can be seen that arm currents in the common and complementary converters of the considered NDC are slightly above 500A peak as depicted in Figure 6-4d for phase *a* of the complementary converter, and in Figure 6-4c for the common converter ac poles. Cell capacitors voltages of this same arm are balanced using the conventional sorting algorithm for ±12% at 5μF capacitance modelled per cell subgroup.

## 6.3 Asymmetric Nested DC-DC converter DC fault handling

For expedience, the dc fault handling of the asymmetric monopolar NDC converter will be addressed before expanding on the symmetric monopolar arrangements.

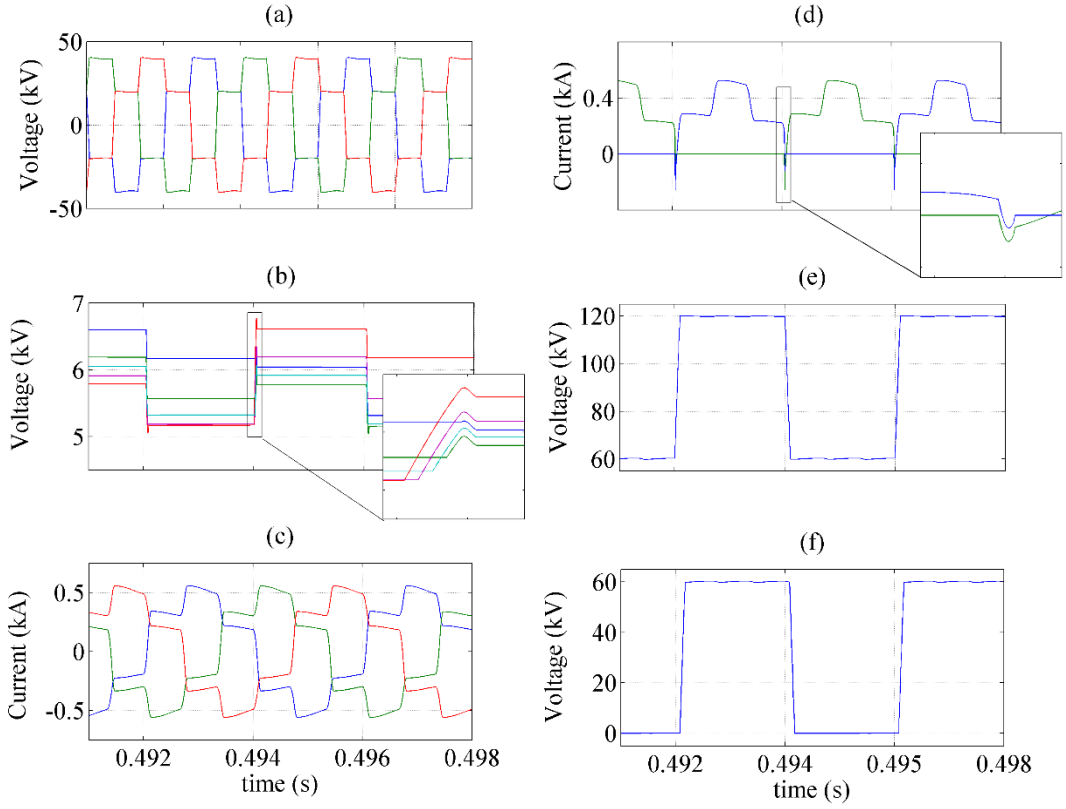



Figure 6-4 Numerical simulation case study of an 63 MVA NDC dc-dc converter: (a) common converter ac pole-to-neutral voltages, (b) Capacitor voltages of the upper arm of complementary converter's phase *a*, (c) ac pole currents of the common converter, (d) arm currents in phase *a* of the complementary converter, (e) ac pole-to-ground voltage of phase a in the complementary converter, and (f) ac pole-to-ground voltage of phase *a* of the common converter.

### 6.3.1 High voltage side DC fault

When a pole to ground fault occurs near the high voltage dc side of a NDC, $V_{dcH}$ will rapidly drop resulting in high current flow from the low voltage dc pole to the high voltage dc pole by uncontrolled rectifier operation of the complementary converter, which will occur once $V_{dcH}$ drops below $V_{dcL}$. For instance, at $a = 2$, uncontrolled rectifier operation commences only when $V_{dcH}$ drops below half its nominal value. Any protective action must ensure that the common converter is immediately blocked and sufficient reverse blocking capability $V_{br}$ is available to the complementary converter to prevent uncontrolled rectifier action of its freewheeling

diodes. Although a blocking capability $V_{br}<V_{dcL}$ may be sufficient for cases where $V_{dcH}$ does not dip to zero under fault, reverse blocking of $V_{br} = V_{dcL}$ is the minimum design requirement to avoid converter damage under bolted dc faults. This requirement persists regardless of the value of the dc elevation ratio ($a$). Hence, a higher value of $a$ implies a less percent semiconductor effort increase for sufficient reverse blocking. Nevertheless, apart from the method by which reverse blocking is realized (e.g. by FB cells), extra silicon area will have to be installed.

Despite being very brief, the time elapsed for $V_{dcH}$ to drop below $V_{dcL}$, may allow some hundreds of microseconds for fault detection algorithms to activate protective action before or shortly after the complementary converter enters rectifier mode.

#### 6.3.1.1 TAC-based complementary converter

If the complementary converter is a TAC (i.e., ATAC, STAC or MTAC) , a number of the transition arm HB cells must be replaced by FB cells – or another bipolar cell structure – such that the resulting bipolar cell array blocking voltage is equal to $V_{dcL}$. Therefore, for $a \leq 2$, transition arms will have to be formed only by FB (bipolar) cells where the sum of cell voltages is at least equal to $V_{dcL}$.

Each FB cell will operate in unipolar mode in healthy conditions, and will reverse its voltage only in case of a dc fault at the high voltage dc side. Consequently, each FB cell can be of the asymmetric structure reported in [59] and shown in Figure 6-5 Each said cell requires two IGBT/diode pairs enduring rated load current and one partially rated. The partially rated IGBT/diode (in the bottom cell half) would endure load current flow only during the brief voltage transit interval when trapezoidal ac waveforms are produced. As a consequence of the extra lead-path switch, conduction losses will rise.

An alternative reverse blocking method would be replacing bi-state arm switches or director switches with a string of bidirectional switches offering forward and reverse blocking at a time. Two possible candidates are the reverse blocking switch (RBS) and the active diode bridge (ADB), which are shown in Figure 6-5 b. Likewise, extra conduction loss is the expense. Hence, the use of active switching devices with low on-state voltage (e.g. IGCTs) as discussed in Chapter 4 is favourable. Theoretically,

both bidirectional variants require less semiconductor area than an equivalent asymmetric FB cell. While RBS string has higher gating requirements than an ADB string, it still requires less gating demand than a FB cell.

Assuming protection is triggered when a certain threshold voltage $V_{thr}$ is surpassed, protective action with bidirectional switch strings is realized by the following sequence as soon as $V_{dcH} < V_{thr}$:

1- *Common converter (assumed ATAC)*: all bi-state arms which are in on-state turn off; then immediately switching all transition arms HB cells to either state '0' (short-circuit) or state '2' (idle);

2- *Concurrently in the complementary converter*: all bi-state arms (equipped with bidirectional strings) which are in on-state turn off; then immediately switching all transition arms HB cells to state '0'.

This sequence ensures bi-state arms turn off at zero-volt, avoiding the need for tight gating tolerances or complex snubbers. The total blocking voltage of a bidirectional string must, likewise, sum up to $V_{dcL}$ at least. Therefore, for $a > 2$, each bi-state arm would be optimally a hybrid of a bidirectional string and a series switch array. The reverse blocking capability and switching sequences described for the ATAC-based NDC under fault can similarly be applied to the MTAC- and STAC-based NDC.

#### 6.3.1.2 PTAC-based complementary converter

If the complementary converter is a PTAC, one way of providing reverse blocking capability of $V_{br} = V_{dcL}$ is replacing a part of the lower director switch array with bidirectional strings. For $a \leq 2$, the lower director switch must be fully replaced with a bidirectional string whose blocking voltage ensures $V_{br} \geq V_{dcL}$. When a high voltage side dc fault is sensed ($V_{dcH} \leq V_{thr}$) in an AP-TAC-based NDC, the following sequence is to be followed (with reference to Figure 6-3b):

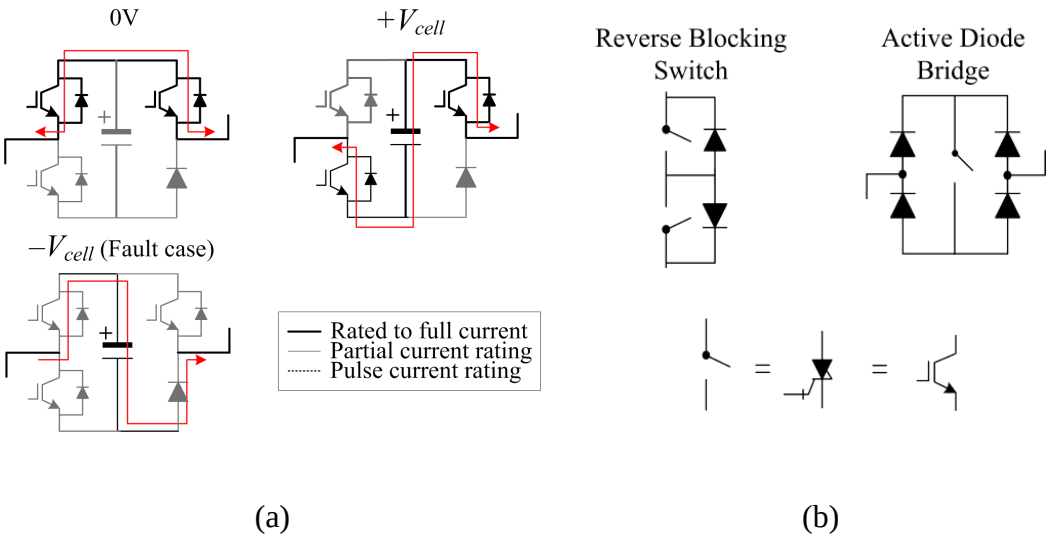



Figure 6-5 Methods of reverse blocking under a high voltage side dc fault (a) using asymmetric FB cells, and (b) bidirectional switch strings.

1- *Common converter (assumed AP-TAC)*: upper director valves in on-state turn off. To ensure equal voltage sharing at turn off, respective shunt transition arms must be in short-circuit state (state '0') before upper director switches turn off. Optionally, all shunt transition arms may switch to state '1' for lower director switches to turn off, before returning to state'0'.

2- *Concurrently in the complementary converter*: respective shunt transition arms must be in state '1' for on-state lower director switches (equipped with bidirectional strings) to turn off. Immediately, shunt transition arms switch to state '0' and upper director switches turn off.

Likewise, this sequence eliminates voltage sharing problems at turn off, provides sufficient voltage blocking, and impedes high current flow from the coupling transformer to the complementary converter. Similar reverse blocking capability along with associated switching sequence can also be obtained in NDC designs based on the SP-TAC or the MP-TAC

### 6.3.2 Low voltage side DC fault

A pole to ground fault near the low voltage side will imply that the complementary converter must handle the full high dc side voltage. If converter protection immediately turns off all switches, a forward blocking capability ($V_{bf}$) as in (6-2) becomes instantly available to the complementary converter.

$$V_{bf} = 2(a - 1)V_{dcL} \tag{6-2}$$

To avoid damage of the complementary converter, it is required that $V_{bf} \geq aV_{dcL}$ is satisfied. Substituting in (6-2), it follows that this condition is inherently satisfied for $a \geq 2$. For $1 < a < 2$, additional forward blocking capability must be provided such that $V_{bf} = aV_{dcL}$ at the minimum. With the additional devices installed for reverse blocking as per subsection 6.3.1, no more semiconductor effort needs to be added for sufficient forward voltage blocking. This holds for all the viewed reverse blocking methods. As an example, if an asymmetric NDC connects a 60kV and 90kVC lines, the complementary converter has to have an reverse blocking capability of 60kV (through FB cells, ADMs, or RBSs). When a pole-to-ground fault occurs at the 60kV side, the available forward blocking capability to the complementary converter is 60kV + 30kV, which is sufficient to block the high side voltage.

When $V_{dcL}$ drops beyond a certain threshold (a faulty condition), common and complementary converters are to be blocked. If the latter is a TAC, transition arms must turn to idle state after ensuring all on-state bi-state arms turn off at zero-volt. If the complementary converter is a PTAC, shunt transition arms must similarly ensure zero-volt turn off for director switches. The voltage redundancy normally accounted for in converter design will lend converter controllers some extra time to block the complementary converter switching devices before the low side dc voltage drops beyond maximum permissible forward blocking capability of the *yet-to-be-blocked* complementary converter.

## 6.4 Symmetric Nested DC-DC converter DC fault handling

### 6.4.1 Pole-to-pole dc fault

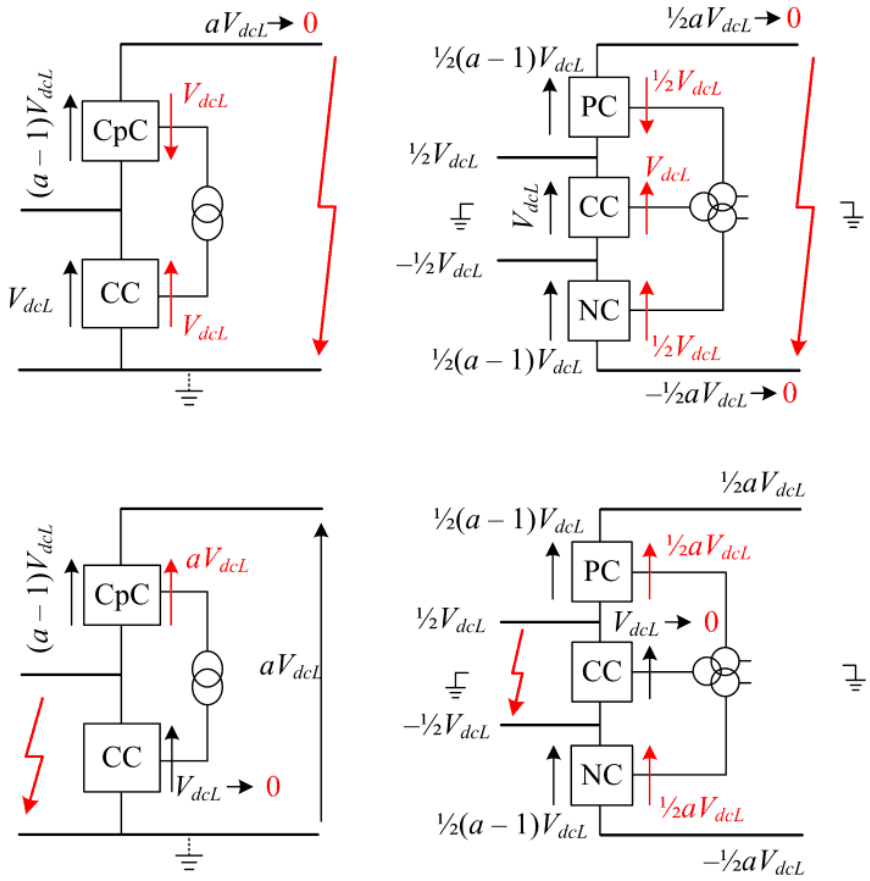



Figure 6-6 Comparison between voltage distributions in symmetric and asymmetric monopolar nested dc-dc converter under pole-to-pole fault (a) at the high dc side, and (b) at the low dc side. [Red represents voltage distribution under fault].

Symmetric monopole systems are prone to either pole-to-pole faults or pole-to-ground faults. The former resembles the case of a pole-to-ground fault in an asymmetric monopole. Therefore, the same methods to achieve forward and reverse voltage blocking discussed in subsections 6.3.16.3.2 can be used for pole-to-pole

faults at the low voltage or high voltage dc sides of a symmetric monopole NDC converter. Furthermore, the necessary forward and reverse blocking capability; and hence the extra semiconductor effort needed for fault immunity will be exactly the same as in an equivalent asymmetric monopolar topology. The difference here is that the added silicon area will be split in half between the positive and negative bridges such that each bridge achieves half the forward or reverse blocking capability of the complementary converter in an equivalent asymmetric monopolar topology, as shown in Figure 6-6 . This is given in (6-3) and (6-4), which is valid for both the positive and negative converters.

$$V_{fb} = \begin{cases} (a-1)V_{dcL} & a > 2 \\ \frac{1}{2} a V_{dcL} & a \leq 2 \end{cases} \tag{6-3}$$

$$V_{br} = ½V_{dcL} \tag{6-4}$$

### 6.4.2 Pole-to-ground dc fault with symmetric monopolar NDC

A pole-to-ground fault is a more likely fault scenario in a symmetric monopolar structure, whether dc cables or overhead lines are utilized. Due to the extra voltage stress on the healthy pole (up to 2pu as discussed in section 5.6.2.1), there is no consensus as to whether the dc grid (including dc-dc converters) should be capable of handling these voltage stresses and continue operation until the faulted section is isolated, or otherwise power interruption/protection procedures are triggered on fault detection.

It was shown in section 5.6.2.1 that a F2F dc-dc converter naturally inhibits pole-to-ground fault propagation to the healthy side although the coupling transformer must handle the resulting dc voltage offset until a protective action is taken or fault is cleared/isolated. In a NDC converter, the lack of galvanic isolation means this dc voltage offset will propagate to the unfaulted side until protection is triggered. This constitutes a drawback and the NDC converter may be required to block the fault propagation.

For a solid pole-to-ground fault at either dc side, the respective terminal grid side converter will offset the healthy pole voltage to 2 pu. For the NDC converter to inhibit fault propagation to the other dc side all its bridges must be switched off (blocked) once the fault in sensed. It is mandatory to ensure the voltage offset neither triggers an uncontrolled rectifier mode nor exceeds the available blocking capability of the positive and negative bridges. For a closer look, the voltages across bridges under all pole-to-ground fault possibilities are given in Table 6-1.

It is evident from Table 6-1 that the common converter remains forward biased at the same dc voltage regardless of the fault. Also, a pole-to-ground fault at the high dc side results in a reverse bias (negative voltage) across the bridge connected to the faulted high dc voltage pole. Knowing that a bridge enters uncontrolled rectifier mode under reverse bias, Table 6-1 indicates that reverse blocking of a minimum magnitude $V_{br} = ½V_{dcL}$ must be available to the positive and negative bridges. In the same time, comparing Table 6-1 with (6-3), it follows that the forward blocking available to the bridge connected to the healthy dc pole is insufficient and additional forward blocking voltage $\Delta V_{fb}$ is required as per (6-5) to avoid converter damage.

$$V_{fb} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}V_{dcL} & a > 2 \\ \frac{1}{2}(1-a)V_{dcL} & a \le 2 \end{cases} \tag{6-5}$$

For a pole-to-ground fault at the low dc side, the bridge connected to the healthy low voltage dc pole would enter uncontrolled rectifier mode for $a \le 2$, thus reverse blocking of $V_{br} \ge (1- ½a)V_{dcL}$ must be available. For $a > 2$, both positive and negative bridges will endure forward voltages of magnitudes less than the available forward blocking capability given in (6-3).

Figure 6-7 shows numerical examples of the voltages developing across the NDC bridges under different pole to ground faults and with different values of $a$ given a ±60kV low-side voltage. It can be concluded from Table 6-1 and Figure 6-7 that isolation of all possible pole-to-ground faults in a symmetric monopolar NDC converter does not require additional reverse blocking capability beyond that installed for pole-to-pole fault immunity. However, additional forward blocking

capability as per (6-5) is required for positive and negative bridges. The additional forward blocking can be realized by increasing switch array length in bi-state arms/director switches of TACs or director valves of PTACs.

Figure 6-8 shows a numerical example for NDC voltages at $a$ = 1.5 for two pole-to-ground faults; in the low and high voltage sides, respectively. It displays single-line diagrams of possible methods to achieve the required reverse blocking in a TAC-based and PTAC-based NDC design.

TABLE 6-1

NDC CONVERTER VOLTAGES UNDER DIFFERENT SOLID POLE-TO-GROUND FAULTS

(RESULTING VOLTAGE OFFSETS ±2PU)

| Faulted pole | Common Converter (CC) | +*ve* Converter (PC) | –*ve* Converter (NC) |
|---|---|---|---|
| +*ve* Low side | $V_{dcL}$ | $\frac{1}{2}aV_{dcL}$ | $(\frac{1}{2}a - 1)V_{dcL}$ |
| -*ve* Low side | $V_{dcL}$ | $(\frac{1}{2}a - 1)V_{dcL}$ | $\frac{1}{2}aV_{dcL}$ |
| +*ve* High side | $V_{dcL}$ | $-\frac{1}{2}V_{dcL}$ | $(a - \frac{1}{2})V_{dcL}$ |
| -*ve* High side | $V_{dcL}$ | $(a - \frac{1}{2})V_{dcL}$ | $-\frac{1}{2}V_{dcL}$ |

## 6.5 Front-to-Front converter versus the Nested DC-DC Converter

### 6.5.1 Semiconductor Effort

With reference to Table 5-3, it can be deduced that the semiconductor effort of a F2F connection is $14NV_dI_d$ when TAC-based, $16NV_dI_d$ when PTAC/CTB-based (or Q2LC-based), and $15NV_dI_d$ when one side is a TAC and the other is a PTAC/CTB/Q2LC. These values are independent of the ratio between dc voltages.

For NDC converter designs, semiconductor effort (S.E.) is a function in elevation ratio ($a$) and can be calculated, similar to Table 5-3, as in (6-6).

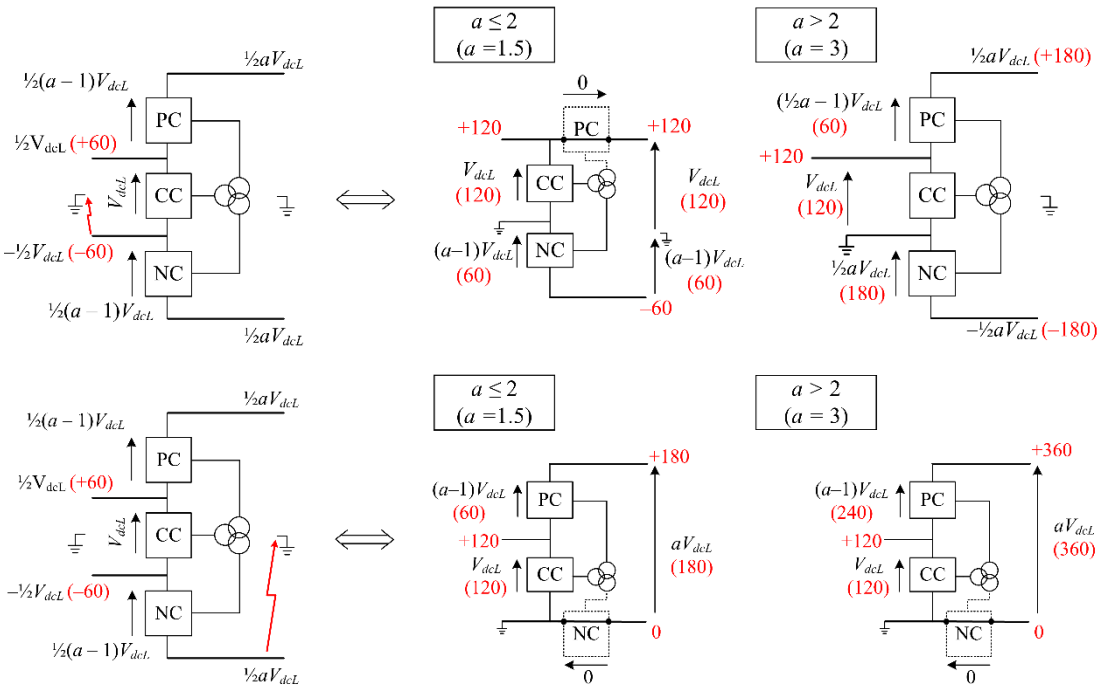
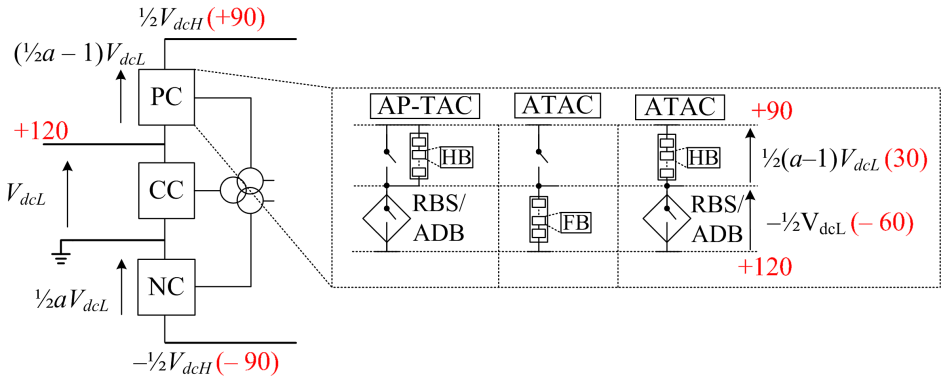


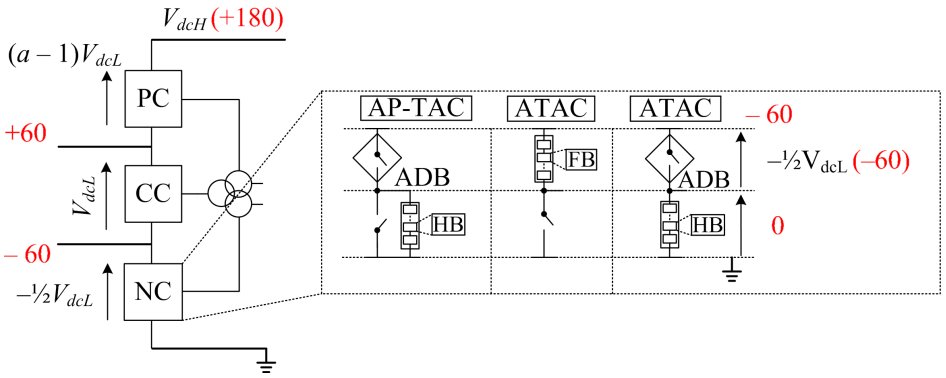

Figure 6-7 Voltage distribution across a symmetric NDC and respective equivalent circuits under pole-to-ground faults in the low voltage side (up) and the high voltage side (low).

$$\text{S.E.} = N V_d I_d (\alpha - \eta / a) \tag{6-6}$$

where α and λ are given in Table 6-2 per NDC converter structure. Silicon requirements for fault handling as per section 5.4 are accounted for. In Table 6-2, each asymmetric FB cell in a TAC transition arm is assumed to be rated to $(1 + 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3})V_dI_d = 2\frac{2}{3}V_dI_d$. The reason the discrete diode in each asymmetric FB cell is of partial rating is the fact that it conducts fault current only after the converter is blocked. When reverse voltage is inserted by the blocked asymmetric FB cells, the fault current decays quickly as the fault energy is absorbed by the converter and it is therefore sufficient to have a standard recovery diode of high pulse current capability regardless of the rated continuous current capability. For instance, the ABB's diode 5SDA 08D3205 of 3.2 kV and 910A average forward current has a pulse current capacity of 9.2kA for a 10ms half sine wave. This pulse rating may be suitable for application in the NDC given the quick electronic protection action (i.e., IGBTs blocking).




(a)




(b)

Figure 6-8 Voltage distribution and blocking capability of the nested dc-dc converter under negative dc pole to-ground fault with $a$ = 1.5 at (a) the low voltage side, and (b) the high voltage side. [PC and NC expanded in single-line diagrams]

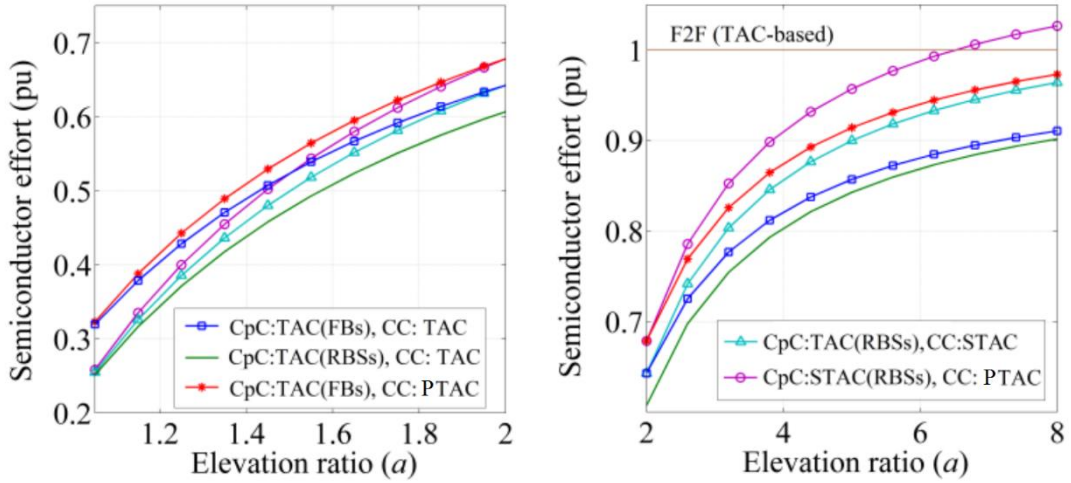
TABLE 6-2

PARAMETER VALUES FOR CALCULATION OF SEMICONDUCTOR EFFORT IN EQUATION (6-6)

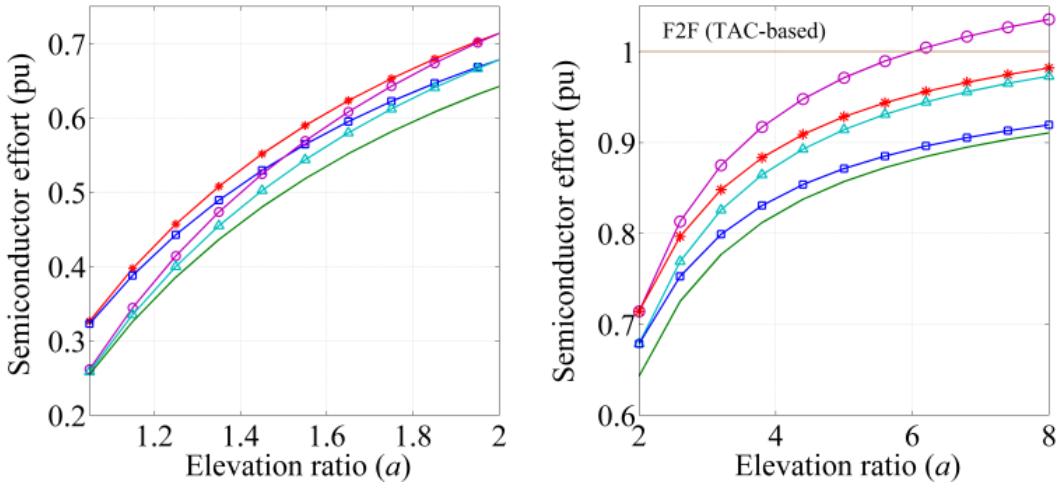
| NDC converter structure | | Asymmetric Monopole | | Symmetric Monopole | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | $a \leq 2$ | | $a > 2$ | |
| CpC [PC+NC] | CC | α | $\eta$ | α | $\eta$ | α | $\eta$ |
| TAC(FBs) | TAC | 14 | 10 | 15 | 11 | 14 | 9 |
| TAC(RBSs) | TAC | 14 | 11 | 15 | 12 | 14 | 10 |
| TAC(FBs) | PTAC | 15 | 11 | 16 | 12 | 15 | 10 |
| TAC(RBSs) | PTAC | 15 | 12 | 16 | 13 | 15 | 11 |
| PTAC(RBSs) | PTAC | 16 | 13 | 17 | 14 | 16 | 12 |

Figure 6-9a depicts the normalized S.E. values for asymmetric monopolar NDC converter designs. The S.E. of the F2F TAC-based dc-dc converter is taken as the base value. The same normalized values in Figure 6-9a hold for bipolar NDC converter structures.

One can conclude that NDC converters provide further sizable silicon savings relative to F2F connections particularly for low dc voltage (elevation) ratios. The attainable saving depends, however, on internal converter structure. It is observed that a TAC-based NDC converter with RBS strings for reverse blocking requires the least semiconductor effort throughout the considered range of elevation ratios. Figure 6-9b depicts normalized S.E. for the symmetric monopolar NDC converter. Despite the added forward blocking as per section 6.4, the attainable S.E. curtailment over respective symmetric monopolar F2F configurations is still significant.




(a)




(b)

Figure 6-9 Semiconductor effort of various nested dc-dc converter structures normalized to the TAC-based front-to-front converter case; (a) asymmetric NDC converter, and (b) symmetric NDC converter.

Overall, there exists an outstanding S.E. advantage for the presented dc-dc systems with trapezoidal modulation (whether F2F or nested) relative to the MMC-based F2F connection with sinusoidal modulation. An optimistic approximation of the latter's S.E. can amount to $12NV_dI_d$ per bridge (i.e. $24NV_dI_d$ in total) assuming half-bridge

cells are employed. As stated in section 5.4, this approximated figure ignores circulating arm currents and the ratio between fundamental components of trapezoidal and sinusoidal ac voltages generated from the same dc-side voltage. Normalizing to the same base S.E. of Figure 6-9, the sinusoidal-operated MMC-based F2F dc-dc converter is over 50% higher than that of the most demanding trapezoidal-operated F2F configuration (i.e. the Q2LC- or CTB-based), which confirms a sizable reduction of power electronics cost.

### 6.5.2 Conduction Losses

In addition to the S.E. curtailment, peak current in the NDC common converter is a fraction of the primary side peak current in an equivalent F2F converter. This generally leads to reduced conduction loss relative to an equivalent F2F.The reduction figure depends on the internal structure of the F2F and NDC converters in comparison. The total conduction loss in primary and secondary converters of a F2F dc-dc converter has been developed in section 5.5.

The same assumptions discussed in section 5.3 and section 5.5 – and used to develop (5-35) – with regard to switching losses and conduction losses in auxiliary current paths hold for NDC converter structures. Also, in an equivalent NDC converter, the coupling transformer is of fractional power relative to the F2F connection according to (12). Hence, the leakage inductance is higher by a factor of ($a$/[$a$ –1]). Taking this into account, the approximate conduction loss of the equivalent NDC converter, without fault blocking, can be developed as in (6-7);

$$P_{loss}^{NDC} = \frac{2NV_{dcL}\varphi}{3\omega_s L_s}\left(\psi + \beta\frac{V_{dcL}\varphi}{\omega_s L_s}\right) \tag{6-7}$$

where parameters $\psi$ and $\beta$ are given in Table 6-3 for selected NDC converter structures in terms of parameters A and B of Table 5-5. Observe that A and B values for a CTB are the same for a PTAC. It should be noted that under same power flow and dc voltages, the leakage inductance $L_s$ and the load angle $\varphi$ are of equal values in

(5-35) and (6-7). In Table 6-3, $\psi$ and $\beta$ values when fault blocking is considered are given for $a \geq 2$.

TABLE 6-3

PARAMETERS $\psi$ AND $\beta$ OF EQUATION (18) FOR DIFFERENT CONVERTERS

| | $\psi$ | $B$ |
|---|---|---|
| NDC [No fault Blocking] | $2\left(\frac{a-1}{a}\right)$A | $\left(\frac{a-1}{a}\right)$B |
| Asymmetric NDC [TAC+TAC(FBs/RBSs)] | $\left(2-\frac{1}{a}\right)$A | $\frac{1}{a^2}\left((a-1)^2+a\right)$B |
| Symmetric NDC [TAC+TAC(FBs/RBSs)] | 2A | $\frac{1}{a^2}\left((a-1)^2+a+1\right)$B |

The normalized conduction losses of selected dc-dc converter structures are given in Figure 6-10 where the CTB-based F2F converter at rated power flow is taken as a base case. Device data from the simulation scenario of section 3.5 is used. The plot confirms an efficiency advantage for NDC converter structures in general. However, the relative loss margins are dependent on parameters of the particular devices in use. For instance, when IGBTs of slightly higher on-state voltage are employed, the TAC-based symmetric monopole NDC converter (with fault blocking) exhibits higher conduction losses than the F2F CTB-based converter. Nevertheless, its conduction losses will still be less than the equivalent TAC-based F2F converter when same devices are used. Note that the normalized values of Figure 6-10 hold whether or not low-loss devices are employed in switch strings of the converter structures in comparison.

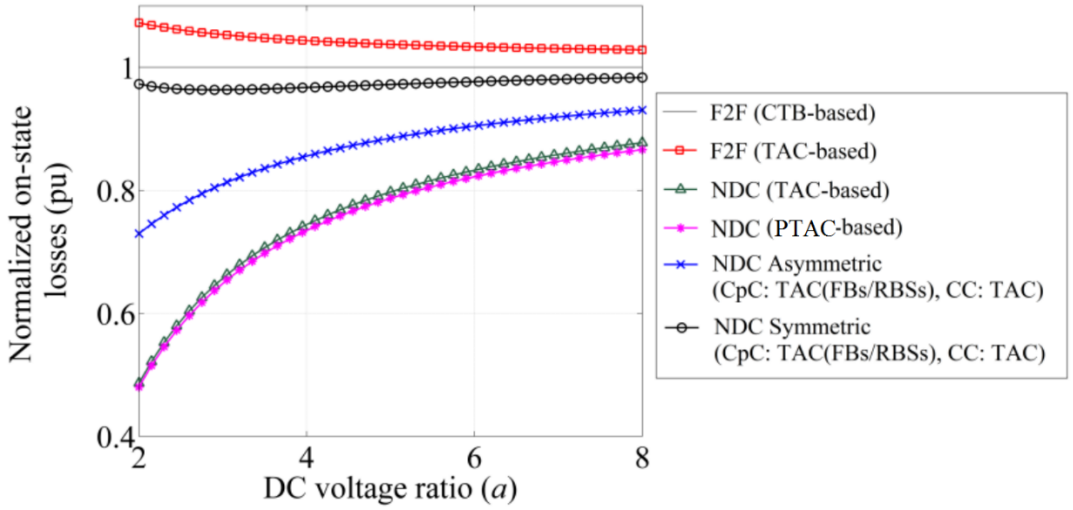



Figure 6-10 Normalized conduction losses of selected F2F and NDC converter structures [CTB-based F2F converter is taken as the base case].

## 6.6 Summary

In this chapter a non-isolated dc-dc converter topology denoted the nested dc converter (NDC) has been proposed and analyzed. Adapted to trapezoidal operation from so-called 'HVDC auto-transformer', the NDC offers higher power density as the power flow through the ac transformer is a fraction of the total power flow through the NDC. Despite being galvanically connected, the ac transformer establishes power flow between the involved bridges where phase shift angle control and modulation index control dictate the amount and direction of power flow. Overall, the NDC features lower conduction losses, installed semiconductor power, and energy storage compared to an equivalent front-to-front dc-dc converter utilizing the same bridge structures.

On the other hand, it was shown that dc fault protection requires extra voltage blocking added to the NDC through extra semiconductor switch stacks or cell stacks. The amount of extra voltage blocking has been quantified for several dc fault types and the NDC total installed semiconductor power has been compared to an

equivalent TAC front-to-front dc-dc converter design over a range voltage transformation ratios. It has been also noted that the size of the ac transformer approaches that of an equivalent front-to-front dc-dc converter the higher the voltage transformation ratio is. Therefore the NDC may be a viable option for connections with transformation ratios $a \leq 2$ where galvanic isolation is not necessary.

# Chapter 7

# Conclusions and Future Research

## 7.1 Summary and contributions

New tendencies in electric power generation, transmission, and distribution emerge worldwide in response to the ever increasing global power demand amid acute climate disruptions around the globe. Renewable energy sources are introduced in a fast pace to electricity grids along with new challenges with respect to transmission technology and system stability and security. It is envisaged that HVDC multi-terminal networks (MTDC) involving various nodes, generation points, and grid connection points will be built in the future. Chapter 1 has briefly shed light on the European Supergrid and Desertec projects as examples. It has been shown that there is a need for a high voltage high power dc-dc converter technology that improves the efficiency of the network dual to an ac transformer in an ac grid. It has also been pointed out that the active power electronics design of candidate dc-dc converters enables them to contribute to dc voltage regulation, power flow control, and even to carry out dc fault protection duties.

In light of these requirement Chapter 2 has provided an extensive review of various dc-dc converter topologies in the literature with emphasis on potential candidate designs. Merits and demerits of these designs have been pointed out and discussed and a set of characteristics has been identified as desirable for a candidate HVDC dc-dc converter.

Chapters 3, 4, and 5 focused on scaling the conventional isolated dual active bridge (or front-to-front) dc-dc converter to high voltage and power levels by utilizing fully or partially modular bridge designs. Medium frequency trapezoidal ac waveforms were introduced in Chapter 3 instead of two-level modulation or sinusoidal 50Hz

waveforms. It was shown that neither high frequency nor 50 Hz are suitable for such an application. This is due to the ac transformer low power density at low frequency and the physical clearance requirements at high voltage impeding volume reduction by frequency rise beyond a certain limit.

Several modular and hybrid configurations have been introduced and studied in Chapter 3 and Chapter 4, where some performance indices were used to compare these designs in Chapter 5. Chapter 6 has explored the utilization of such designs in a non-isolated topology with the advantage of higher power density and relatively less power electronics installation.

The contributions of this thesis can be summarised as follows:

- A set of desirable features of a high voltage and high power medium-voltage-ratio dc-dc converter has been identified. It was shown that galvanic isolation is mandatory in case of different grounding arrangements between the connected lines and to simplify isolation of dc faults, particularly pole-to-ground.
- A new mode of operation utilizing medium frequency trapezoidal ac waveforms in the ac link of the isolated front-to-front dc-dc converter has been proposed and analysed. So-called six-step trapezoidal waveforms were shown to result in piece-wise triangular excitation of the transformer core with relative simplification of ac transformer design task. A frequency less than 10-fold of the conventional power frequency was estimated sufficient to increase power density while mitigating parasitic phenomena and retaining strong mechanical structure to securely mount large bushings given the required physical clearances.
- Conventional modular multilevel converter (MMC) has been adapted to trapezoidal operation where it was shown that with high trapezoidal slopes the overall energy storage and installed power electronics can be significantly reduced without violating *dv/dt* tolerances. Respecting said *dv/dt* tolerances is important to simplify ac transformer insulation design and minimize electromagnetic interference.

- The adapted MMC design was denoted Quasi-two level converter (Q2LC) and it was shown that it has distinct features with respect to conventional MMC in terms of switching patterns, losses, circulating energy, and dc side current ripple.
- A detailed methodology to design the Q2LC components for utilization in a front-to-front dc-dc converter has been described and validated by simulations.
- A set of converter bridge designs suitable for trapezoidal operation have been proposed and studied. So-called transition arm converter (TAC) bridge has been derived from the Q2LC and shown to offer the same operating characteristics in steady state using less installed power electronics, and lower energy storage. Also, so-called parallel transition arm converter (PTAC) has been derived from the so-called controlled transition bridge (CTB); the latter being an equivalent design to the Q2LC for trapezoidal operation in dc-dc converters.
- Some of the derived TAC and PTAC bridge designs may allow- under certain conditions – the utilization of low-loss power electronics devices such as IGCTs or thyristors with further conduction loss curtailment with respect to the Q2LC case. It was also shown that converter station modularity is not necessarily compromised by utilization of TAC or PTAC instead of the Q2LC.
- Experimental validation of the Q2LC and the ATAC concepts have been provided where the low-common mode currents, low energy storage, simple voltage balancing, and load-step performance have been confirmed.
- Soft switching ranges have been studied for the considered application voltage and power levels. Thorough comparisons in terms of conduction losses, energy storage, and power electronics has been carried out.
- It has been shown that modulation index control is more flexible than conventional two-level dual active bridges. Given the narrow steady state control range in a dc grid application, suitable modulation index control methods have been been presented. It can be observed that under fault the sinusoidal MMC-based front-to-front dc-dc converter has a clear advantage in

terms of black start and current control under fault, albeit at the expense of increased power electronics and energy storage.

- DC fault protection capabilities of the front-to-front dc-dc converter have been tackled at system level and validated by a detailed simulation of a three terminal dc system.
- A ring dc node configuration has been studied and evaluated as a candidate connection method when three or more dc lines at different voltage levels are to be connected by a multi-port dc-dc converter station.
- A nested non-isolated dc-dc converter (NDC) configuration has been derived from so-called 'HVDC auto-transformer' and adapted for trapezoidal ac waveforms. It was shown that this configuration offers an increase in power density. Furthermore, conduction losses, installed power electronics, and energy storage are curtailed with respect to equivalent front-to-front dc-dc converter structures (provided same bridge structures are utilized for comparison)
- NDC performance under various dc faults has been studied and solutions have been proposed to achieve satisfactory system protection. It has been shown that NDC designs require extra semiconductors to block dc faults. This has been quantified for several dc fault cases.

## 7.2 Future Research

This thesis has proposed a class of dc/ac converters suitable for utilization in HVDC dc-dc conversion with trapezoidal ac waveforms. The following includes planned and recommended future research:

- To carry out detailed ac transformer design with emphasis on iron losses, losses due to parasitic phenomena, optimization of operating frequency at example voltage power levels.
- Detailed study of the utilization of low loss devices in the TAC, PTAC, and CTB converter designs. Provision of adequate switching sequences and snubber circuits design for IGCTs or thyristors are key studies to conduct on

judging the convenience of either low-loss device type for a certain application and converter design.

- Study of advanced modulation index control methods (e.g. advanced selective harmonic elimination techniques) for use in the considered dc-dc converter designs with trapezoidal waveforms particularly during transient operation or to facilitate black start flowing a dc fault.
- Further study of the current control capabilities in the healthy side bridge under a dc fault in light of said advanced modulation index control methods. In such control mode, a study of harmonic content and resulting ac transformer losses is mandatory.
- Investigation of dc fault detection algorithms and whether current limiting dc chokes are needed. When utilized, dc choke impact on dc current ripple and dc-link capacitor size is an important aspect to study.
- Whether or not dc chokes are used, dc-link capacitors sizing to act as energy buffers under faults is an important aspect to study in comparison to the values used for two-level or three-level PWM VSCs.
- Briefly studied in the literature for the CTB, the utilization of the TAC and PTAC structures for dc/ac conversion in HVDC terminal stations with ac harmonic filtering may be an interesting aspect to investigate given the low energy storage with respect to the MMC and the lower *dv/dt* with respect to two-level or three-level PWM VSCs.

# References


[1] U. Nations, “The United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change,” *Clim. Chang. Law*, vol. 1, no. 2014, pp. 127–187, 2009.

[2] UNFCCC, “Fact sheet the Kyoto Protocol,” no. December 1997, pp. 1–8, 2012.

[3] UNFCCC. Conference of the Parties (COP), “Adoption of the Paris Agreement. Proposal by the President.,” *Paris Clim. Chang. Conf. - Novemb. 2015, COP 21*, vol. 21932, no. December, p. 32, 2015.

[4] REN 21, “Renewables 2016. Global status report,” 2016.

[5] K. Meah and S. Ula, “Comparative evaluation of HVDC and HVAC transmission systems,” *2007 IEEE Power Eng. Soc. Gen. Meet. PES*, pp. 1–5, 2007.

[6] P. Kohnstam, E. Fullerton, and A. Finn, “Magic Bus,” *IEEE Power Energy Mag.*, no. Nov/Dec 2012, pp. 39–49.

[7] J. Graham, S. E. Santo, and A. Kumar, “Comparison of the Performance of HVDC and HVAC Overhead Transmission Lines for the Itaipu System,” *GridTech*, no. April, 2013.

[8] Power-Transmission-Division, “High Voltage Direct Current Transmission – Proven technology for power Exchange,” *Siemens AG*, p. 48, 2011.

[9] “European Supergrid,” *Wikipedia*. [Online]. Available: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European_super_grid.

[10] “Desertec,” *Wikipedia*. [Online]. Available: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Desertec.

[11] D. Zhang, M. Haeusler, H. Rao, C. Shang, T. Shang, and A. Location,

"Converter Station Design of the ± 800 kV UHVDC Project Yunnan-Guangdong."

[12] V. F. Lescale and U. Åström, "The Xiangjiaba-Shanghai 800 kV UHVDC project Status and special aspects," *Design*, no. December 2009, 2010.

[13] J. Jessus, Rui Castro, J.M. Ferreira, "HVDC Connection of Offshore Wind Parks : VSC vs LCC with STATCOM," *Int. Conf. Power Syst. Transients (IPST2011)., Delft., Netherlands.,*.

[14] R. Marquardt, "Modular Multilevel Converter: An universal concept for HVDC-Networks and extended DC-bus-applications," *2010 Int. Power Electron. Conf. - ECCE Asia -, IPEC 2010*, pp. 502–507, 2010.

[15] M. Davies, M. Dommaschk, J. Dorn, J. Lang, D. Retzmann, and D. Soerangr, "HVDC PLUS – Basics and Principle of Operation," *Siemens Ag*, pp. 1–24, 2011.

[16] R. Zeng, L. Xu, L. Yao, and J. Morrow, "Pre-charging and DC Fault Ride-Through of Hybrid MMC Based HVDC Systems," *Power Deliv. IEEE Trans.*, vol. PP, no. 99, p. 1, 2014.

[17] K. Ilves, L. Bessegato, L. Harnefors, S. Norrga, and H. Nee, "Semi-Full-Bridge Submodule for Modular Multilevel Converters," pp. 1067–1074, 2015.

[18] J. Häfner and B. Jacobson, "Proactive Hybrid HVDC Breakers - A key innovation for reliable HVDC grids ABB AB , HVDC," 2011.

[19] C. M. Franck, "HVDC circuit breakers: A review identifying future research needs," *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 26, no. 2, pp. 998–1007, 2011.

[20] X. Li, Q. Song, W. Liu, H. Rao, S. Xu, and L. Li, "Protection of nonpermanent faults on DC overhead lines in MMC-based HVDC systems," *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 28, no. 1, pp. 483–490, 2013.

[21] A. a. Elserougi, A. S. Abdel-Khalik, A. M. Massoud, and S. Ahmed, "A new

protection scheme for HVDC converters against DC-side faults with current suppression capability," *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 29, no. 4, pp. 1569–1577, 2014.

[22] T. W. Calgary, "An Ultra-fast Disconnecting Switch for a Hybrid HVDC Breaker – a technical breakthrough," 2013.

[23] J. Beerten and R. Belmans, "Analysis of power sharing and voltage deviations in droop-controlled DC grids," *IEEE Trans. Power Syst.*, vol. 28, no. 4, pp. 4588–4597, 2013.

[24] R. T. Pinto, P. Bauer, S. F. Rodrigues, E. J. Wiggelinkhuizen, J. Pierik, and B. Ferreira, "A Novel Distributed Direct-Voltage Control Strategy for Grid Integration of Offshore Wind Energy Systems Through MTDC Network," *Ind. Electron. IEEE Trans.*, vol. 60, no. 6, pp. 2429–2441, 2013.

[25] N. Macleod, M. Callavik, M. Boden, M. Dhesi, R. Huuva, N. Kuljaca, F. Schettler, P. Brinckerhoff, A. Grid, N. Grid, and U. Kingdom, "A Technological Roadmap for the Development of the European Supergrid," *Cigré Int. Symp. - Across Borders - HVDC Syst. Mark. Integr.*, 2015.

[26] B. W. Williams, "Basic DC-to-DC converters," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 23, no. 1, pp. 387–401, 2008.

[27] A. Darwish, "Current Source DC-DC and DC-AC Converters with Continuous Energy Flow," 2015.

[28] P. Li, "New Types of Voltage Source Converters Applied in Flexible AC Transmission System Devices," University of Strathclyde, 2015.

[29] J. Rodríguez, J. S. Lai, and F. Z. Peng, "Multilevel inverters: A survey of topologies, controls, and applications," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, vol. 49, no. 4, pp. 724–738, 2002.

[30] A. Nabae, I. Takahashi, and H. Akagi, "A New Neutral-Point-Clamped PWM Inverter," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. IA-17, no. 5, pp. 518–523, 1981.

[31] P. M. Bhagwat and V. R. Stefanovic, “Generalized Structure of a Multilevel PWM Inverter,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. IA-19, no. 6, pp. 1057–1069, 1983.

[32] T. a. Meynard and H. Foch, “Multi-level conversion: high voltage choppers and voltage-source inverters,” *PESC `92 Rec. 23rd Annu. IEEE Power Electron. Spec. Conf.*, pp. 397–403, 1992.

[33] P. Barbosa, P. Steimer, J. Steinke, M. Winkelnkemper, and N. Celanovic, “Active-neutral-point-clamped (ANPC) multilevel converter technology,” *2005 Eur. Conf. Power Electron. Appl.*, pp. 1–10, 2005.

[34] A. Chen and X. He, “Research on hybrid-clamped multilevel-inverter topologies,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, vol. 53, no. 6, pp. 1898–1907, 2006.

[35] P. Rodriguez, M. D. Bellar, R. S. Muñoz-Aguilar, S. Busquets-Monge, and F. Blaabjerg, “Multilevel-clamped multilevel converters (MLC 2),” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 27, no. 3, pp. 1055–1060, 2012.

[36] H. Iman-Eini, J.-L. Schanen, S. Farhangi, and J. Roudet, “A Modular Strategy for Control and Voltage Balancing of Cascaded H-Bridge Rectifiers,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 23, no. 5, pp. 2428–2442, 2008.

[37] R. Marquardt and A. Lesnicar, “New Concept for High Voltage Modular Multilevel Converter,” *PESC 2004 - Aachen*, 2004.

[38] R. Marquardt, “‘Stromrichterschaltungenmit verteilten Energiespeichern’, German Patent DE 10 103 031/24.01, 24 Jan 2001.”

[39] S. Rohner, S. Bernet, M. Hiller, and R. Sommer, “Modulation, losses, and semiconductor requirements of modular multilevel converters,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, vol. 57, no. 8, pp. 2633–2642, 2010.

[40] L. Angquist, a Antonopoulos, D. Siemaszko, K. Ilves, M. Vasiladiotis, and H.-P. Nee, “Open-loop control of modular multilevel converters using estimation of stored energy,” *Ind. Appl. IEEE Trans.*, vol. 47, no. 6, pp. 2516–

2524, 2011.

[41] M. Saeedifard and R. Iravani, “Dynamic performance of a modular multilevel back-to-back HVDC system,” *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 25, no. 4, pp. 2903–2912, 2010.

[42] K. Ilves, S. Norrga, L. Harnefors, and H.-P. Nee, “On Energy Storage Requirements in Modular Multilevel Converters,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 29, no. 1, pp. 77–88, 2014.

[43] a. Antonopoulos, L. Angquist, and H.-P. Nee, “On dynamics and voltage control of the Modular Multilevel Converter,” *13th Eur. Conf. Power Electron. Appl.*, pp. 1–10, 2009.

[44] Y. Li and F. Wang, “Arm inductance selection principle for modular multilevel converters with circulating current suppressing control,” *2013 Twenty-Eighth Annu. IEEE Appl. Power Electron. Conf. Expo.*, pp. 1321–1325, 2013.

[45] Q. Tu, Z. Xu, and L. Xu, “Reduced Switching-frequency modulation and circulating current suppression for modular multilevel converters,” *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 26, no. 3, pp. 2009–2017, 2011.

[46] G. P. Adam, O. Anaya-Lara, G. M. Burt, D. Telford, B. W. Williams, and J. R. McDonald, “Modular multilevel inverter: pulse width modulation and capacitor balancing technique,” *IET Power Electron.*, vol. 3, no. 5, p. 702, 2010.

[47] M. Hagiwara and H. Akagi, “Control and Experiment of Pulsewidth-Modulated Modular Multilevel Converters,” vol. 24, no. 7, pp. 154–161, 2008.

[48] M. Hagiwara, R. Maeda, and H. Akagi, “Control and analysis of the modular multilevel cascade converter based on double-star chopper-cells (MMCC-DSCC),” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 26, no. 6, pp. 1649–1658, 2011.

[49] M. a. Perez, S. Bernet, J. Rodriguez, S. Kouro, and R. Lizana, “Circuit

Topologies, Modelling, Control Schemes and Applications of Modular Multilevel Converters," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. PP, no. 99, pp. 1–1, 2014.

[50] G. S. Konstantinou, M. Ciobotaru, and V. G. Agelidis, "Selective harmonic elimination pulse-width modulation of modular multilevel converters," *IET Power Electron.*, vol. 6, no. 1, pp. 96–107, 2013.

[51] P. M. Meshram and V. B. Borghate, "A simplified nearest level control (NLC) voltage balancing method for modular multilevel converter (MMC)," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 30, no. 1, pp. 450–462, 2015.

[52] G. T. Son, H. J. Lee, T. S. Nam, Y. H. Chung, U. H. Lee, S. T. Baek, K. Hur, and J. W. Park, "Design and control of a modular multilevel HVDC converter with redundant power modules for noninterruptible energy transfer," *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 27, no. 3, pp. 1611–1619, 2012.

[53] B. Jacobson, P. Karlsson, G. Asplund, L. Harnefors, and T. Jonsson, "VSC-HVDC transmission with cascaded two-level converters," *CIGRE Sess.*, pp. B4–B110, 2010.

[54] J. Peralta, H. Saad, S. Dennetière, J. Mahseredjian, and S. Nguefeu, "Detailed and averaged models for a 401-level MMC-HVDC system," *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 27, no. 3, pp. 1501–1508, 2012.

[55] N. Kirby, "Tres Amigas and VSC Technology (ALSTOM)," 2011. [Online]. Available: http://www.ece.uidaho.edu/hvdcfacts/Presentations/Kirby2011.pdf.

[56] O. Heyman and ABB, "HVDC Light ® It's time to connect," *ABB ID No. POW-0038*, pp. 1–72, 2012.

[57] "Cigre_B4_Dc_Grid_Test_System_Final_Corrected_Version_With_Intro_V15." .

[58] N. Ahmed, S. Member, L. Ängquist, and S. Norrga, "A Computationally

Efficient Continuous Model for the Modular Multilevel Converter," vol. 2, no. 4, pp. 1139–1148, 2014.

[59] A. Nami, J. Liang, F. Dijkhuizen, and G. D. Demetriades, "Modular multilevel converters for HVDC applications: Review on converter cells and functionalities," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 30, no. 1, pp. 18–36, 2015.

[60] Z. Rong, X. Lie, Y. Liangzhong, and B. W. Williams, "Design and Operation of a Hybrid Modular Multilevel Converter," *Power Electron. IEEE Trans.*, vol. 30, no. 3, pp. 1137–1146, 2015.

[61] A. Nami, J. Liang, F. Dijkhuizen, and P. Lundberg, "Analysis of modular multilevel converters with DC short circuit fault blocking capability in bipolar HVDC transmission systems," *2015 17th Eur. Conf. Power Electron. Appl. (EPE'15 ECCE-Europe)*, pp. 1–10, 2015.

[62] M. M. C. Merlin, T. C. Green, P. D. Mitcheson, D. R. Trainer, R. Critchley, W. Crookes, and F. Hassan, "The alternate arm converter: A new hybrid multilevel converter with DC-fault blocking capability," *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 29, no. 1, pp. 310–317, 2014.

[63] F. J. Moreno, M. M. C. Merlin, D. R. Trainer, T. C. Green, K. J. Dyke, A. Grid, and S. L. Ave, "Zero Phase Sequence Voltage Injection for the Alternate Arm Converter," pp. 1–6.

[64] R. W. a a De Doncker, D. M. Divan, and M. H. Kheraluwala, "A three-phase soft-switched high-power-density DC/DC converter for high-power applications," *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 27, no. 1 pt 1, pp. 63–73, 1991.

[65] R. U. Lenke, "A Contribution to the Design of Isolated DC-DC Converters for Utility Applications," RWTH Aachen University, 2012.

[66] H. Van Hoek, M. Neubert, and R. W. De Doncker, "Enhanced modulation strategy for a three-phase dual active bridge - Boosting efficiency of an electric vehicle converter," *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 28, no. 12, pp. 5499–5507, 2013.

[67] S. P. Engel, N. Soltau, H. Stagge, and R. W. De Doncker, “Dynamic and Balanced Control of Three-Phase High-Power Dual-Active Bridge DC–DC Converters in DC-Grid Applications,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 28, no. 4, pp. 1880–1889, 2013.

[68] S. P. Engel, N. Soltau, H. Stagge, and R. W. De Doncker, “Improved instantaneous current control for high-power three-phase dual-active bridge DC-DC Converters,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 29, no. 8, pp. 4067–4077, 2014.

[69] R. L. Steigerwald, “A comparison of high-power DC-DC soft-switched converter topologies,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 32, no. 5, pp. 1139–1145, 1996.

[70] P. Köllensperger, R. U. Lenke, S. Schröder, and R. W. De Doncker, “Design of a flexible control platform for soft-switching multilevel inverters,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 22, no. 5, pp. 1778–1785, 2007.

[71] G. Ortiz, J. Biela, D. Bortis, and J. W. Kolar, “1 megawatt, 20 kHz, isolated, bidirectional 12kV to 1.2kV DC-DC converter for renewable energy applications,” *2010 Int. Power Electron. Conf. - ECCE Asia -, IPEC 2010*, pp. 3212–3219, 2010.

[72] S. P. Engel, M. Stieneker, N. Soltau, S. Rabiee, H. Stagge, and R. W. De Doncker, “Comparison of the Modular Multilevel DC Converter and the Dual-Active Bridge Converter for Power Conversion in HVDC and MVDC Grids,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 8993, no. c, pp. 1–1, 2014.

[73] D. S. Gautam and A. K. S. Bhat, “A comparison of soft-switched DC-to-DC converters for electrolyzer application,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 28, no. 1, pp. 54–63, 2013.

[74] T. Jimichi, H. Fujita, S. Member, and H. Akagi, “A Dynamic Voltage Restorer Equipped With a High-Frequency Isolated DC-DC Converter,” *System*, vol. 47, no. 1, pp. 169–175, 2011.

[75] H. Cha, R. Ding, Q. Tang, and F. Z. Peng, “Design and development of high-power DC-DC converter for metro vehicle system,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 44, no. 6, pp. 1795–1804, 2008.

[76] R. L. Steigerwald, “Three-Phase (LC)(L)-Type Series-Resonant ConverterWith Capacitive Output Filter,” vol. I, no. 4, pp. 439–444, 1985.

[77] A. A. Aboushady, K. H. Ahmed, S. J. Finney, and B. W. Williams, “Linearized large signal modeling, analysis, and control design of phase-controlled series-parallel resonant converters using state feedback,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 28, no. 8, pp. 3896–3911, 2013.

[78] D. Jovcic, “Bidirectional, high-power DC transformer,” *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 24, no. 4, pp. 2276–2283, 2009.

[79] D. Jovcic, B. T. Ooi, S. Member, and L. Fellow, “Developing DC Transmission Networks Using DC Transformers,” *IEEE Trans. Power Deliv.*, vol. 25, no. 4, pp. 2535–2543, 2010.

[80] N. Ahmed, a Haider, D. Van Hertem, L. Zhang, and H.-P. Nee, “Prospects and challenges of future HVDC SuperGrids with modular multilevel converters,” *Power Electron. Appl. (EPE 2011), Proc. 2011-14th Eur. Conf.*, pp. 1–10, 2011.

[81] T. Luth, M. M. C. Merlin, T. C. Green, F. Hassan, and C. D. Barker, “High-frequency operation of a DC/AC/DC system for HVDC applications,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 29, no. 8, pp. 4107–4115, 2014.

[82] A. Schön and M. M. Bakran, “High power HVDC-DC converters for the interconnection of HVDC lines with different line topologies,” *2014 Int. Power Electron. Conf. IPEC-Hiroshima - ECCE Asia 2014*, pp. 3255–3262, 2014.

[83] W. Lin, J. Wen, and S. Cheng, “Multiport DC-DC Autotransformer for Interconnecting Multiple High-Voltage DC Systems at Low Cost,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 30, no. 12, pp. 6648–6660, 2015.

[84] S. Kenzelmann, A. Rufer, D. Dujic, F. Canales, and Y. de Novaes, “Isolated DC/DC Structure based on Modular Multilevel Converter,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. PP, no. 99, pp. 1–1, 2014.

[85] J. a. Ferreira, “The multilevel modular DC converter,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 28, no. 10, pp. 4460–4465, 2013.

[86] G. J. Kish and P. W. Lehn, “A modular bidirectional DC power flow controller with fault blocking capability for DC networks,” *2013 IEEE 14th Work. Control Model. Power Electron. COMPEL 2013*, 2013.

[87] G. J. Kish, M. Ranjram, and P. W. Lehn, “A modular multilevel DC/DC converter with fault blocking capability for HVDC interconnects,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 30, no. 1, pp. 148–162, 2015.

[88] K. Ilves, L. Bessegato, and S. Norrga, “Comparison of cascaded multilevel converter topologies for AC/AC conversion,” *2014 Int. Power Electron. Conf. IPEC-Hiroshima - ECCE Asia 2014*, pp. 1087–1094, 2014.

[89] J. Yang, Z. He, H. Pang, and G. Tang, “The hybrid-cascaded DC-DC converters suitable for HVdc applications,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 30, no. 10, pp. 5358–5363, 2015.

[90] N. Baars, J. Everts, C. Wijnands, and E. Lomonova, “Performance Evaluation of a Three-Phase Dual Active Bridge DC-DC Converter with Different Transformer-Winding Configurations,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 8993, no. c, pp. 1–1, 2015.

[91] N. Soltau, D. Eggers, K. Hameyer, and R. W. De Doncker, “Iron Losses in a Medium-Frequency Transformer Operated in a High-Power DC–DC Converter,” *IEEE Trans. Magn.*, vol. 50, no. 2, pp. 953–956, 2014.

[92] M. H. Kheraluwala, R. W. Gascoigne, D. M. Divan, and E. D. Baumann, “Performance Characterization of a High-Power Dual Active Bridge dc-to-dc Converter,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 28, no. 6, pp. 1294–1301, 1992.

[93] X. Li and Y. F. Li, “An optimized phase-shift modulation for fast transient response in a dual-active-bridge converter,” *IEEE Trans. Power Electron.*, vol. 29, no. 6, pp. 2661–2665, 2014.

[94] N. Soltau and R. U. Lenke, “High-Power DC-DC Converter,” vol. 5, no. 5.

[95] N. Soltau, H. A. B. Siddique, and R. W. De Doncker, “Comprehensive modeling and control strategies for a three-phase dual-active bridge,” *2012 Int. Conf. Renew. Energy Res. Appl.*, pp. 1–6, 2012.

[96] G.-J. S. G.-J. Su and L. T. L. Tang, “A Three-Phase Bidirectional DC-DC Converter for Automotive Applications,” *2008 IEEE Ind. Appl. Soc. Annu. Meet.*, pp. 1–7, 2008.

[97] M. D. Bellar, T. S. Wu, A. Tchamdjou, J. Mahdavi, and M. Ehsani, “A review of soft-switched DC-AC converters,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Appl.*, vol. 34, no. 4, pp. 847–860, 1998.

[98] C. Oates, K. Dyke, and D. Trainer, “The use of trapezoid waveforms within converters for HVDC,” *2014 16th Eur. Conf. Power Electron. Appl.*, pp. 1–10, 2014.

[99] A. K. Rathore, A. K. S. Bhat, and R. Oruganti, “Analysis, design and experimental results of wide range ZVS active-clamped L-L type current-fed DC/DC converter for fuel cells to utility interface,” *IEEE Trans. Ind. Electron.*, vol. 59, no. 1, pp. 473–485, 2012.

[100] R. Zeng, L. Xu, and L. Yao, “DC / DC Converters Based on Hybrid MMC for HVDC Grid Interconnection,” no. Mmc, pp. 1–6.

# APPENDEX A: Sample Codes for verification

## I. Loss calculations for the NDC (Figure 6-10):

```
%Normalized losses in NDC
close all
k=120000/77;
Vbt=1.06;
Vct=1.4;
Rbt=1.3e-3;
Rct=.325e-3;
a=2:0.15:8;
N=30;
%F2F CTB
Actb=2*Vct;
Bctb=Rct;
Ploss_ctb=2*N/3*k*(2*Actb+((a+1)./a*Bctb*k));
base=Ploss_ctb;
plot(a, Ploss_ctb./base)
hold on
%F2F TAC
Atac=Vbt+Vct;
Btac=0.5*(Rct+Rbt);
Ploss_tac=2*N/3*k*(2*Atac+((a+1)./a*Btac*k));
plot(a, Ploss_tac./base,'r')
%NDC TAC No protection
psi_tac= 2*(a-1)./a*Atac;
beta_tac=(a-1)./a*Btac;
Ploss_ndc_tac=2*N/3*k*(psi_tac+ beta_tac*k);
plot(a,Ploss_ndc_tac./base,'c')
%NDC CTB No protection
psi_ctb= 2*(a-1)./a*Actb;
beta_ctb=(a-1)./a*Bctb;
Ploss_ndc_ctb=2*N/3*k*(psi_ctb+ beta_ctb*k);
plot(a,Ploss_ndc_ctb./base,'m')
%NDC Asym. TAC FB protection
psi_afb= (2-(1./a))*Atac;
beta_afb=1./(a.^2).*(((a-1).^2)+a)*Btac;
Ploss_ndc_afb=2*N/3*k*(psi_afb+ beta_afb*k);
plot(a,Ploss_ndc_afb./base,'y')
%NDC sym. TAC FB protection
psi_sfb= 2*Atac;
beta_sfb=1./(a.^2).*(((a-1).^2)+a+1)*Btac;
Ploss_ndc_sfb=2*N/3*k*(psi_sfb+ beta_sfb*k);
plot(a,Ploss_ndc_sfb./base,'g')
```

```
legend('F2F (CTB-based)','F2F (TAC-based)','NDC (TAC-
based)','NDC (STAC-based)','NDC Asymm.
[TAC+TAC(FB)]','NDC Symm. [TAC+TAC(FB)]')
axis tight
```

## II. Sorting algorithm (for MMC cell voltage balancing):

```
% Ascend
function Vc_ascend = Sorting(Vc_sm,n)
nn=length(Vc_sm);
Vc_temp=Vc_sm;
for i=1:nn
    j = i;
    for k = i:nn
        if(Vc_temp(j)>Vc_temp(k))
            j = k;
        end
    end
    temp = Vc_temp(i);
    Vc_temp(i) = Vc_temp(j);
    Vc_temp(j) = temp;
end
%-----------------------------------
for i=1:nn
    for j=1:nn
            if(Vc_temp(i)==Vc_sm(j))
                Vc_temp(i)=j;
            end
    end
end
%-----------------------------------
for i=1:nn
    if (i>n)
        Vc_temp(i)=0;
    end
end
x=zeros(1,nn);
for i = 1:nn
    if (Vc_temp(i)~=0)
    x(Vc_temp(i))=Vc_temp(i);
    end
end
for i=1:nn
    if(x(i)~=0)
        x(i)=1;
    end
```

```
end
Vc_ascend=x;

%Descend

function Vc_ascend = Sorting(Vc_sm,n)
nn=length(Vc_sm);
Vc_temp=Vc_sm;
for i=1:nn
    j = i;
    for k = i:nn
        if(Vc_temp(j)>Vc_temp(k))
            j = k;
        end
    end
    temp = Vc_temp(i);
    Vc_temp(i) = Vc_temp(j);
    Vc_temp(j) = temp;
end
%-----------------------------------
for i=1:nn
    for j=1:nn
            if(Vc_temp(i)==Vc_sm(j))
                Vc_temp(i)=j;
            end
    end
end
%-----------------------------------
for i=1:nn
    if (i>n)
        Vc_temp(i)=0;
    end
end
x=zeros(1,nn);
for i = 1:nn
    if (Vc_temp(i)~=0)
    x(Vc_temp(i))=Vc_temp(i);
    end
end
for i=1:nn
    if(x(i)~=0)
        x(i)=1;
    end
end
Vc_ascend=x;
```

## III. Study of parameters governing trapezoidal voltage harmonic components (section 3.2.3)

```
figure
[ws,N]= meshgrid(500:100/3:1500,10:1:40);
Td=3e-6;
x=.5*2*pi*ws.*(N-1)*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(ws, N,Vof)
hold on
[ws,N]= meshgrid(500:100/3:1500,10:1:40);
Td=5e-6;
x=.5*2*pi*ws.*(N-1)*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(ws, N,Vof)
hold on
[ws,N]= meshgrid(500:100/3:1500,10:1:40);
Td=8e-6;
x=.5*2*pi*ws.*(N-1)*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(ws, N,Vof)

%----------------------------------------

[N,Td]= meshgrid(10:1:40,2e-6:0.2e-6:8e-6);
ws=2*pi*1000;
x=.5*ws.*(N-1).*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(N, Td,Vof)
hold on
[N,Td]= meshgrid(10:1:40,2e-6:0.2e-6:8e-6);
ws=2*pi*1200;
x=.5*ws.*(N-1).*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(N, Td,Vof)
hold on
[N,Td]= meshgrid(10:1:40,2e-6:0.2e-6:8e-6);
ws=2*pi*500;
x=.5*ws.*(N-1).*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(N, Td,Vof)

%----------------------------------------

% close all
% figure
```

```
hold on
grid on
k=9;
Td=5e-6;
N=20;
ws=1000;
x=.5*k*2*pi*ws*(N-1)*Td;
Vof=sin(x)/x;
Vof

[Tdd,Nm]= meshgrid(linspace(2e-6,10e-
6,10),linspace(1,N/2,10));
Vok=eye(length(Nm));

sum1=0;
for j=1:2:(N-1)
    a=sin(k/2*(pi-(j*Td*2*pi*ws)));
    sum1=sum1+a;
end

for i = 1:1:(length(Tdd))
    for j=1:1:length(Nm)
        sum2=0;
        for n=1:1:j
            sum2=sum2+sin(k*Tdd(i,i)*2*pi*ws*(j-(n-1)));
        end
        Vok(j,i)=2/N*sin(k*pi/2)*(sum1-(sum2));
    end
end
mesh(Nm,Tdd,Vok)
```

## IV. Calculating harmonic content for phase shift modulation (section 5.2.3)

```
figure
hold on
grid on
Td=5e-6;
N=20;
ws=250;
ph=linspace(0,45,1000);
vok=linspace(0,1,length(ph));
sigma=180-(2*ph);
for k=1:2:9
    for i=1:1:length(ph)
```

```
        sum=0;
        for j=1:2:(N-1)
            sum=sum+sin(k/2*((sigma(i)*pi/180)-
(j*Td*2*pi*ws)));
        end
        vok(i)=2/N*sin(k*pi/2)*sum;

    end
    plot(ph,vok)
end
legend('{\itk}=1','{\itk}=3','{\itk}=5','{\itk}=7','{\itk
}=9')
title('250Hz')
```

## V. Calculating harmonic content for phase inter-switching modulation (section 5.2.3)

```
figure
[Td,N]= meshgrid((2e-6):(7/30*1e-6):(10e-6),10:1:40);
ws=500;
subplot(2,3,1)
x=.5*2*3*pi*ws.*(N-1).*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(Td, N,Vof)
colormap hot
colorbar
subplot(2,3,2)
x=.5*2*5*pi*ws.*(N-1).*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(Td, N,Vof)
colormap hot
colorbar

subplot(2,3,3)
x=.5*2*7*pi*ws.*(N-1).*Td;
Vof=sin(x)./x;
surf(Td, N,Vof)
colormap hot
colorbar
```

## VI. Calculation of Q2LC-based DAB soft switching range (section 5.3)

```
hold on
Td=12e-6;
Ns=10;
```

```
Tt=(Ns-1)*Td;
ws=2*pi*500;
phi=linspace(ws*Tt,20*pi/180,80);
rho=zeros(1,80);

%for j=1:1:length(phi)
for i=1:1:length(phi)
rho(i)=(3*ws*Tt+4*pi-6*phi(i))/(4*pi-3*ws*Tt);
end
plot( phi/pi*180,rho,'c*')
%end
hold on
plot(phi/pi*180,1./rho,'c*')

%-----------------------------------------
figure
hold on
Td=linspace(3,7,50);
Ns=10;
Tt=(Ns-1)*Td*1e-6;
ws=2*pi*250;
phi=pi/180*5;
rho=zeros(1,50);

%for j=1:1:length(phi)
for i=1:1:length(Tt)
rho(i)=(3*ws*Tt(i)+4*pi-6*phi)/(4*pi-3*ws*Tt(i));
end
plot(Td*1e6,rho,'c')
%end
hold on
plot(Td*1e6,1./rho,'c')
```

# APPENDIX B: Experimental test rig

## Appendix A

In this section, details about hardware elements and simulation software are presented. A description about the measurement devices, control, and power circuits is given. The preparation for interfacing the different converters to the distributed grid is presented.

### A.1 Hardware structure:

A photograph of the hardware setup is shown in Figure A.1. The overall system consists of:

- DSP: 32-bit TMS320F28335 150MHz floating point controller;
- Current and voltage measurement transducer boards;
- Current and voltage measurement probes;
- Gate drive circuits;
- The converter phase leg;
- Variable load;
- DC power supplies;
- CAN bus monitoring module.

### A.1.1 Digital Signal Processor (DSP)

The DSP is responsible for reading the actual voltage and current waveforms from the measurement devices. Then, the DSP controls the overall operation according to the loaded program in its flash memory. Accordingly, the controller must have some features as fast calculating processor, sufficient storage memory, compatible and fast analogue to digital converters, and easy programming packages. For these reasons, Texas Instrument (TI) TMS320F28335 floating point DSP is used. The main task of

the floating point DSP is to generate the PWM signal for the gate drive circuits which operate the active switches of the different power converters. The output port of the DSP is compatible with the gate drive input voltages and currents and hence, TMS320F28335 DSP does not require additional interfacing circuits. The measurement transducers are designed to have voltages and currents within the read range of the DSP. TMS320F28335 DSP support real-time monitoring and control by sending the data to addressed memory in the RAM and display it by Code Composer Studio V.3.3 software. One of the most important features of the TMS320F28335 DSP, that it can be programmed either by C, C++ coding or MATLAB SIMULINK. This eases the programming process when high level programming is required. Moreover, the DSP support CAN protocol and hence, can be interfaced with CANalayzer boxes. All the variables inside the running C code can be transferred with CANalyzer Vector-XL to the host PC via CAN communication protocol. CANalyzer enables real time monitoring, controlling the system variables and provides also data logging excel sheets for more than 32 different signals all running in the background without affecting the processor's main tasks. In this thesis, two TMS320F28335 DSPs are used in parallel to control the different inverters. A photograph for the controller is shown in Figure A.2.

**Features:**

- High-Performance Static CMOS Technology
- High-Performance 32-Bit CPU
    - IEEE-754 Single-Precision Floating-Point Unit (FPU)
    - Harvard Bus Architecture
    - 150 MHz (6.67-ns Cycle Time)
    - Code-Efficient (in C/C++ and Assembly)
    - Fast Interrupt Response and Processing
- Memory
    - Over 2M x 16 Address Reach
    - 256K data flash
    - 34K on-Chip SARAM

    - 8K x 16 Boot ROM
    - 16K instruction cache
- Clock and System Control
    - Dynamic PLL Ratio Changes Supported
    - On-Chip Oscillator
    - Watchdog Timer Module
- Peripheral Interrupt Expansion (PIE) Block That Supports 58 Peripheral Interrupts
- 128-Bit Security Key/Lock
    - Protects Flash/OTP/RAM Blocks
    - Prevents Firmware Reverse Engineering
- Enhanced Control Peripherals
    - Up to 18 PWM Outputs
    - Up to 6 HRPWM Outputs With 150 ps MEP Resolution
    - Up to 6 Event Capture Inputs
    - Up to 2 Quadrature Encoder Interfaces
    - Up to 8 32-Bit Timers (6 for eCAPs and 2 for eQEPs)
- Three 32-Bit CPU Timers
- Serial Port Peripherals
    - Up to 2 CAN Modules
    - Up to 3 SCI (UART) Modules
    - Up to 2 McBSP Modules (Configurable as SPI)
    - One SPI Module
    - One Inter-Integrated-Circuit (I2C) Bus
- Analogue to Digital Converters (ADC)
    - 12-Bit ADC, 16 Channels
    - 80-ns Conversion Rate
    - 2 x 8 Channel Input Multiplexer

- Two Sample-and-Hold
- Single/Simultaneous Conversions
- Internal or External Reference

- Digital Inputs and Outputs
  - Up to 88 Individually Programmable, Multiplexed GPIO Pins With Input Filtering

### A.1.2 Current and voltage measurement transducer boards

The following transducer circuit designs serve for measuring cell voltages and arm currents necessary for the voltage balancing mechanism.

i. Voltage transducer board

The board is used to measure one cell capacitor voltage and feeds a measurement signal to the DSP's ADC module. It scales the input voltage and adds a dc-bias to make the output voltage compatible with the ADC signal level. The transducer, LEM25-P, uses the Hall-effect to measure ac and dc signals. The LEM25-P sensor (transducer) can measure up to 500V with high frequency bandwidth. The circuit is shown in Figure A.2 and schematically in Figure A.1. Figure A3 shows the LEM25-P transducer datasheet

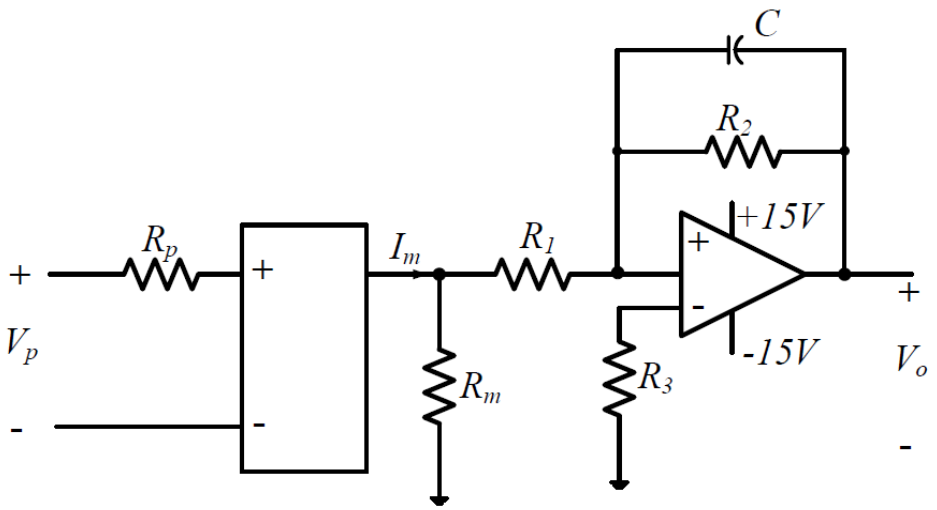


Figure A.1 Voltage transducer signal conditioning circuit schematic

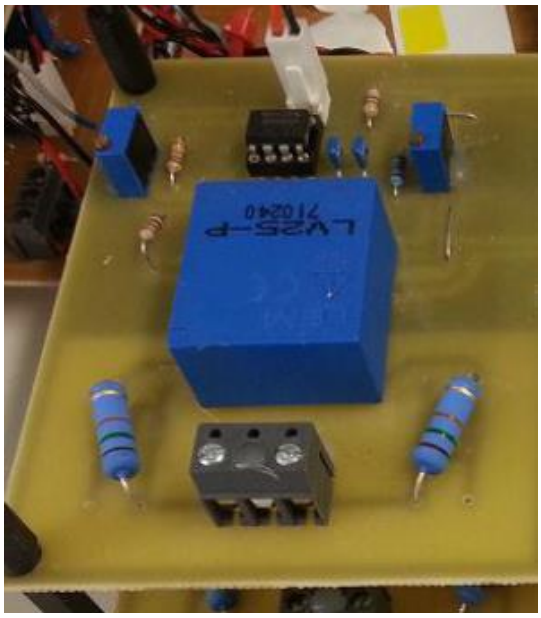



Figure A.2 Voltage transducer board

ii. Current Measurements

Arm currents are measured and sent to the DSP for voltage balancing. Herein, hall effect current sensing devices LEM LA-55p have been used to build the current sensing boards shown in Figure A.4. These sensing devices fully isolate the sensed signals from the real currents waveform. They have wide measurement range from 0A to 50A with accuracy bandwidth of 200 kHz. The schematic of the current sensing signal conditioning circuit is shown in Figure A.5. The current transducer datasheet is shown in Figure A.6.

### A.1.3 Gate drive circuits

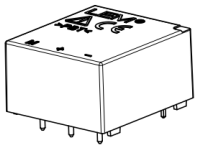
The gate drive circuits, shown in Figure A.7, are used to buffer the power electronic switches from the DSP. This is necessary as the DSP can source up to several milli-Amperes current and only a couple of volts which is not sufficient to turn on the

# Voltage Transducer LV 25-P

For the electronic measurement of currents: DC, AC, pulsed..., with galvanic isolation between the primary circuit and the secondary circuit.

16084

## $I_{PN}$ = 10 mA
## $V_{PN}$ = 10 .. 500 V



## Electrical data

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $I_{PN}$ | Primary nominal current rms | | 10 | | mA |
| $I_{PM}$ | Primary current, measuring range | | 0 .. ± 14 | | mA |
| $R_M$ | Measuring resistance | | $R_{M\,min}$ | $R_{M\,max}$ | |
| | with ± 12 V | @ ± 10 mA $_{max}$ | 30 | 190 | Ω |
| | | @ ± 14 mA $_{max}$ | 30 | 100 | Ω |
| | with ± 15 V | @ ± 10 mA $_{max}$ | 100 | 350 | Ω |
| | | @ ± 14 mA $_{max}$ | 100 | 190 | Ω |
| $I_{SN}$ | Secondary nominal current rms | | 25 | | mA |
| $K_N$ | Conversion ratio | | 2500 : 1000 | | |
| $V_C$ | Supply voltage (± 5 %) | | ± 12 .. 15 | | V |
| $I_C$ | Current consumption | | 10 (@ ± 15 V) + $I_S$ | | mA |

## Accuracy - Dynamic performance data

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $X_G$ | Overall accuracy @ $I_{PN}$, $T_A$ = 25°C @ ± 12 .. 15 V | | ± 0.9 | | % |
| | @ ± 15 V (± 5 %) | | ± 0.8 | | % |
| $\varepsilon_L$ | Linearity error | | < 0.2 | | % |
| | | | Typ | Max | |
| $I_O$ | Offset current @ $I_P$ = 0, $T_A$ = 25°C | | | ± 0.15 | mA |
| $I_{OT}$ | Temperature variation of $I_O$ | 0°C .. + 25°C | ± 0.06 | ± 0.25 | mA |
| | | + 25°C .. + 70°C | ± 0.10 | ± 0.35 | mA |
| $t_r$ | Response time [1] to 90 % of $I_{PN}$ step | | 40 | | µs |

## General data

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $T_A$ | Ambient operating temperature | | 0 .. + 70 | °C |
| $T_S$ | Ambient storage temperature | | - 25 .. + 85 | °C |
| $R_P$ | Primary coil resistance | @ $T_A$ = 70°C | 250 | Ω |
| $R_S$ | Secondary coil resistance | @ $T_A$ = 70°C | 110 | Ω |
| ***m*** | Mass | | 22 | g |
| | Standard | | EN 50178: 1997 | |

Note: [1] $R_1$ = 25 kΩ (L/R constant, produced by the resistance and inductance of the primary circuit).

## Features

- Closed loop (compensated) current transducer using the Hall effect
- Isolated plastic case recognized according to UL 94-V0.

## Principle of use

- For voltage measurements, a current proportional to the measured voltage must be passed through an external resistor $R_1$ which is selected by the user and installed in series with the primary circuit of the transducer.

## Advantages

- Excellent accuracy
- Very good linearity
- Low thermal drift
- Low response time
- High bandwidth
- High immunity to external interference
- Low disturbance in common mode.

## Applications

- AC variable speed drives and servo motor drives
- Static converters for DC motor drives
- Battery supplied applications
- Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS)
- Power supplies for welding applications.

## Application domain

- Industrial.



Figure A.3 LEM25-P voltage transducer datasheet

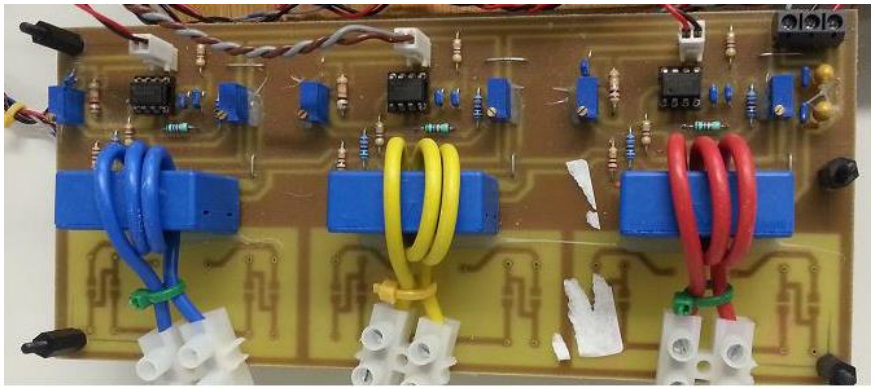


Figure A.4 Current transducer board

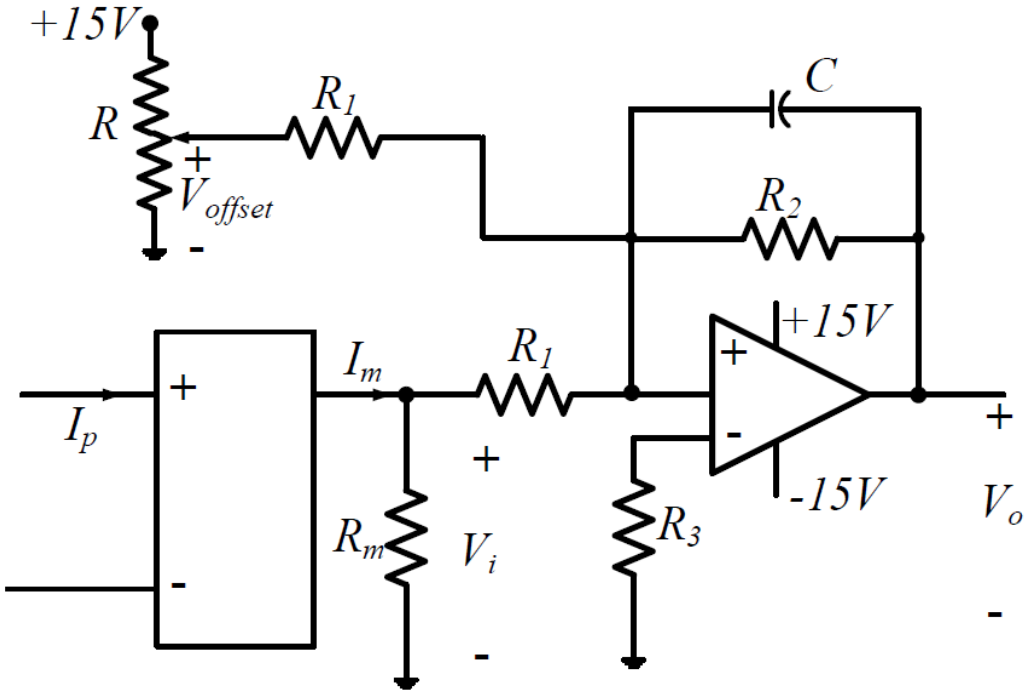



Figure A.5 Current transducer signal conditioning circuit schematic

LEM

# Current Transducer LA 55-P

$I_{PN}$ = 50 A

For the electronic measurement of currents: DC, AC, pulsed..., with galvanic isolation between the primary circuit (high power) and the secondary circuit (electronic circuit).

5 Year Warranty · CE · cULus · RoHS COMPLIANT 2002/95/EC

16019

## Electrical data

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | $T_A$ = 70°C | | $T_A$ = 85°C | | |
| | | | | $R_{M\,min}$ | $R_{M\,max}$ | $R_{M\,min}$ | $R_{M\,max}$ | |
| $I_{PN}$ | Primary nominal current rms | | | 50 | | | | A |
| $I_{PM}$ | Primary current, measuring range | | | 0 .. ± 70 | | | | A |
| $R_M$ | Measuring resistance | | | | | | | |
| | with ± 12 V | @ ± 50 $A_{max}$ | | 10 | 100 | 60 | 95 | Ω |
| | | @ ± 70 $A_{max}$ | | 10 | 50 | 60 [1] | 60 [1] | Ω |
| | with ± 15 V | @ ± 50 $A_{max}$ | | 50 | 160 | 135 | 155 | Ω |
| | | @ ± 70 $A_{max}$ | | 50 | 90 | 135 [2] | 135 [2] | Ω |
| $I_{SN}$ | Secondary nominal current rms | | | 50 | | | | mA |
| $K_N$ | Conversion ratio | | | 1 : 1000 | | | | |
| $V_C$ | Supply voltage (± 5 %) | | | ± 12 .. 15 | | | | V |
| $I_C$ | Current consumption | | | 10 (@ ± 15 V) + $I_S$ | | | | mA |

## Accuracy - Dynamic performance data

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Typ | Max | |
| X | Accuracy @ $I_{PN}$, $T_A$ = 25°C | @ ± 15 V (± 5 %) | | ± 0.65 | % |
| | | @ ± 12 .. 15 V (± 5 %) | | ± 0.90 | % |
| $\varepsilon_L$ | Linearity error | | | < 0.15 | % |
| $I_O$ | Offset current @ $I_P$ = 0, $T_A$ = 25°C | | | ± 0.2 | mA |
| $I_{OM}$ | Magnetic offset current [3] @ $I_P$ = 0 and specified $R_M$, after an overload of 3 x $I_{PN}$ | | | ± 0.3 | mA |
| $I_{OT}$ | Temperature variation of $I_O$ | - 25°C .. + 85°C | ± 0.1 | ± 0.6 | mA |
| | | - 40°C .. - 25°C | ± 0.2 | ± 1.0 | mA |
| $t_{ra}$ | Reaction time to 10 % of $I_{PN}$ step | | | < 500 | ns |
| $t_r$ | Response time to 90 % of $I_{PN}$ step | | | < 1 | µs |
| di/dt | di/dt accurately followed | | | > 200 | A/µs |
| BW | Frequency bandwidth (- 1 dB) | | | DC .. 200 | kHz |

## General data

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| $T_A$ | Ambient operating temperature | | - 40 .. + 85 | °C |
| $T_S$ | Ambient storage temperature | | - 40 .. + 90 | °C |
| $R_S$ | Secondary coil resistance | @ $T_A$ = 70°C | 80 | Ω |
| | | @ $T_A$ = 85°C | 85 | Ω |
| *m* | Mass | | 18 | g |
| | Standards | | EN 50178: 1997 | |

Notes: [1] Measuring range limited to ± 60 $A_{max}$

[2] Measuring range limited to ± 55 $A_{max}$

### Features

- Closed loop (compensated) current transducer using the Hall effect
- Printed circuit board mounting
- Isolated plastic case recognized according to UL 94-V0.

### Advantages

- Excellent accuracy
- Very good linearity
- Low temperature drift
- Optimized response time
- Wide frequency bandwidth
- No insertion losses
- High immunity to external interference
- Current overload capability.

### Applications

- AC variable speed drives and servo motor drives
- Static converters for DC motor drives
- Battery supplied applications
- Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS)
- Switched Mode Power Supplies (SMPS)
- Power supplies for welding applications.

### Application domain

- Industrial.

Figure A.6 LEM LA-55p current transducer datasheet.

IGBT switch. The gate drive amplifies the output current and voltage of the DSP to reach the IGBT gate level. The gate drive circuit has suitable high-speed optical

isolation which is necessary for galvanic isolation between the DSP ground and the common points of the IGBTs. This optical isolation allows short duration pulses to be transmitted to the switch. The parameters of the gate drive circuit are shown in Table A.1. A schematic of the gate drive circuit is shown in Figure A.8.

Table A.1 Gate drive circuit parameters

| | |
|---|---|
| Output voltage | 15 V |
| Output current | ± 3 A |
| Supply voltage (max) | 5 V |
| Measured signal frequency (max) | 75 kHz |
| $t_{d\ on}$ | 60 ns |
| $t_{d\ off}$ | 60 ns |

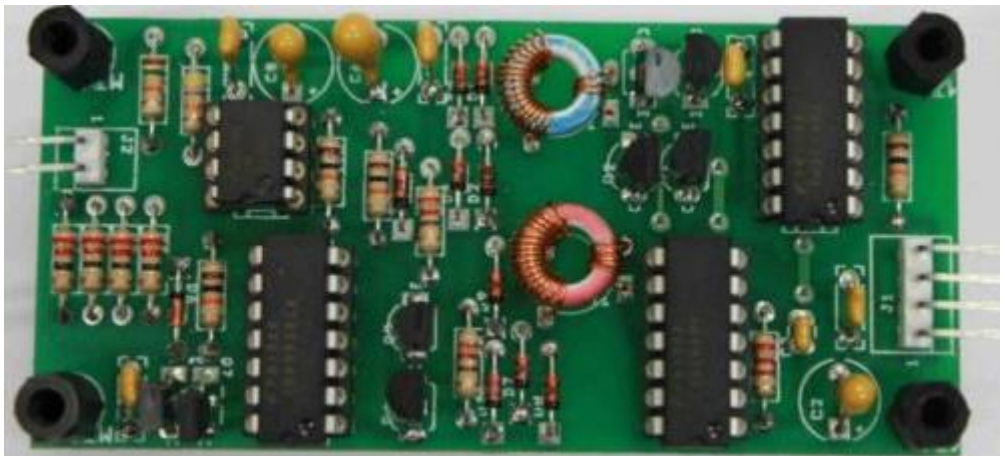


Figure A.7 Gate drive board

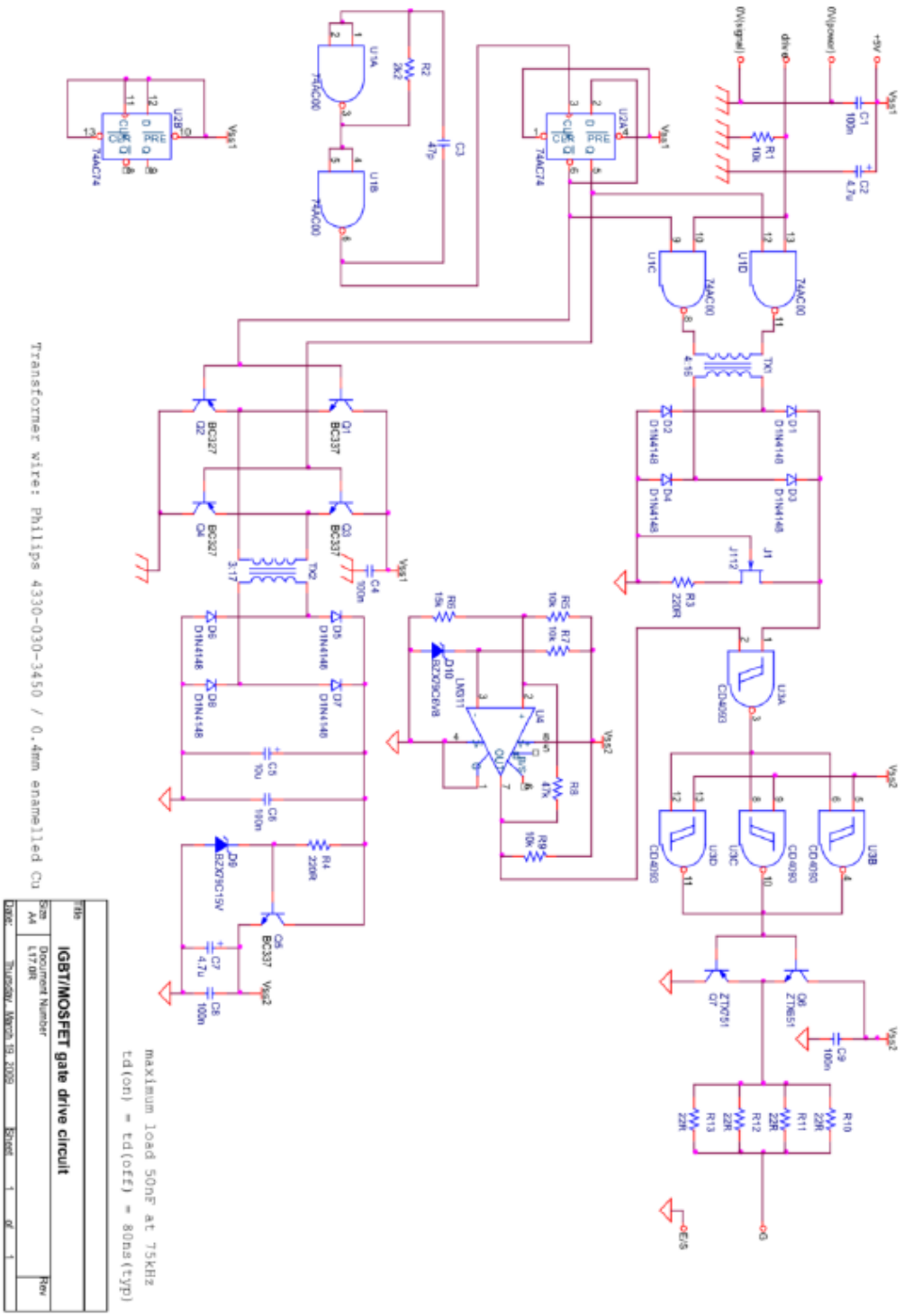



Figure A.8 Schematic of the gate drive circuit

# APPEDNIX C: List of Figures

# APPEDNIX D: List of Tables

# APPENDIX B: Publications

## Journal Publications

1. I. A. Gowaid, G. P. Adam, A. M. Massoud, S. Ahmed, D. Holliday and B. W. Williams, "Quasi Two-Level Operation of Modular Multilevel Converter for Use in a High-Power DC Transformer With DC Fault Isolation Capability," in *IEEE Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 30, no. 1, pp. 108-123, Jan. 2015.

   **Abstract:** DC fault protection is one challenge impeding the development of multi-terminal dc grids. The absence of manufacturing and operational standards has led to many point-to-point HVDC links built at different voltage levels, which creates another challenge. Therefore, the issues of voltage matching and dc fault isolation are undergoing extensive research and are addressed in this paper. A quasi two-level operating mode of the modular multilevel converter is proposed, where the converter generates a square wave with controllable dv/dt by employing the cell voltages to create transient intermediate voltage levels. Cell capacitance requirements diminish and the footprint of the converter is reduced. The common-mode dc component in the arm currents is not present in the proposed operating mode. The converter is proposed as the core of a dc to dc transformer, where two converters operating in the proposed mode are coupled by an ac transformer for voltage matching and galvanic isolation. The proposed dc transformer is shown to be suitable for high-voltage high-power applications due to the low-switching frequency, high efficiency, modularity, and reliability. The dc transformer facilitates dc voltage regulation and near instant isolation of dc faults within its protection zone. Analysis and simulations confirm these capabilities in a system-oriented approach.

2. I. A. Gowaid, G. P. Adam, S. Ahmed, D. Holliday and B. W. Williams, "Analysis and Design of a Modular Multilevel Converter With Trapezoidal Modulation for Medium and High Voltage DC-DC Transformers," in *IEEE*

*Transactions on Power Electronics*, vol. 30, no. 10, pp. 5439-5457, Oct. 2015.

**Abstract:** Conventional dual-active bridge topologies provide galvanic isolation and soft-switching over a reasonable operating range without dedicated resonant circuits. However, scaling the two-level dual-active bridge to higher dc voltage levels is impeded by several challenges among which the high dv/dt stress on the coupling transformer insulation. Gating and thermal characteristics of series switch arrays add to the limitations. To avoid the use of standard bulky modular multilevel bridges, this paper analyzes an alternative modulation technique, where staircase approximated trapezoidal voltage waveforms are produced; thus, alleviating developed dv/dt stresses. Modular design is realized by the utilization of half-bridge chopper cells. This way the analyzed dc-dc transformer employs modular multilevel converters operated in a new mode with minimal common-mode arm currents, as well as reduced capacitor size, hence reduced cell footprint. Suitable switching patterns are developed and various design and operation aspects are studied. Soft-switching characteristics will be shown to be comparable to those of the two-level dual-active bridge. Experimental results from a scaled test rig validate the presented concept.

**3.** G. P. Adam, I. A. Gowaid, S. J. Finney, D. Holliday and B. W. Williams, "Review of dc–dc converters for multi-terminal HVDC transmission networks," in *IET Power Electronics*, vol. 9, no. 2, pp. 281-296, 2 10 2016.

**Abstract:** This study presents a comprehensive review of high-power dc-dc converters for high-voltage direct current (HVDC) transmission systems, with emphasis on the most promising topologies from established and emerging dc-dc converters. In addition, it highlights the key challenges of dc-dc converter scalability to HVDC applications, and narrows down the desired features for high-voltage dc-dc converters, considering both device and system perspectives. Attributes and limitations of each dc-dc converter considered in this study are explained in detail and supported by time-domain simulations. It is found that the front-to-front quasi-two-level operated

modular multilevel converter, transition arm modular converter and controlled transition bridge converter offer the best solutions for high-voltage dc-dc converters that do not compromise galvanic isolation and prevention of dc fault propagation within the dc network. Apart from dc fault response, the MMC dc auto transformer and the transformerless hybrid cascaded two-level converter offer the most efficient solutions for tapping and dc voltage matching of multi-terminal HVDC networks.

## Submitted journal papers:

**4.** I. A. Gowaid, G. P. Adam, S. Ahmed, A. Massoud, and B. W. Williams, " Hybrid and Modular Multilevel Converter Designs for DC Fault Tolerant HVDC-DC Transformers," – Submitted to IEEE Journal on Selected and Emerging Topics in Power Electronics.

**Abstract:** Efficient medium and high voltage dc-dc conversion is critical for future dc grids. This paper proposes a hybrid multilevel dc/ac converter structure for use as the kernel of dc-dc conversion systems. Operation of the proposed dc/ac converter with trapezoidal ac voltage waveforms is addressed. It will be shown that trapezoidal operation of the proposed converter achieves a reduction of converter footprint, active and passive components size, and on-state losses relative to conventional modular multilevel converters. The proposed converter is scalable to high voltages with controllable ac voltage slope; implying tolerable dv/dt stresses. Structural variations of the proposed converter with enhanced modularity and improved efficiency will be presented and discussed with regards to application in front-to-front isolated dc-dc conversion stages, and in light of said trapezoidal operation. Numerical results provide deeper insight on the considered converter, while application in dc-dc conversion is analyzed with emphasis on system design aspects. Proof of concept experimental results are obtained from a 1-kW scaled rig.

## Conference Publications

**5.** I. A. Gowaid, F. Page, G. P. Adam, B. W. Williams and J. Fletcher, "Ring DC node configurations for enhanced DC fault protection in multi-terminal HVDC networks," *2015 International Conference on Renewable Energy Research and Applications (ICRERA)*, Palermo, 2015, pp. 1411-1415.

**Abstract:** This paper proposes a ring dc node configuration for more reliable multi-terminal dc grid fault protection. The proposed ring node is tolerant to the loss of one dc circuit breaker. It results in reduced steady state current flow in node branches relative to a conventional star node connection. This reduces on-state losses of solid-state circuit breakers, as well as any dc-dc converters to be used to administer dc fault blocking in addition to voltage matching. The short circuit breaking capacity of each utilized circuit breaker is also reduced since current stresses are distributed among dc breakers within the ring node. The proposed node configurations are of importance for medium and high voltage dc grids interfacing renewable sources (for example, offshore wind) to the onshore ac grid.

**6.** I. A. Gowaid, G. P. Adam, B. W. Williams, A. M. Massoud and S. Ahmed, "The transition arm multilevel converter — A concept for medium and high voltage DC-DC transformers," *2015 IEEE International Conference on Industrial Technology (ICIT)*, Seville, 2015, pp. 3099-3104.

**Abstract:** This paper proposes a dc/ac converter topology where each phase leg comprises a conventional series switch valve in one arm and a series connection of half-bridge chopper cells in the other arm. Operation with trapezoidal modulation is analyzed where the half-bridge modules have a reduced footprint and silicon area compared to standard modular multilevel converter modules. Furthermore, no arm inductance is required. The utilization of the proposed converter topology in medium and high voltage front-to-front dc-dc converter topologies is analyzed. Simulations investigate key features of the converter in comparison to other published topologies.

**7.** I. A. Gowaid, G. P. Adam, A. M. Massoud, S. Ahmed, D. Holliday and B. W. Williams, "Modular multilevel structure of a high power dual active bridge DC transformer with stepped two-level output," *Power Electronics and Applications (EPE'14-ECCE Europe), 2014 16th European Conference on*, Lappeenranta, 2014, pp. 1-10.

**Abstract:** This paper addresses the issues of dc voltage matching and dc fault protection in potential super-grids. An approach for high power dc-dc conversion is proposed and analyzed. A front-to-front connection of modular-multilevel converters (MMC) forms a dual active bridge (DAB)-like structure. Near two-level operation is achieved by sequential switching of half-bridge chopper cells. This alleviates dv/dt stress exercised by two-level DAB configurations on the ac stage. The operating mode, switching patterns necessary are distinct from conventional MMC. Furthermore, common-mode currents, cell capacitance size, arm inductances are significantly reduced. The considered structure is shown to be useful for high power applications due to the low switching frequency, modularity, reliability and dc fault isolation capability. Various operation aspects are illustrated using simulations. A reduced-scale test rig provides an experimental proof of the concept.

**8.** I. A. Gowaid, G. P. Adam, A. M. Massoud, S. Ahmed, D. Holliday and B. W. Williams, "The Transition-Arm DC Autotransformer," *IEEE International Symposium on Industrial Electronics*, Edinburgh 2017, accepted for publication.

**Abstract:** This paper studies a dc-dc converter topology dual to the ac autotransformer for medium and high voltage dc-dc conversion. Operation with trapezoidal modulation is analyzed where the dc autotransformer is built of transition-arm bridges. This structure features less power electronics installation and energy storage capacity as compared to sinusoidal modulation. It also permits the use of low-loss devices such as thyristors or Insulated Gate Commutated Thyristors (IGCTs), promising high efficiency. DC fault blocking is analyzed as well.